

THE ROMAN FORUM.

NEW
FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.
PRINCIPAL, COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE, ST. CATHARINES

AND

R. A. LITTLE, B.A.
CLASSICAL MASTER, COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE, LONDON

TORONTO
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED

PA2087

H4

1906

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand
nine hundred and six, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, Toronto
Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

PREFACE

This book is a revised edition of the **FIRST LATIN BOOK**, originally published in 1892. The favor with which the latter was received by the teachers of the Province has been steadily retained. The progress of the years, however, rendered a careful revision necessary. Since the publication of the original book, many excellent works on Latin have appeared in both Britain and America, and the authors have striven to combine the results of the latest research with the most modern methods in Latin teaching. Experience, too, from the use of the **FIRST LATIN BOOK** in the class-room, has convinced the authors of the present work *that a statement of the leading facts of Latin Grammar more simple and concise than was to be found in the original work, was desirable* in consequence of the pressure of other studies that now claim the attention of both teacher and pupil. While the more important features of the **FIRST LATIN BOOK** have been retained, in the **NEW FIRST LATIN BOOK** will be found many changes in the order in which the subjects are taken up, as well as new methods in the presentation of these subjects to the pupil.

The *Inflections* have been dealt with *gradually and fully*, in the belief that it is only by proceeding slowly at the beginning and by mastering thoroughly the forms of the language, that subsequent progress can be made with pleasure and profit to the pupil. In dealing with the *Inflections* of the Noun and Adjective, we have discarded entirely the use of *stem* as altogether too uncertain a term to be of any practical use to a beginner, and have adopted a method which we believe to be much easier and more rational.

The acquiring of a Vocabulary is always a more or less difficult matter. This difficulty will be greatly lessened if the pupil is led by the teacher to *connect the meaning of a Latin word with some known derivative in English*. If this be done, the meaning of the Latin word will be more firmly fixed in the mind of the pupil. Moreover, if the pupil is trained to extend the scope of the English derivatives from a single word in Latin, he will enlarge his English

Vocabulary and the words of his mother tongue will have a meaning they never had before. This principle has been adopted in the initial stages of this book, and the pupil is recommended to carry out the method, as far as practicable, in all subsequent exercises. Only the most obvious English derivatives are given. With regard to the extent and character of the Vocabulary, we may say that it has been taken chiefly, though not exclusively, from Caesar, and especially from that part of Caesar prescribed for Pass University Matriculation.

The value of *Sight Translation* has been kept steadily in view. Accordingly, *about forty* passages, selected to suit the progress of the pupil, have been given throughout the book. These are varied in character, and are specially chosen to awaken an interest in the *legends, history, mythology, and life of the Romans*.

In the treatment of Syntax, *each important principle is preceded by an example* clearly explained. Induction has a place in the teaching of languages, but its proper place is in dealing, not with Accidence, but with Syntax, after the forms of the language have been thoroughly mastered. The Syntax of the Subjunctive Mood has been fully explained, for one can seldom find a page of a Latin author, especially of Caesar, without meeting numerous examples of this mood. Since in Caesar certain uses of the Subjunctive are more frequently found than others, these have been more fully treated, in view of the fact that they have been regarded by the authors as more important.

Throughout the book we have aimed at *brevity in expression* consistent with simplicity and clearness, and especially have we adhered to the principle that should, as far as possible, prevail in all teaching, viz., of *mastering one thing at a time*.

This book is intended to be a *thorough preparation for the reading of Caesar*, an author that is likely to have a permanent place in the course in Latin in Secondary Schools.

JOHN HENDERSON,

R. A. LITTLE.

January 2nd, 1906.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION—	PAGE
The Latin Language—Alphabet	1
Pronunciation	2
Syllables	3
Quantity—Accent	4
LESSON	
I. The First Conjugation—Present Indicative Active of <i>Amo</i>	5
II. The Verb—Present Tense	6
III. The Noun—Declension—Cases	8
IV. Gender	10
V. First Declension	12
VI. Subject and Direct Object	13
VII. Dative of the Indirect Object—‘To’—‘For’	15
VIII. The Ablative—‘With’—‘By’	17
IX. The Ablative—‘From’—‘In’	19
X. Imperfect and Future Indicative Active First Con- jugation: <i>Amo</i>	21
XI. Second Declension: Nouns in <i>-us</i>	24
XII. Second Declension: Nouns in <i>-er</i> and <i>-ir</i>	26
XIII. Second Declension: Neuter Nouns	29
XIV. Review—Special Points	31
XV. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions— <i>Bonus</i>	33
XVI. Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions in <i>-er</i>	36
XVII. Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect Indicative Active of <i>Amo</i>	38
XVIII. Imperative Mood—Imperative Active of <i>Amo</i>	42
XIX. Interrogative Sentences—Double Direct Questions	43
XX. The Verb <i>Sum</i>	45
XXI. Irregular Adjectives in <i>-us</i> and <i>-er</i> —Reading Lesson: DISCOVERY OF CANADA	48

LESSON	PAGE
XXII. Third Declension : Class I : Labial Bases	51
XXIII. Third Declension : Class I : Dental Bases	53
XXIV. Third Declension : Class I : Palatal Bases	55
XXV. Third Declension : Class I : Liquid, Nasal, and Sibilant Bases—Reading Lesson : <i>ÆNEAS</i>	57
XXVI. Third Declension : Class I : Neuter Nouns	60
XXVII. Third Declension : Class II : Masculine and Fem- inine Nouns	62
XXVIII. Third Declension : Class II : Neuter Nouns	64
XXIX. Third Declension : Mixed Nouns	65
XXX. Irregular Nouns of the Third Declension—Rules for Gender of the Third Declension—Reading Lesson : <i>ROME</i>	67
XXXI. Second Conjugation : Indicative and Imperative Active of <i>Moneo</i>	70
XXXII. First Conjugation : Passive Voice : Indicative and Imperative of <i>Amo</i>	74
XXXIII. Second Conjugation : Passive Voice : Indicative and Imperative of <i>Moneo</i> —Reading Lesson : <i>THE</i> <i>SEVEN KINGS OF ROME</i>	78
XXXIV. Adjectives of the Third Declension : <i>Acer</i> : <i>Fortis</i> : <i>Fortior</i>	81
XXXV. Adjectives of the Third Declension : <i>Felix</i> : <i>Prudens</i> : <i>Amans</i> : <i>Vetus</i> : <i>Plus</i> —Colloquium : <i>VIR ET PUER</i>	84
XXXVI. Comparison of Adjectives	87
XXXVII. Irregular Comparison	90
XXXVIII. Irregular Comparison—Adjectives that take the Dative, Genitive and Ablative—‘Time When’— ‘Duration of Time’—Reading Lesson : <i>BRITAIN</i>	92
XXXIX. Adverbs—Comparison of Adverbs	96
XL. Fourth Declension : <i>Fructus</i>	99
XLI. Fifth Declension : <i>Res</i> : <i>Dies</i> —Reading Lesson : <i>HANNIBAL AND SCIPIO</i>	101
XLII. Numerals ‘Extent of Space’—Partitive Genitive	105
XLIII. Third Conjugation : Indicative and Imperative Active of <i>Rego</i>	108
XLIV. Third Conjugation : Indicative and Imperative Pas- sive of <i>Rego</i> —Predicate Accusative—Predicative Nominative—Reading Lesson : <i>REGULUS</i>	111

CONTENTS

vii

LESSON	PAGE
XLV. Time : Rules for Time	116
XLVI. Place : The Locative Case : Rules of Syntax— Colloquium : <i>MARCUS ET CAIUS</i>	118
XLVII. Third Conjugation : Verbs in <i>-io</i>	122
XLVIII. Fourth Conjugation : Indicative and Imperative Active of <i>Audio</i>	125
XLIX. Fourth Conjugation : Indicative and Imperative Passive of <i>Audio</i> —Reading Lesson : THE BATTLE OF MARATHON	128
L. Deponent Verbs : Indicative and Imperative	132
LI. Deponent Verbs : Third Conjugation Verbs in <i>-ior</i>	135
LII. Pronouns : Personal : Reflexive	137
LIII. Demonstrative Pronouns—Reading Lesson : FIRST EXPEDITION OF CAESAR TO BRITAIN	140
LIV. Intensive or Emphatic Pronouns	143
LV. The Relative Pronoun—Reading Lesson : THE GEOGRAPHY OF GAUL	145
LVI. The Interrogative Pronoun	148
LVII. Indefinite Pronouns—Reading Lesson : <i>DEI ROMAN- ORUM</i>	149
LVIII. Participles : Participles of the Active Voice	152
LIX. The Perfect Participle Passive—Scheme of Participles	154
LX. Participles of Deponent Verbs	157
LXI. Ablative Absolute—Reading Lesson : <i>CAESAR DEFEATS THE BRITONS</i>	159
LXII. Review on Participles—Special Points	163
LXIII. Infinitive : Formation of Infinitives	165
LXIV. Accusative with Infinitive—Reading Lesson : THE FATES	168
LXV. Accusative with Infinitive—Deponent Infinitives— <i>Hope, promise, undertake, swear</i>	172
LXVI. Verbs that govern the Dative and Genitive	175
LXVII. Passive Use of Verbs that govern the Dative—THE COWARD'S FATE	178
LXVIII. Supines—Reading Lesson : HOW A ROMAN SCHOOL- BOY SPENDS HIS DAY	179
LXIX. Gerund	182
LXX. The Gerundive—Gerundive Construction instead of the Gerund The Gerund Construction necessary— Special Points	184

PAGE

51

53

55

57

60

62

64

65

67

70

74

78

81

84

87

90

92

96

99

101

105

108

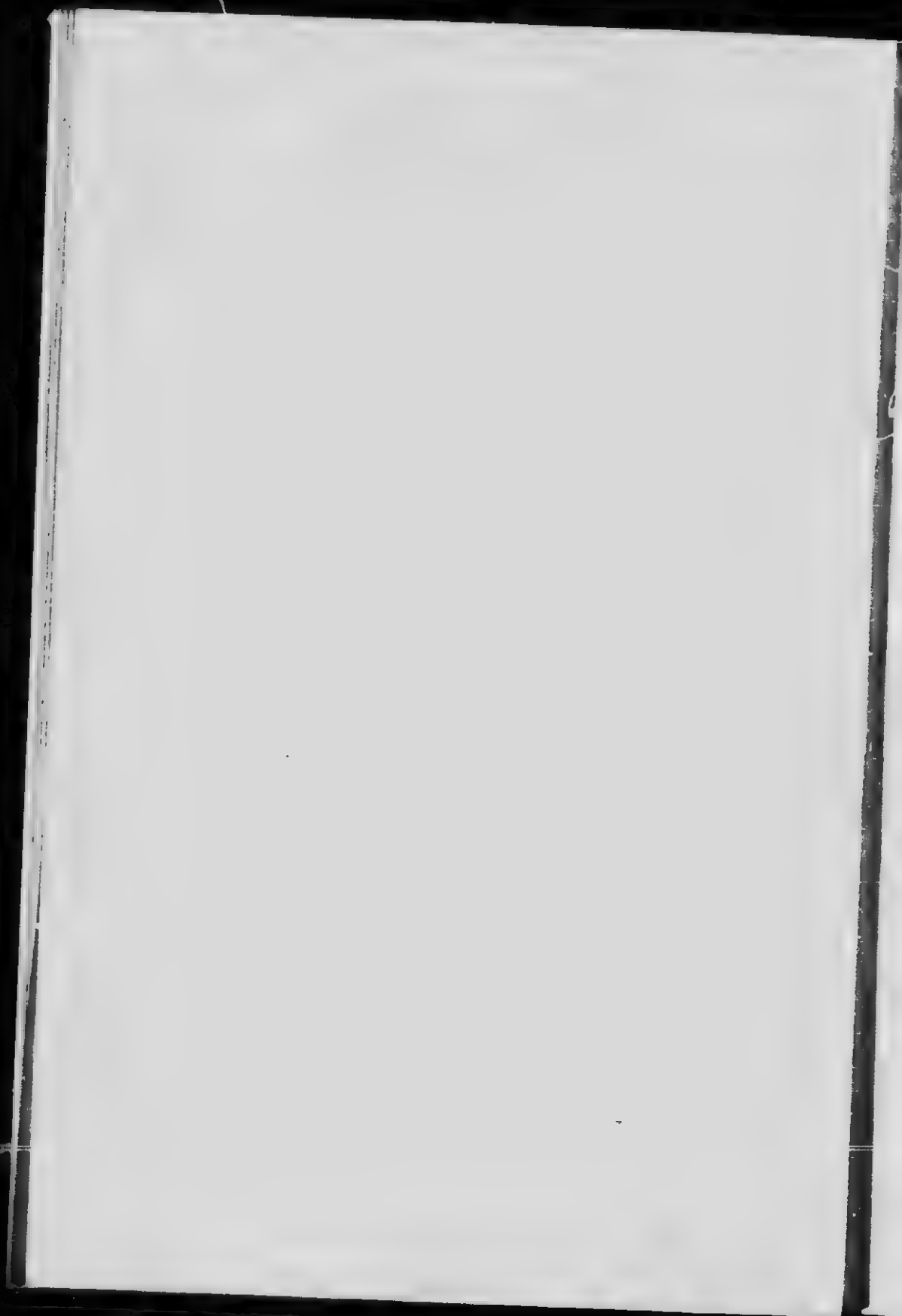
111

LESSON	PAGE
LXXI. The Gerundive denoting Duty, Obligation, Necessity—Gerundival Infinitive—Reading Lesson: DIFFICULTY OF CAESAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN..	187
LXXII. The Subjunctive Mood: Subjunctive of <i>Sum</i> : Subjunctive Active of <i>Amo, Moneo, Rego, Capiō</i> , <i>Audio</i> —Meaning and Use	191
LXXIII. The Subjunctive in Simple Sentences	198
LXXIV. Subjunctive Passive of <i>Amo, Moneo, Rego, Capiō</i> , <i>Audio</i> —Reading Lesson: HORATIUS AT THE BRIDGE	194
LXXV. The Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses: Final Clauses—Sequence of Tenses	197
LXXVI. Subjunctive of Deponent Verbs—Indirect Questions—Sequence of Tenses—Reading Lesson: SECOND EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN	199
LXXVII. Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses; Consecutive Clauses— <i>Cum</i> with Subjunctive: Reading Lesson: DEATH OF EPAMINONDAS	205
LXXVIII. Irregular Verbs: <i>Possum, Prosum</i> —Compounds of <i>Sum</i>	207
LXXIX. <i>Volo, Nolo, Malo</i> —Reading Lesson: THE BATTLE OF CANNÆ	210
LXXX. <i>Fero</i> —Compounds of <i>fero</i>	213
LXXXI. <i>Fio</i> —Compounds of <i>facio</i> —Reading Lesson: HOW TROY WAS TAKEN	215
LXXXII. <i>Eo</i> —Compounds of <i>eo</i>	217
LXXXIII. Defective Verbs: <i>Memini, Coepi, Odi, Novi</i> —Reading Lesson: DEATH OF CAESAR	219
LXXXIV. Impersonal Verbs: <i>Constat, Licet, Accidit, Evenit</i> —How to translate May, Might, Ought, Should, Must	223
LXXXV. Impersonal Verbs: Verbs of Feeling— <i>Interest, Opus est</i> —Reading Lesson: ROMULUS	226
LXXXVI. Dative of Purpose—Dative with Compounds	228
LXXXVII. Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses: Summary of Clauses—Reading Lesson: NUMA POMPILIUS	230
LXXXVIII. Final Clauses	232
LXXXIX. Indirect Questions: Adaptation—Reading Lesson: TULLUS HOSTILIUS	234
XC. Consecutive Clauses	236

CONTENTS

ix

LESSON	PAGE
XCI. Clauses of Characteristic—Reading Lesson: FIGHT BETWEEN THE HORATII AND CURIATII	237
XCII. Substantive Clauses of Purpose or Indirect Commands—Reading Lesson: FIGHT BETWEEN THE HORATII AND CURIATII (continued).....	239
XCIII. Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Fearing.....	242
XCIV. Substantive Clauses of Result—(Clauses with <i>quod</i> —Reading Lesson: THE DEATH OF SERVIUS TULLIUS	244
XCV. Clauses with <i>Quin</i> and <i>Quominus</i>	247
XCVI. Conditional Clauses—Reading Lesson: A WELL DESERVED REBUKE	249
XCVII. Causal Clauses: <i>quod</i> , <i>quia</i> , <i>quoniam</i> — <i>Oratio Recta</i> and <i>Oratio Obliqua</i> defined	252
XCVIII. Concessive Clauses—Clauses of Wish or Proviso. . .	254
XCIX. Clauses of Comparison—Reading Lesson: CYRSILUS	256
C. Temporal Clauses: <i>postquam</i> : <i>dum</i> , <i>donec</i> , <i>quoad</i> : <i>antequam</i> , <i>priusquam</i> —Reading Lesson: THE GERMANS OUTWIT THE MENAPII.....	258
CI. Temporal Clauses— <i>Cum</i> —Repeated Acts.....	261
CII. Indirect Narration: <i>Oratio Obliqua</i>	265
CIII. <i>Oratio Obliqua</i> (continued)—Conditional Clauses in <i>Oratio Obliqua</i> —Reading Lesson: ROMAN HONOR	267
Reading Lesson: AUGUSTUS.....	271
APPENDIX :—	
Table of Numerals.....	274
Conjugation of Regular Verbs	276-281
Summary of Rules for Cases :	
Accusative	282
Dative.....	284
Genitive	287
Ablative	291
List of Abbreviations.....	296
Latin-English Vocabulary.....	297-328
English-Latin Vocabulary.....	329-351



ILLUSTRATIONS

The Roman Forum	Frontispiece
The Colosseum	Opposite page 1
	PAGE
Arch of Constantine	23
Plan of Ancient Rome	69
Roman Figures	104
The Gladiator	131
Jupiter	150
The Three Fates	171
The Chariot Race	180
Caius Julius Caesar	221
Death of Servius Tullius	246
Augustus	270

2
u
a
s
t
h
l

i
l
a
c

NEW FIRST LATIN BOOK

INTRODUCTION

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

Latin was the language of the *Latini* or Latins, a race of west-central Italy, who inhabited Latium, a plain south of the mouth of the Tiber. The chief city of Latium was Rome. With the conquests of Rome, Latin spread first over the Italian peninsula, and subsequently over the greater portion of the nations around the Mediterranean. When the Latins, under the leadership of Rome, conquered the various tribes of Italy, the native dialects, as the Oscan, Umbrian and Etruscan, were gradually supplanted by the Latin. When Rome spread her conquests beyond the Italian peninsula the same process went on, and, accordingly, Latin became the principal language throughout the Roman Empire. Latin has passed into the so-called Romance languages—such as French, Spanish, Portuguese and Italian.

Alphabet

The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no **w**. Originally it did not have either **j** or **u**. These letters were added in the Middle Ages, **j** to represent **i** when a consonant, and **u** to represent **v** when a vowel. For convenience these forms have been retained.

Pronunciation

There are two methods of pronouncing Latin :—

- (1) The Roman Method ;
- (2) The English Method.

The Roman Method

VOWELS

The mark ¯ over a vowel indicates that it is long, and ˘ that it is short.

ā as the last *a* of *ahá*

ē as in *grey, they*

ī as in *machine*

ō as in *note, bone*

ū as *oo* in *moon*, or *u* in *rule*

y, ŷ like the German *ü* or *t*

ǎ as the first *a* of *ahá*

ĕ as in *net, sped*

ĭ as in *pin, fit*

ŏ as in *not, omit*

ŭ as *oo* in *foot*, or *u* in *full, put*

French *u*.

DIPHTHONGS

ae either as *ai* in *aisle* or as *a* in *fare*

au as *ou* in *house*

ei as *ei* in *skein, eight*

eu as *eu* in *feud*

oe as *oi* in *oil*

ui as *we*

CONSONANTS

Consonants are sounded as in English, with the following exceptions :—

c and **g** are always hard, as in *can, get*

j (consonant **i**) like *y* in *yet*

s is always sharp, as in *sun, hiss*

t always as in *tin*, never like *sh* as in *oration*

v is like *w* in *wine*

ch is like *k* in *kin*

x always like *ks*

The English Method

VOWELS

ā as *a* in *fate*

ē as *e* in *mete*

ī as *i* in *pine*

ō as *o* in *note*

ū as *u* in *tube*

ȳ as *y* in *type*

ă as *a* in *fat*

ĕ as *e* in *met*

ĭ as *i* in *pin*

ŏ as *o* in *not*

ŭ as *u* in *tuh*

ȳ as *y* in *myth*

DIPHTHONGS

ae as *ae* in *Caesar*

au as *au* in *author*

ei as *ei* in *height*

eu as *eu* in *feud*

oe like *ee* in *meet*

ui like *wi*, *cui*=*kwi*

CONSONANTS

Consonants are sounded largely as in English.

c and *g* are hard before *a*, *o*, and *u* as in *cat*, *got*, and soft before *e* and *i*, as in *cent*, *gin*.

Syllables

A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs:—

co-rō-na, a-mā-bā-tur, mī-li-tēs.

In dividing words into syllables:—

- (a) A single consonant except *x* goes with the following vowel:—

a-mā-bam, do-mi-nus, sax-um.

- (b) Doubled consonants are separated:—

mit-to, pel-lo.

- (c) When two or more consonants stand together, as many as may begin a word usually go with the following vowel:—

ma-gnus, co-gno-scō, cor-pus, men-sa.

- (d) Compound words are divided into their component parts:—

ad-est, dis-cē-dō.

Quantity

The quantity of a vowel or syllable is the time taken in pronouncing it. There are two degrees of quantity, long and short. A long vowel or syllable takes twice as long to pronounce as a short one (— = ∨ ∨).

Quantity of Vowels.

Vowels are either long or short by nature :—

- (a) A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short,
via, *nihil*.
- (b) Diphthongs, vowels derived from diphthongs, and vowels resulting from contraction are long,
mensae, *inclūdō*, (*claudō*), *cōgo* (*cō-āgō*).
- (c) A vowel before *j*, *ns*, *nf*, and often before *gn* is long,
ējus, *mensa*, *infans*, *magnus*.
- (d) A vowel before *nt*, *nt* is regularly short.
amandus, *amant*.

In this book vowels long are marked; short vowels are unmarked except in a few cases where mistakes are liable to be made. Long vowels before *ns*, *nf*, *gn*, are not so marked. Inasmuch as these are long in scansion, it was not thought wise to interfere with the traditional short pronunciation of vowels in these cases.

Accent

The last syllable of a word is called the ultima; the next to the last, the penult; and the syllable before the penult, the antepenult.

Words of two syllables are accented on the penult, as,
bónus, *régō*.

Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if that is long; otherwise on the antepenult,

poēta, *amicus*, *amābat*, *amābātur*,
ínsula, *ánimus*, *régitur*, *amābitur*, *aedificābitur*.

n in
and
pro-

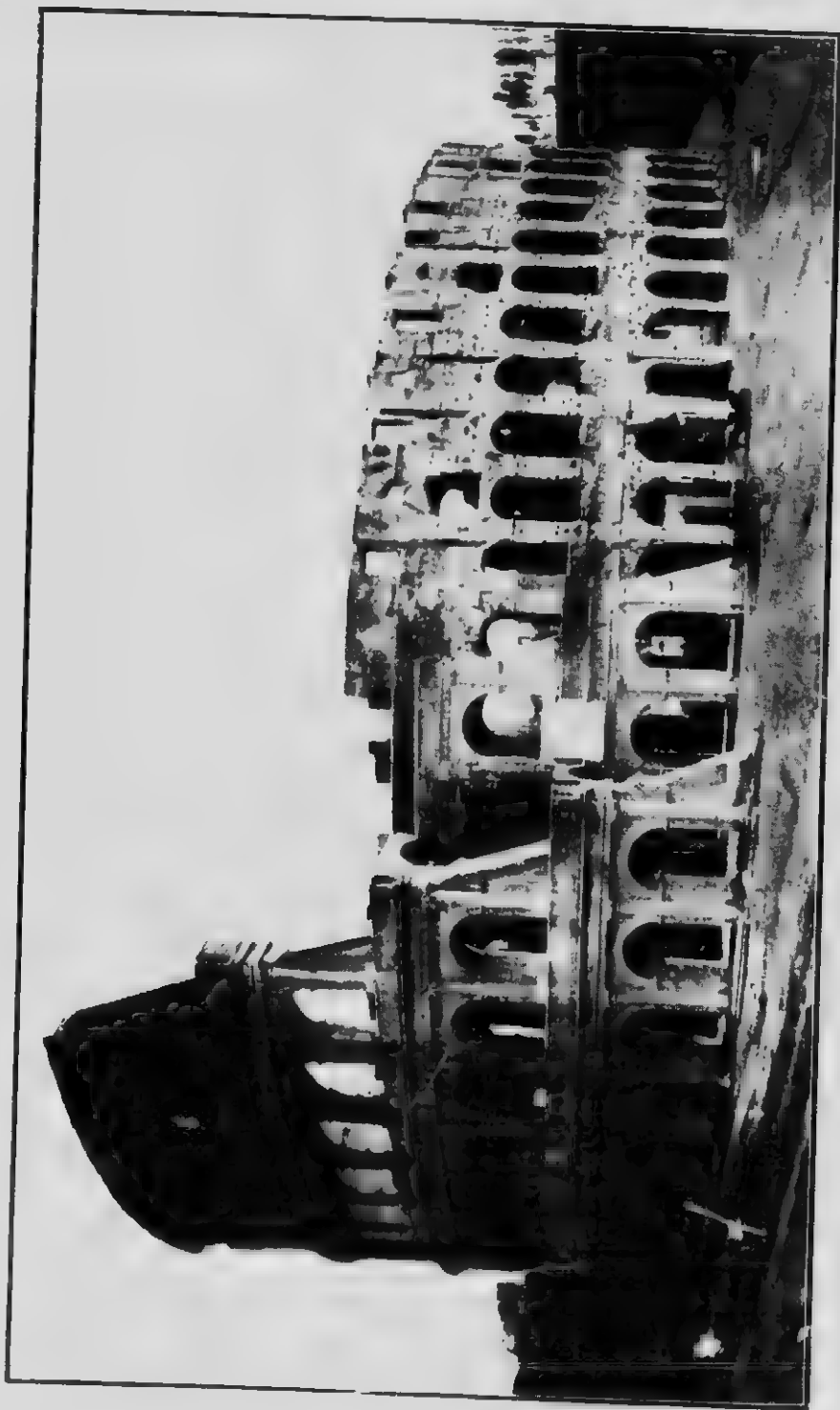
and

ng,

ked
ong
are
tra-

to
he

he



OPPOSITE P. 55

THE COLOSSEUM

LESSON I

THE FIRST CONJUGATION

1. The inflection of verbs to denote voice, mood, tense, number and person is called **Conjugation**.

The verb is said to be *conjugated*.

2. There are in Latin Four Regular Conjugations distinguished by the ending of the Present Infinitive Active.

CONJUGATION	INFINITIVE	INFINITIVE ENDING
First	am āre , to love	-āre
Second	mon ēre , to advise	-ēre
Third	reg ere , to rule	-ere
Fourth	aud ire , to hear	-ire

All verbs whose Present Infinitive ends in **-āre** belong to the First Conjugation of which **amāre**, to love, is the type.

3 First Conjugation

ACTIVE VOICE		INDICATIVE MOOD
PRESENT TENSE		
SINGULAR		PLURAL
1. amō, I love		amā mus, we love
2. amā s, thou lovest		amā tis, you love
3. amā t, he, she, it loves		amā nt, they love

4. Observe:—

The part **ama-** to which the endings are attached is called the Present Stem.

Amō represents an original **amao**, the stem-vowel **a** being lost before **ō**.

The endings or inflections take the place of pronouns in English and indicate person and number.

Amās = love thou : **-s** = thou : **-mus** = we : **-tis** = you (pl.) : **-nt** = they.

5. Inflect like **amō** in the Present Tense

arō, plough
clāmō, shout
laudō, praise
portō, carry

cantō, sing
pugnō, fight
spectō, look at, gaze at
vocō, call

EXERCISE

A

1. **arat**, **clāmat**, **pugnat**; **laudās**, **portās**, **spectās**.
2. **cantāmus**, **pugnāmus**, **arāmus**; **spectātis**, **vocātis**, **laudātis**.
3. **laudent**, **pugnant**, **cantant**, **portant**, **arant**.
4. **arāmus**, **laudātis**, **vocās**, **pugnat**, **portō**.

B

1. Thou singest, thou callest, he shouts, he fights.
2. We praise, we carry, we look at, we sing.
3. You plough, you call, you fight, you carry.
4. They praise, they shout, they sing, they call.
5. We plough, he praises, they carry, you shout.

LESSON II

THE VERB

1. **amō**, I love, I am loving, or, I do love.
Cur laudat? Why does he praise?
Quis clāmat? Who is shouting?

Each form in the present tense represents the Indefinite, Progressive and Emphatic forms of the English present.

2. Distinguish :—

amās, *you love*, referring to one person.

amātis, *you love*, referring to more than one person.

3. **dō**, *I give*; Present Infinitive **dāre**, *to give*, is conjugated thus :—

dō	dāmus
dās	dātis
dat	dant

Observe the short **a** in **dāre**, **dāmus**, **dātis**.

These short forms are quite exceptional.

4. **Agricola arat**. The farmer ploughs.
Agricolae arant. The farmers plough.

In the third person, the subject may be a noun and so expressed.

5. **spectō**, *I look at, I gaze at, I view*.
exspectō, *I look for, I wait for, I expect*.
Quem spectās? *At whom are you looking?*

A verb in Latin may represent an English verb-phrase.

The Intransitive verb '*look*' + the Preposition '*to*' or '*for*,' forms a Transitive Verb-Phrase.

6. Vocabulary

VERBS

ambulō, walk
exspectō, wait for, look for
ornō, adorn, decorate
postulō, demand
stō, stand

NOUNS

agricola, farmer
agricolae, farmers
nauta, sailor
nautae, sailors

INTERROGATIVES

quis? who?
cūr? why?
ubi? where?

quem? whom?
quandō? when?
quō? whither?

There is **no article** in Latin.

agricola, farmer, a farmer, or, the farmer.

EXERCISE

A

1. Agricola clāmat; agricolae stant; nauta ambulat.
2. Nautae cantant; quis cantat? cantātis.
3. Quis arat? quem vocāmus? quis clāmat? quem exspectat?
4. Ubi stās? quō ambulātis? quandō ambulant?
5. Quem spectātis? cūr dās? cūr vocant?
6. Nautae postulant; agricolae portant; cūr ambulās?

B

1. We are walking. You are singing. He is ploughing.
2. Whom do you praise? Who is demanding?
3. Whither are they walking? The farmers are walking.
4. Where are they standing? I am carrying. We are adorning.
5. He is standing. They are giving. The sailors are standing.
6. Who is giving? You are giving. Whom are you praising?
7. They are shouting. He is fighting. We are singing.
8. For whom are you waiting? At whom are you looking?

LESSON III

THE NOUN

Declension

The Cases

I. The inflection of nouns to denote gender, number and case is called **Declension**.

A noun is said to be *declined*.

Latin has **six** cases.

mensa, a *table*, has the following forms:—

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	<i>mens ā</i> , table (as Subject)	<i>mens ae</i> , tables
GENITIVE	<i>mens ae</i> , of a table	<i>mens ārum</i> , of tables
DATIVE	<i>mens ae</i> , to, for a table	<i>mens is</i> , to, for tables
ACCUSATIVE	<i>mens am</i> , table (as Object)	<i>mens ās</i> , tables
VOCATIVE	<i>mens ā</i> , O table	<i>mens ae</i> , O tables
ABLATIVE	<i>mens ā</i> , with, by a table	<i>mens is</i> , with, by tables

Observe :—

Relations are indicated by **case-endings**. These case-endings take the place of **prepositions** in English in the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative cases.

These case-endings are appended to a **base mens** - which remains unchanged in the inflection.

2. Cases Chief Uses and English Equivalents

NOMINATIVE	(1) as Subject. (2) as Predicate Nominative.
GENITIVE	= English Possessive with 's or s' or Objective with <i>of</i> .
DATIVE	as Indirect Object. = Objective with ' <i>to</i> ' or ' <i>for</i> ,' with verbs of <i>giving, saying</i> and <i>doing</i> .
ACCUSATIVE	(1) as Direct Object. (2) used after many prepositions.
VOCATIVE	= Nominative of Address.
ABLATIVE	(1) to denote Separation, Cause, Manner, Means, Instrument. = Objective with <i>from, by, in, with</i> . (2) often used with prepositions.

EXERCISE

Tell in what case you would express in Latin the nouns in the following sentences :—

1. The queen's mother gave a present to her daughter.
2. The son of the king gave the boy a book.
3. The man was struck with a stick.
4. O boy, bring the man a chair.
5. The eagle lifted the stone with its claws.

6. The man praised my father's house.
7. The man shot the birds with an arrow.
8. The men's sons praised the poet's works.
9. He built a house for his son.
10. O man, do not deceive the boy with promises.
11. The ships were shattered by a storm.

LESSON IV

(EXPLANATORY ONLY)

GENDER

1. The rule for determining the gender of nouns in English holds for Latin in regard to nouns that are Masculine and Feminine in English, but not in regard to nouns that are Neuter in English.

All nouns masculine in English are masculine in Latin.

All nouns feminine in English are feminine in Latin.

But *all nouns neuter in English are not neuter in Latin*. They are masculine or feminine or neuter according to principles that do not apply at all to English.

Natural Gender

2. The gender of nouns is natural when it is based upon sex as in English.

It applies only to names of persons.

(1) Names of males are masculine.

nauta, a sailor; *rēx*, a king; *puer*, a boy.

(2) Names of females are feminine.

virgō, a maiden; *rēgina*, a queen; *puella*, a girl

Grammatical Gender

3. Grammatical gender is based not upon sex, but upon
 (a) the general meaning of the noun, or
 (b) the ending of the nominative singular.

A GENDER BASED UPON MEANING

4. The following general principles may be noted as underlying gender based upon meaning:—

I. Masculine

Names of Rivers, Winds, Months and Mountains:—

Rhēnus, Rhine; **Eurus**, East Wind; **Maius**, May; **Olympus**, Olympus.

II. Feminine

Names of Countries, Towns, Islands, Trees, Gems, and most Abstract Qualities:—

Italia, Italy; **Corinthus**, Corinth; **Sicilia**, Sicily; **fāgus**, beech tree; **margarita**, a pearl; **vērītās**, truth.

III. Neuter

Indeclinable Nouns, Infinitives, and Phrases used as nouns:—

fās, right; **nefās**, wrong; **nihil**, nothing.

5. B GENDER DETERMINED BY THE ENDING OF THE NOMINATIVE SINGULAR

mensa , table	} are Feminine.	hortus , garden	} are Masculine.
aqua , water		oculus , eye	
insula , island		mūrus , wall	
corōna , crown		campus , plain	

6. The rules for gender by endings will be found under the different declensions.

LESSON V

FIRST DECLENSION

1. Nominative ending, **-a** Genitive ending, **-ae**

2. **mensa**, table Base,¹ **mens-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	mens a , table (as subject)	mens ae , tables
GENITIVE	mens ae , of a table	mens arum of tables
DATIVE	mens ae , to, for a table	mens is , to, for tables
ACCUSATIVE	mens am , table (as object)	mens as , tables
VOCATIVE	mens a , O, table	mens ae , O, tables
ABLATIVE	mens a , with, by a table	mens is , with, by tables

Gender

3. Nouns of the First Declension are *Feminine*.

Exceptions:—Nouns masculine by signification, as
nauta, sailor; **agricola**, farmer; also **Hadria**, the Adriatic.

4. Peculiarities of Declension

-abus for **-is**

dea, a goddess and **filia**, a daughter, have the Dative and Ablative Plural in **-abus**; as, **deabus**, **filiaabus**.

Vocabulary

5. Decline like **mensa**:—

LATIN WORD	MEANING	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE
agricola	farmer	agriculture
aqua	water	aquatic, aqueous
insula	island	insular, peninsula
lūna	moon	lunar
nauta	sailor	nautical
puella	girl	
rosa	rose	
stella	star	stellar, constellation
umbra		umbrella
victōria	victory	victorious

¹ The Base is that part of the noun or adjective that is unchanged in inflection.

EXERCISE

A

Give case and meaning of:—

1. aquā, aquam, insulam, insulās, insulārum.
2. victōriā, victōriam, victōriās, victōriis.
3. rosam, rosā, rosās, rosīs, agricolārum.
4. nautae, nautis, stellam, stellās, nautārum.

B

1. Of the sailor ; of the sailors. Of the girl ; of the girls.
2. By the victory of the sailors. With the roses of the girl.
3. Of the moon ; of the farmer. By the shadow ; with the rose.
4. By the shadow of the moon. With the rose of the farmer.
5. The victory of the sailor. The girl's roses. The girls' roses.
6. With water ; with a rose ; with roses ; by victories.
7. To the girls ; to the sailors ; to the farmers.
8. To the daughters ; to the goddesses ; to the daughter of the farmer.

LESSON VI

SUBJECT AND DIRECT OBJECT

1. Examine:—

- (1) *Agricola arat.* The farmer ploughs.
- (2) *Agricolae arant.* The farmers plough.

Questions:—

In what case is the subject of a verb put ?

In the *Nom.* case.

In what two inflections does a verb agree with its subject ?

In *Number* and *Person*.

2. Examine:—

- (1) *Puella rosam laudat.* The girl praises the rose.
- (2) *Puellae rosās laudant.* The girls praise the roses.

Observe the forms *rosam* in (1) and *rosās* in (2).

In what case are they ?

3

Rule of Syntax

The *Direct Object* of a transitive verb is put in the *Accusative*.

4. Observe the order of the words:—

Subject—Direct Object—Verb.

5.

Vocabulary

Decline each noun like *mensa*.

Tell the gender of each noun.

Inflect each verb in the present indicative active like *amō*.

LATIN WORD	MEANING	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE
epistola	letter	epistle
pecūnia	money	pecuniary
terra	land, earth	terrestrial
patria	native land	patriot
rēgina	queen	
aedificō	build	edifice
dēlectō	delight	delectation
habitō	dwell	inhabit
nuntiō	tell, report, announce	enunciate
parō	prepare	

EXERCISE

A

1. Puella rosam laudat. Puellae rosās laudant.
2. Patriam amāmus. Umbram amō. Rēgina epistolam exspectat.
3. Agricolae terram arant. Terram arāmus.
4. Nautae patriam amant. Nautae epistolās exspectant.
5. Epistolae puellās dēlectant. Rēgina victōriam nuntiat.
6. Quis terram arat? Cūr pecūniam postulātis?
7. Quandō epistolam exspectās? Ubi habitātis?
8. Cūr puella umbram amat? Cūr rēgina nautās laudat?
9. Mensam rēginae laudāmus. Rosās puellārum spectās.

B

1. We give roses to the queen. The sailor is praising the girl.
2. The sailors praise the girls. You praise the sailors.
3. The queen adorns the table. You adorn the queen's tables.
4. The sailor is calling the farmer. The farmer calls the sailor.
5. The farmers call the sailors. The farmer demands money.
6. The farmers demand money. The queen praises the land.
7. The sailor loves (his)¹ native land. The sailors love (their) native land.
8. Why do the sailors carry water?
9. When does the queen announce the victory?
10. Who is praising the girl's letter?
11. Where do they dwell? Why do the farmers demand money?
12. You are giving water to the queen's daughters.
13. They give roses to the sailors. Who is demanding money?

LESSON VII

DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT

'To' and 'For'

I. Examine :—

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| (1) <i>Nauta puellae</i> | } | The sailor gives a rose to the girl. |
| <i>rosam dat.</i> | | The sailor gives the girl a rose. |
| <i>Poëta puellae</i> | } | The poet tells a story to the girl. |
| <i>fabulam narrat.</i> | | The poet tells the girl a story. |
| (2) <i>Aquam ad agri-</i> | } | He carries water to the farmer. |
| <i>colam portat.</i> | | |
| <i>Ad insulam</i> | } | He sails to the island. |
| <i>navigat.</i> | | |

(1) 'To' is translated by the **Dative** with verbs of 'giving' and 'saying.'

The noun in the dative is the **Indirect Object**.

'To' is sometimes not expressed in English.

¹The possessive pronoun in Latin may be omitted when the reference is clear.

(2) Do **not** use the dative to express '**Motion to.**'

'**Motion to**' or '**towards**' is expressed by the preposition **ad** and the **Accusative**.

2. Examine :—

(1) **Agricolis terram arāmus.** We are plowing the land for the farmers.

Nauta deae āram aedificat. The sailor is building an altar for the goddess.

(2) **Nutae prō patriā pugnant.** The sailors are fighting for (their) native land.

(1) In (1) '**for**' is translated by the **Dative** of the **Indirect Object**.

(2) When '**for**' means '*in defence of,*' '*in behalf of,*' translate by '**pro**' and the **Ablative**.

3.

Vocabulary

LATIN WORD	MEANING	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE
āra	altar	
cōpia	plenty, fertility	copious
cōpiae pl.	forces, troops	
corōna	crown, garland	coronet, coronation
poēta	poet	
via	way, road	viaduct
porta	gate	portal, porter
Italia	Italy	
Britannia	Britain	
Gallia	Gaul	
fābula	tale, story	fable
narrō	tell, relate	narrative
culpō	blame, find fault with	culpable
nāvigō	sail	navigation
ad (prep. with acc.)	to	
prō (prep. with abl.)	for	

4. Note the usual order of the words in the above examples :—

Subject—Indirect Object—Direct Object—Verb.

EXERCISE

A

1. Nauta agricolae pecūniam dat. Rēgina nautis victōriam nuntiat.
2. Cōpiam terrae laudāmus. Puellis corōnās dātis.
3. Portās Rōmae laudat. Rōsās ad rēginam portat.
4. Poētae filiābus fābulās narrant. Nautae ad Britanniam nāvigant.
5. Rēginae cōpiās parant. Ad portās Rōmae ambulant.
6. Cūr ad Ītaliā nāvigātis? Poēta rēginae rōsās dat.

B

1. You are fighting for (your) native land.
2. We are building altars for the goddesses.
3. The sailor announces the victory to the queen.
4. The poet is telling stories to the queen's daughters.
5. Why do you carry roses to the gate?
6. The sailors blame the farmers. The farmers blame the sailors.
7. He is sailing to Britain. The girls are walking to the gates.
8. We are carrying letters to the queen.
9. Farmers praise the fertility of the land.
10. Who blames the poet? Whom do you blame?

LESSON VIII

THE ABLATIVE 'WITH,' 'BY'

1. The *Ablative* is used to express *Cause, Manner, Means* or *Instrument*.

'*With,*' '*from,*' '*by*' and '*in*' represent the force of the Ablative only in a general way. They must not in all cases be translated by the simple ablative.

Very many words of all parts of speech have two or more distinct values, and so must be translated into Latin according to their meaning.

2.

'With'

- (1) *Aquilam sagittā vulnerat.* He wounds the eagle with an arrow.
 (2) *Cum nautā ambulat.* He walks with (in company with) the sailor.

(1) 'with' may denote the *means* or *instrument*, and is then translated by the *Ablative case alone*.

Ablative of Means or Instrument.

(2) 'with' may mean 'along with' or 'in company with' and denote *accompaniment*, and is then translated by 'cum' and the *Ablative*. **Ablative of Accompaniment.**

3.

'By'

- (1) *victoriā nautārum.* By the victory of the sailors.
fābulis. By tales.
 (2) *ā nautis.* By the sailors. *ab agricolis.* By the farmers.

(1) 'by' may denote the *cause* or *means* (a thing), and is then translated by the *Ablative alone*. **Ablative of Cause.**

(2) 'by' may express the *agent* (a person) by whom a thing is done, and is then translated by 'ā' or 'ab' and the *Ablative*. **Ablative of Agent.**

'ab' must be used before vowels or h.

Before consonants 'ā' may be used, and in many cases 'ab' is also admissible.

4.

Vocabulary

LATIN WORD	MEANING	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE
<i>aquila</i>	eagle	aquiline
<i>fuga</i>	flight	fugitive
<i>funda</i>	sling	
<i>sagitta</i>	arrow	
<i>vita</i>	life	vital
<i>oppugnō</i>	attack, assail	
<i>superō</i>	conquer, prevail (over)	
<i>vulnerō</i>	wound	vulnerable

EXERCISE

A

TRANSLATE 'WITH' DENOTING MEANS OR INSTRUMENT.

1. With an arrow ; with water ; with a crown ; with a rose.
2. With arrows ; with crowns ; with roses.

TRANSLATE 'WITH' DENOTING ACCOMPANIMENT.

3. With the girl ; with the farmer ; with the queen.
4. With sailors ; with letter ; with poets ; with the forces.

TRANSLATE 'BY' DENOTING THE CAUSE OR MEANS.

5. By a letter ; by money ; by the shade ; by victory.
6. By victories ; by roses ; by water ; by stories ; by flight.

TRANSLATE 'BY' DENOTING THE AGENT.

7. By the girl ; by the poets ; by the farmer ; by the sailors.

B

1. They wound eagles with arrows.
2. You are fighting for the queen's life.
3. We attack the eagles with slings.
4. Thou art conquering. We conquer. You conquer.
5. Why do the girls adorn the tables with roses ?
6. The poets are delighting the girls with stories.

LESSON IX

THE ABLATIVE 'FROM,' 'IN'

I. 'From'

(1) **Ab** insulā navigat. He sails from (away from) the island.(2) **Ex** silvā ambulat. He walks from (out of) the wood.(1) 'from,' 'away from, off from' = **ā** or **ab** and the Ablative.(2) 'from,' 'out of' = **ē** or **ex** and the Ablative.

'ex' must be used before vowels or h.

Before consonants sometimes 'ē,' sometimes 'ex,' is used.

2.

‘in’ and ‘into’
‘on’ or ‘upon’

in aquā = in the water. *in aquam* = into the water.

‘*in*’ is translated into Latin by ‘*in*’ and the *Ablative*.

‘*into*’ is translated into Latin by ‘*in*’ and the *Accusative*.

in ōrā = on, or, upon the shore, *implying* ‘rest.’

in ōram = on, or, upon the shore, *implying* ‘motion.’

3. Across = *trans*Through = *per*Against = *contrā*On account of = *ob* or *propter*

} All govern the *Accusative*.

4.

Vocabulary

LATIN WORD	MEANING	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE
<i>inopia</i>	want, scarcity	
<i>ōra</i>	shore	
<i>ripa</i>	bank	riparian
<i>silva</i>	wood, forest	silvan
<i>sententia</i>	vote, opinion	sentiment
<i>hiemō</i>	winter, pass the winter	
<i>properō</i>	hasten	
<i>rogō</i>	ask	interrogate
<i>vastō</i>	lay waste, devastate	

EXERCISE

A

1. Out of the water ; out of the wood ; out of Gaul.
2. Out of the island ; out of native land.
3. From Italy ; from the islands ; from the moon.
4. In Gaul ; in the water ; in Italy ; in the island.
5. Into Britain ; into the islands ; into the earth.
6. Through Gaul ; across Britain ; through the islands.
7. Across the road ; against the queens ; against the farmer.
8. On account of the letter ; on account of the crowns.

E

1. He wounds the eagle with an arrow. He hastens into Gaul.
2. They attack the forces with slings. We ask the poet's opinion.
3. They are passing the winter in the wood. You lay waste the shores.
4. They hasten to the bank. We fight in defence of (our) lives.
5. The sailors fight for the queen's life. They are conquering.
6. On account of scarcity of arrows they fight with slings.
7. They stand on the banks. We stand on the shore.

LESSON X

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE
FIRST CONJUGATION

1. Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>amā ba m, I was loving</i>	<i>amā bā mus, we were loving</i>
2. <i>amā bā s</i>	<i>amā bā tis</i>
3. <i>amā ba t</i>	<i>amā ba nt</i>

2. Future

1. <i>amā bō, I shall love</i>	<i>amā bi mus, we shall love</i>
2. <i>amā bi s, thou wilt love</i>	<i>amā bi tis, you will love</i>
3. <i>amā bi t, he will love</i>	<i>amā bu nt, they will love</i>

3. The Imperfect and Future Indicative Active of the First Conjugation are formed by adding endings to *amā*, the present-stem, as follows :—

	STEM	TENSE
PRESENT	<i>amā</i>	<i>amō = amao</i> (see Lesson I, 4)
IMPERFECT	<i>amā bā¹</i>	<i>amā ba m</i>
FUTURE	<i>amā bi (bō, bu)</i>	<i>amā bō</i>

¹ In the Imperfect *ba* = was, and *m* the proper ending to represent the first person singular (compare English *my, me*) is seen.

amā ba m = loving was I.

Similarly, in the Future, the tense sign *bi, bō, bu* expresses futurity.

amā bi mus = love shall we.

4. Note the **exact force and meaning** of the **Imperfect Tense**.

amābam = I was loving, I used to love.

clāmābat = He kept shouting, he shouted (continuously).

The **Imperfect** denotes *continued, repeated, or progressive action*.

Do **not** translate the Imperfect by the English Past Indefinite (I loved, I shouted). It can be so translated only when the action implied is clearly continued or repeated.

5. *amābō* = I shall love, or, I shall be loving.

6. The Imperfect of *dō* is *dābam, dābās*, etc.
The Future of *dō* is *dābō, dābis*, etc.

7. Order of Words

Nauta agricolae pecūniam saepe dat. The sailor often gives money to the farmer.

Note the usual order :—

Subject — Indirect Object — Direct Object — Adverb (or Adverbial Phrase) — Verb.

EXERCISE

nōn = not ; *saepe* = often ; *semper* = always.

A

1. *Laudō, laudābam, laudābō. Pugnābat, pugnābit.*
2. *Nōn dant ; nōn saepe dābant ; nōn semper dābunt.*
3. *Ambulābāmus, ambulābimus. Vocābās, vocābis.*
4. *Postulābant, postulābunt. Aedificābātis, aedificābitis.*
5. *Poētās dēlectābat. Rēginam nōn dēlectābunt.*
6. *Insulam oppugnābātis. In silvā habitābimus.*
7. *Puellis fabulās narrābat. Nautis victōriam nuntiābitis.*
8. *In silvā ambulābō. In silvam ambulābam.*
9. *Nautae lūnam exspectābunt. Ad insulam nāvigābat.*
10. *In umbrā stant. In aquā stābant.*
11. *Rēgīna cōpiās parābit. Aram aedificābant.*
12. *Per Galliam properābis. Cum nautā ambulābitis.*
13. *Ā Britannīā nāvigābō. Agricolaec pecūniam dābant.*

B

1. I carry, was carrying, shall carry.
2. He praises, was praising, will praise.
3. We are calling, were calling, shall call.
4. He will walk through the wood. We were not walking.
5. He was ploughing the land. They will often plough.
6. The farmer was looking at the eagle. He will wait for the troops.
7. The sailors were walking from the shore. You will walk.
8. The girl will give the queen roses. He was not giving.
9. We shall fight for (our) native land. You were fighting.
10. They were building altars. You will be building.
11. They were hastening out of Italy. We shall hasten out of Gaul.
12. They were laying waste the land. We are devastating the shores.
13. They announce the victory. You were announcing.
14. They dwell in the wood. We shall walk out of the wood.
15. For (our) altars we shall fight. For (their) native land they were fighting.



ARCH OF CONSTANTINE.

LESSON XI

SECOND DECLENSION

1. Nominative endings are **-us, -er, -ir** and **-um**.
Genitive ending **-i**.

2. Gender

Nouns in **-us, -er, and -ir** are Masculine.
Nouns in **-um** are Neuter.

3. Nouns in **-us** are declined thus:—

	Dominus, lord, master	Base, domin-
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	domin us	domin i
GENITIVE	domin i	domin ōrum
DATIVE	domin ō	domin is
ACCUSATIVE	domin um	domin ōs
VOCATIVE	domin e	domin i
ABLATIVE	domin ō	domin is

4. Proper Nouns in **-ius** and **filius, son**, have **-i** for **-ie** in Vocative Singular, and generally **-i** for **-ii** in Genitive Singular.

5. Decline the following words like **dominus**.

All are *Masculine*.

LATIN WORD	MEANING	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE
servus, servi	slave, servant	servant, serf
amicus, amici	friend	amicable
animus, animi	mind	unanimous
campus, campi	plain	
deus, dei	god	deist, deify
equus, equi	horse	equine
hortus, horti	garden	horticulture
gladius, gladii	sword	gladiator
mūrus, mūri	wall	mural
oculus, oculi	eye	oculist
populus, populi	people, populace	
Rōmulus, Rōmuli	Romulus	
ventus, venti	wind	
et	and	
-que ¹		

¹ -que is an *enclitic*, i.e., it is appended to another word.
puer puellaque, the boy and the girl.

EXERCISE

A

1. In campō ; in hortō servi ; in domini animō.
2. Per campum ; trans mūrōs ; in hortum ; in oculōs.
3. Ā Rōmulō ; ab amicis ; ā servis ; ā populō.
4. Ad servum ; ad amicōs ; ad hortum ; ad dominōs.
5. Ex hortō ; ē campō ; cum dominō ; cum servis.
6. Dominus amicō gladium dat. Domini servis gladiōs dābant.
7. Rōmulus mūrūm aedificābit. Mūrōs Rōmae aedificābat.
8. Servus mensam ornat. Servi in hortum ambulābant.
9. Servus in hortō ambulābit. Pecūniam servō dābis.
10. Dominus hortum laudābit. Domini puero pecūniam dant.
11. Amicus hortum rēginae laudat. Servi mūrōs hortōrum laudant.
12. Horti dominōrum animōs servōrum dēlectant. In hortum properābimus.
13. Rēgina et servi rosās laudant.

B

EXERCISE OBJECT

1. To the gods and goddesses. To the friends of the sailors.
2. To the sons and daughters. To the master of the slaves.

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

3. With the friends of the slave. With the slave's master.
4. With Romulus. With the queen's son. With horses.

ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

5. With eyes ; with a sword ; with swords ; by the wind.
6. He was building a wall. He will delight the friends.
7. They are praising the slaves. We were calling the master.
8. You will look at the gardens. I was demanding the horses.
9. The slave praises the master. The servants praise (their) masters.
10. The queen was praising the servant. The servant will praise the queen.
11. The friend will walk in the garden. The friends are walking.
12. I shall give the friend money. He was giving the slave a sword.

LESSON XII

SECOND DECLENSION

Nouns in -er and -ir

1. <i>Ager, field</i>		<i>Base, agr-</i>
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	ager	agr i
GENITIVE	agr i	agr ōrum
DATIVE	agr ō	agr is
ACCUSATIVE	agr um	agr ōs
VOCATIVE	ager	agr i
ABLATIVE	agr ō	agr is
Puer, boy		<i>Base, puer-</i>
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	puer	puer i
GENITIVE	puer i	puer ōrum
DATIVE	puer ō	puer is
ACCUSATIVE	puer um	puer ōs
VOCATIVE	puer	puer i
ABLATIVE	puer ō	puer is

2. Declension

Most nouns of the Second Declension ending in -er are declined like *ager, agri*.

The following are all *Masculine* :—

faber, fabri, workman.
liber, libri, book.
magister, magistri, master, teacher.
minister, ministri, servant.
arbiter, arbitri, arbitrator.
Auster, Austri, south wind.

3. The following nouns in *-er* are declined like *puer*, *puerl*. All are *Masculine* :—

gener, *generl*, son-in-law.
socer, *socerl*, father-in-law.
Liber, *Liberl*, Bacchus (god of wine).
liberl, *liberōrum* (pl.), children.
vesper, *vesperl*, evening.

Compounds of *-fer* and *-ger*, as :—

signifer, *signiferl*, standard-bearer.
armiger, *armigerl*, armor-bearer.

4.

Vir, man

Bas, *vir*-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	<i>vir</i>	<i>vir l</i>
GENITIVE	<i>vir l</i>	<i>vir ōrum</i>
DATIVE	<i>vir ō</i>	<i>vir is</i>
ACCUSATIVE	<i>vir um</i>	<i>vir ōs</i>
VOCATIVE	<i>vir</i>	<i>vir l</i>
ABLATIVE	<i>vir ō</i>	<i>vir is</i>

5.

Vocabulary

LATIN WORD	MEANING	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE
<i>barbarus</i> , <i>barbarl</i>	barbarian	
<i>lēgātus</i> , <i>lēgāt</i>	(1) lieutenant, (2) ambassador	legate
<i>lūdus</i> , <i>lūd</i>	play, sport	ludicrous
<i>nuntius</i> , <i>nuntl</i>	(1) message, (2) messenger	announce
<i>socius</i> , <i>soci</i>	ally	associate, sociable
<i>Britannus</i> , <i>Britannl</i>	Briton	
<i>Gallus</i> , <i>Gall</i>	a Gaul	

The only nouns in *-er* and *-ir* required for exercises are :—

ager, *faber*, *liber*, *magister*, *puer*, *gener*, *socer*, *liberl*, *vir*.

All the nouns in this vocabulary are *Masculine*

EXERCISE

A

1. Agri, agrorum, fabrorum, fabrō, librōrum, librī.
2. Lūdis, lūdō, puerum, puerōs, liberī, liberis.
3. Ā barbaris; ā lēgātō; ā populō; ā Gallia.
4. Ad Britannōs; ad nuntium; ad socerum; ad generōs.
5. Contrā barbarōs; cum sociis; in agris; in agrum.
6. Puer librōs amat. Puerī librum amābunt.
7. Fabri puerōs laudābant. Puerī fabrōs dēlectābunt.
8. Agrōs agricolae vastās. Populus virum laudat.
9. Magister lūdōs puerōrum amat. Rēgina cum filiābus ambulat.
10. Agricolae cum filiis agrōs arant. Magister cum pueris in hortō ambulābat.
11. Virī agrum arābunt. Puerī cum magistris lūdōs in agris spectant.
12. Quandō puerī in agris stābant?
13. Quis sociōs postulat? Quem socii postulābunt?
14. Cūr virī agrōs nōn arābunt? Cūr populō victōriam nuntiās?

E

DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT

1. To the boys, to the girls; to the boy, to the girl.
2. To the boy and girl; to the boys and girls.
3. To the man; to the men; to the Gauls and Britons.

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

4. With the barbarians; with men and boys; with the Gauls.
5. With the lieutenant; with the ambassadors; with the children.
6. Against the allies; against the people; against the Britons.
7. Into the fields; in the fields; from the field.
8. The forces of the allies; the boy's books; the queen's son-in-law.
9. Why do you demand books? When will the barbarians devastate the land?
10. The allies are preparing forces against the barbarians.
11. The man with (his) sons is walking through the fields.
12. The Gauls will devastate the fields of the allies.
13. The workmen will build the walls of Rome.

14. The slaves were attacking the masters with swords.
15. The sports will delight the minds of the children.
16. The boys are carrying books to the master.
17. The man with (his) boy will plough the field.
18. What do the ambassadors demand? Who will ask the ambassadors?
19. When were the boys and men walking in the fields?
20. Why will the victory delight the messenger?

LESSON XIII

NEUTER NOUNS

1. Nouns in **-um** of the Second Declension are **Neuter**, and are declined thus:—

Bellum, war		Base, bell-
	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	bell um	bell a
GENITIVE	bell i	bell ōrum
DATIVE	bell ō	bell is
ACCUSATIVE	bell um	bell a
VOCATIVE	bell um	bell a
ABLATIVE	bell ō	bell is

2. Rule for Neuter Nouns of all Declensions

The Nominative, Accusative and Vocative cases are always alike.

In the plural these cases always end in **-a**.

3. Base

The Base is obtained by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. Therefore, in learning Nouns, *always learn the Nominative and Genitive Singular together.*

Question:—

What is the base of *servus, faber, gener, praemium, argentum.*

4.

Vocabulary

These Nouns are all *Neuter* :—

LATIN WORD	MEANING	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE
praemium, praemii	reward	premium
argentum, argenti	silver	Argentine (Republic)
aurum, auri	gold	auriferous
forum, fori	forum, market-place	forensic
jumentum, jumentii	beast of burden	
lignum, ligni	wood, timber	ligneous
dōnum, dōni	gift	donative
oppidum, oppidi	town	
proelium, proelii	battle	
periculum, periculi	danger	peril
saxum, saxi	rock	
signum, signi	standard	signal
tectum, tecti	building, dwelling	
tēlum, tēli	dart, javelin	
vallum, valli	rampart, wall	
arma, armōrum, pl.	arms	

EXERCISE

A

1. In bellō; in proeliis; in proelium; in oppidum; in oppidis.
2. Ex oppidō; ē proeliō; contrā oppida; ad tectum; ad templa.
3. Trans saxa; in vallō; per tectum; prō sociis.
4. Socii oppidum aedificant. Barbari oppidum oppugnābunt.
5. Rogātis, rogābāmus, rogābis.
6. Postulās, postulābātis, rogābit, rogābat.
7. Britanni proelium nō expectābunt. Nautae oppidum laudant.
8. Rēgina pueris praemia dat. Aurum templi laudābat.
9. Agricolae lignum ad tectum portant. Pueri librōs ad templum portābant.
10. Templum in oppidō aedificant. Equōs in agris spectābāmus.
11. Fabri tecta aedificābunt. Arma in forum portant.

B

1. By rewards; by gold and silver; by rocks and darts; by gifts.
2. Into the buildings of the town. On account of the man's gifts.
3. Into the forum; to the towns; from the temple; across the rampart.
4. They are carrying arms. He will give gold to the allies.
5. Gifts delight boys. He gives rewards to the girls.
6. Beasts of burden will carry the wood. The troops are preparing arms.
7. The friends are looking at the standards. We are expecting gifts.
8. The barbarian will wound the lieutenant with a dart.
9. War delights the minds of sailors. They seize the rampart.
10. The boys were carrying arms into the garden. They are walking into the temple.
11. Why does war delight men? Why do you carry darts?
12. Who will demand arms? Whither are you carrying the gifts?

LESSON XIV

REVIEW SPECIAL POINTS

1. Give the nominative singular endings in the First and Second Declensions.
2. Give the gender of the following nouns and state the rule for each: *mensa, nauta, dominus, praemium, mŭrus, puella, amicus, magister, aquila, ager, dŏnum, rosa, liber, lignum, silva, agricola, via, templum.*
3. Inflect in the present, imperfect and future indicative active: *laudŏ, ambulŏ, arŏ, aedificŏ, dŏ.*
4. Give the Acc. Sing. and Acc. Pl.; Gen. Sing. and Gen. Pl.; Dat. Sing. and Dat. Pl.; Abl. Sing. and Abl. Pl. of each of the nouns in 2.

5. Some nouns have a different meaning in the singular and plural.

cōpia, ae, plenty, abundance	cōpiae, ārum, forces, troops
littera, ae, letter of the alphabet	litterae, ārum, letter, despatch
auxilium, i, aid	auxilia, ōrum, auxiliaries
castrum, i, fort	castra, ōrum, camp
frumentum, i, corn, grain	frumenta, ōrum, crops
impedimentum, i, hindrance, impediment	impedimenta, ōrum, baggage

|||||

6. Some nouns have only a plural.

dīvitiae, ārum, riches
indutiae, ārum, truce
insidiae, ārum, ambush, ambushade, treachery
arma, armōrum, arms

7. locus, loci, place, is Masculine in the singular; the plural is loca, ōrum, Neuter.

8. hiberna, ōrum, neuter plural of hibernus, a, um, an adjective meaning *winter, wintry*. is used for hiberna castra, and means *winter camp, winter quarters*.

EXERCISE

A

1. Cōpia frumenti; cum cōpiis; contrā cōpiās rēginae.
2. Auxilia sociōrum; in castra; in castris; in litteris.
3. In insidiās; in insidiis; in hiberna; in hibernis.
4. Propter divitiās; dē¹ divitiis; dē indutiis.

B

1. They carry a despatch to the lieutenant.
2. We shall demand arms. He waits for the baggage.
3. The sailors will demand arms from the queen.
4. Who will announce the victory in the camp?
5. The queen's forces will attack the camp.
6. They demand aid. They were demanding auxiliaries.
7. You are carrying a supply of corn. You are waiting for auxiliaries.

¹ dē, concerning, preposition governing the abl.

LESSON XV

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND
DECLENSIONS

1. Examine :—

Vir bonus=a good man.

Puella bona=a good girl.

Dōnum bonum=a good gift.

Vir est bonus. The man is good.

Viri sunt boni. The men are good.

Puella est bona. The girl is good.

Puellae sunt bonae. The girls are
good.Dōnum est bonum. The gift is
good.Dōna sunt bona. The gifts are
good.

An adjective in Latin has not one form only as in English,
but *changes its form* so as to agree with the noun it qualifies.

It is *declined*. It has *gender, number and case*.

2.

Rule

An adjective in Latin, whether attributive or predicate,
agrees in gender, number and case with the noun it qualifies.

3.

Classification of Adjectives

Adjectives are divided into two classes :—

(1) Those of the First and Second Declensions ;

(2) Those of the Third Declension.

4.

Bonus, bona, bonum, good

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	bon us	bon a	bon um	bon i	bon ae	bon a
GEN.	bon i	bon ae	bon i	bon ōrum	bon ārum	bon ōrum
DAT.	bon ō	bon ae	bon ō	bon is	bon is	bon is
ACC.	bon um	bon am	bon um	bon ōs	bon ās	bon a
VOC.	bon e	bon a	bon um	bon i	bon ae	bon a
ABL.	bon ō	bon ā	bon ō	bon is	bon is	bon is

5. Observe:—

It should not be necessary to learn the declension of **bonus**.

Like what noun is **bonus**, in the Masc. declined? In the Fem.? In the Neut.?

6.

Vocabulary

LATIN WORD	MEANING	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE
altus, a, um	high, tall, deep	altitude
cārus, a, um	dear, beloved	charity
clārus, a, um	clear, bright, distinguished	clarify
densus, a, um	thick	dense
lātus, a, um	broad, wide	latitude
longus, a, um	long	longitude
malus, a, um	bad	malicious
magnus, a, um	large, great	magnitude
multus, a, um	much, in pl. many	multitude
parvus, a, um	small, little	
rapidus, a, um	swift	rapid
bellicōsus, a, um	warlike	bellicose
meus, a, um	my, mine	
tuus, a, um	thy, thine, your (referring to one person).	
sus, a, um	his, her, its, their (Reflexive Possessive).	

est = is; sunt = are.

7. Position of the Adjective

The usual position of an attributive adjective in Latin is after the noun.

In translating English into Latin, get the noun in the proper form first and then make the adjective agree with it.

EXERCISE

A

1. Saxa magna; pueri multi; anni longi; dōnum tuum; dōna mea.
2. Liber suus; liberi mei; viri clāri; amicus cārus; stella clāra.
3. In aquā altā; in aquam altam; in hortum meum; in patriā tuā.
4. Per insulās magnās; cum amicō cārō; cum magnis cōpilis.

5. Multās librās amat. Poētā bonū laudat. Nautās malās culpāt.
6. Agricolaē multī; nautārum bonōrum; rēginārum bonārum.

E

1. A tall boy ; tall boys ; high rocks ; tall men ; large fields.
2. Bright stars ; distinguished poets ; large islands ; many books.
3. In the thick wood ; into a thick wood ; in large fields ; in your garden.
4. With many arrows ; with large roses ; by many rewards ; with long swords.
5. By great men ; by the good farmers ; by many boys ; by my friends.

C

1. Puerī multī in agrīs magnīs ambulant.
2. Agricolaē multī cum puerīs agrōs magnōs arābunt.
3. Puellae multae librās nōn amant. Virī stellās clārās spectābunt.
4. Agricolaē cum filiābus cāris ambulant. Librās meās portō.
5. Servi librum meum ad magistrum portābunt. Librās tuās portābō.
6. Puerī bonī magistrōs suōs laudābunt. Puellae bonae amicōs suōs laudābant.
7. Poēta clārus puerīs puellisque est cārus.
8. Templā sunt parva. Tectum est magnum. Cōpiaē sunt multae.
9. Pro patriā carā pugnāmus. Lāta est via. Campōs magnōs vastābunt.

D

1. Many men were walking in the fields. He was standing on high rocks.
2. They were walking to the large town. We were walking across high rocks.
3. The men are destroying my fields.
4. Who will praise the distinguished men ? We announce a great victory.
5. We are looking at the large rocks in the thick wood.
6. Many victories delight the sailors.
7. Why are you building large temples ?
8. We stand in the deep water. They demand many books.
9. The stars are bright. The letters are many.
10. The island is long and broad. The Gauls are warlike.

LESSON XVI

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (CONTINUED)

I. *Aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick**Base, aegr-*

SINGULAR			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	aeger	aegr a	aegr um
GEN.	aegr i	aegr ae	aegr i
DAT.	aegr ō	aegr ae	aegr ō
ACC.	aegr um	aegr am	aegr um
VOC.	aeger	aegr a	aegr um
ABL.	aegr ō	aegr ā	aegr ō
PLURAL			
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	aegr i	aegr ae	aegr a
GEN.	aegr ōrum	aegr ārum	aegr ōrum
DAT.	aegr is	aegr is	aegr is
ACC.	aegr ōs	aegr ās	aegr a
VOC.	aegr i	aegr ae	aegr a
ABL.	aegr is	aegr is	aegr is

Observe :—

You should, without learning, know the declension of *aeger*. *Aeger* in the Masc. is declined like the noun *ager*; in the Fem. like *mensa*; in the Neut. like *bellum*.

2. Like *aeger* are declined :

LATIN WORD	MEANING	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE
āter, ātra, ātrum	black, dark	
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum	frequent, numerous	
integer, integra, integrum	whole	integer
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum	beautiful	
sacer, sacra, sacrum	sacred	
noster, nostra, nostrum	our	
vester, vestra, vestrum	your (referring to more than one)	
dexter, dextra, dextrum	right (hand)	dexterity
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum	left (hand)	sinister

3. **Tener, tenera, tenerum, tender**

Base, tener- (e retained as in *puer*)

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	tener	tener a	tener um
GEN.	tener i	tener ae	tener i
DAT.	tener ō	tener ae	tener ō
ACC.	tener um	tener am	tener um
VOC.	tener	tener a	tener um
ABL.	tener ō	tener ā	tener ō

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	tener i	tener ae	tener a
GEN.	tener ōrum	tener ārum	tener ōrum
DAT.	tener is	tener is	tener is
ACC.	tener ōs	tener ās	tener a
VOC.	tener i	tener ae	tener a
ABL.	tener is	tener is	tener is

4. Like **tener** are declined :—

LATIN WORD	MEANING	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE
asper, aspera, asperum	rough	asperity
liber, libera, liberum	free	liberty
miser, misera, miserum	wretched	miserable

EXERCISE

A

1. *Vir miser; viri miseri; dñum pulchrum; dña pulchra.*
2. *Amicōrum nostrōrum; puellārum pulchrārum; servi aegri.*
3. *Agricolis miseris; fabris vestris; liberis nostris.*
4. *Ad templum sacrum; ad dominōs miserōs; in terrā liberā.*
5. *Per portam dextram; in sinistrā ripā; ob populum miserum.*

B

1. Of our native land; of the sick slave; of your horses.
2. In the right eye; into the left eye; across beautiful fields.
3. To free men; for the wretched workmen; to the beautiful queen.

38 PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, FUTURE PERFECT INDIC. ACTIVE

4. (Along) with our ambassadors ; with your allies ; with large forces.
5. In many battles ; into many towns ; out of the beautiful temple.

C

1. We shall give many books to the sick boy.
2. He will give our friend a book.
3. The beautiful daughters of the queen are calling the servants.
4. They are carrying gold and silver into the sacred temples.
5. Why do you plough the rough fields ?

LESSON XVII

PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

I. Principal Parts

The Principal Parts of a verb are the forms which contain the stems from which the whole conjugation may, according to definite rules, be formed.

The Principal Parts of *amō* are

<i>amō</i> , Pres. Indic.,	}	showing the <i>Present Stem</i> , <i>amā-</i>
<i>amāre</i> , Pres. Infin.,		
<i>amāv</i> 1, Perf. Indic.,		showing the <i>Perfect Stem</i> , <i>amāv-</i>
<i>amāt um</i> , Supine ¹ ,		showing the <i>Supine Stem</i> , <i>amāt-</i>

2. The Perfect Indicative Active is one of the principal parts, and from its stem the Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative Active are formed by rules that hold good for all verbs of any conjugation.

TENSES	MEANING	HOW FORMED
PERFECT. <i>amāv</i> 1	(1) <i>I have loved</i> (2) <i>I loved</i>	Perfect Stem + <i>i</i> .
PLUPERFECT. <i>amāv erat</i> 1	(1) <i>I had loved</i> (2) <i>I had been loving</i>	Perfect Stem + <i>eram</i>
FUT. PERF. <i>amāv erō</i>	<i>I shall have loved</i>	Perfect Stem + <i>erō</i>

¹ The Supine in -um has the force of the English infinitive used to express purpose ; but it is used only after verbs of motion.

3.

Perfect

SINGULAR

PLURAL

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. amāv ī, (1) <i>I have loved</i>
(2) <i>I loved</i> | amāv imus. (1) <i>We have loved</i>
(2) <i>We loved</i> |
| 2. amāv istī | amāv istis |
| 3. amāv it | { amāv ĕrunt
amāv ĕre |

4.

Pluperfect

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. amāv eram, <i>I had loved</i> | amāv erāmus, <i>We had loved</i> |
| 2. amāv erās | amāv erātis |
| 3. amāv erat | amāv erant |

5.

Future Perfect

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. amāv erō, <i>I shall have loved</i> | amāverimus, <i>We shall have loved</i> |
| 2. amāv eris | amāv eritis |
| 3. amāv erit | amāv erint |

Note :—Mark well the difference in meaning between the Imperfect Tense and the Perfect Tense

amābam = I was loving or I loved (continuously).

amāvi = I loved (a single definite act or fact), or, I have loved.

6.

Principal Parts

amō, am āre, amāv ī, amāt um

On the same principle give the principal parts of the following verbs :—

expugnō	take by storm	
occupō	take possession of, seize	occupy, occupation
impetrō	obtain a request for	
col locō	station, place	collocate
com parō	collect, raise, procure	compare
com portō	bring in	
con vocō	call together, assemble	convocation
con firmō	establish, encourage, assure	confirm
re novō	renew	renovate
re vocō	call back, recall	revoke
re nuntiō	bring back word	renounce

The principal parts of *dō* are

dō, dāre, dēdi, dātum.

The tenses derived from the perfect stem are conjugated thus:—

PERFECT. *dedi dedisti, dedit, dedimus, dedistis, dedērunt.*

PLUPERFECT. *dederam, dederās, dederat, etc.*

FUT. PERFECT. *dederō, dederis, dederit, etc.*

So also:—

circumdō, dāre, -dēdi, -dātum, surround.

Note the phrase:—

in fugam dāre = put to flight.

The principal parts of *stō* are

stō, stāre, stēti, stātum.

Observe the force of *con, com (=cum) = together*; and *re = back*.

EXERCISE

A

1. *Ambulāvit, ambulāverat, ambulāverit, clāmāvimus, clāmāverāmus, clāmāverimus.*
2. *Expugnāvi, occupāvistī, impetrāvit, convocāvimus, renovāvistis, revocāvērunt, renuntiāvērunt.*
3. *Magna Gallōrum oppida expugnāvit. Oppidum magnum oppugnāvērunt.*
4. *Gallī cōpiās magnās comparāverant. Animōs Gallōrum confirmāvimus.*
5. *Oppidum mūrō circumdēdit. Dōna multa dēderis.*
6. *Pueris bonis dōna multa dēdistī. Quem laudāveris?*
7. *Gallī proelium sagittis fundisque renovāvērunt.*
8. *In castra cōpiās revocāvit. Sociōs in oppidō collocāverint.*
9. *Rōmāni bellum cum Gallis renovābunt. Magnam cōpiam frūmenti comportāverant.*
10. *Cōpiās sociōrum in fugam dedērunt. Lēgātī castra barbarōrum occupāvērunt.*
11. *Barbarī nostra castra occupāverint. Cūr bellum renovāvistis?*
12. *Quandō renuntiāvistī? Ubi hiemāverās?*
13. *Quō aquam portāvistī? Quis servōs laudābit?*

B

1. Give first singular of each tense, Indicative Active, of *laudō*.
2. I was building; I built. I shall demand; I shall have demanded.
3. I hasten; I had hastened. He asked; he will ask; he had asked.
4. The farmers were ploughing. The sailors had called.
5. The men will give. The boys have given.
6. The slaves will have stood. Why did you demand
7. When did we shout? Who had hastened? Whom did you praise?
8. Whither will you have hastened? Where had you dwelt?

C

1. They took your camp by storm. The messengers brought back word.
2. We assembled the people in (=into) the forum.
3. You had walked in the beautiful garden.
4. The lieutenant recalled the troops from the battle.
5. The Britons have brought corn into the winter camp.
6. He had stationed large forces on the wall.
7. We shall obtain our request. They will have seized the buildings.
8. They stood in the deep water. You have put the forces to flight.
9. The allies will put the Gauls to flight.
10. We will surround the camp with a rampart.
11. At (cum) great danger the sailors stormed the walls.
12. He will assemble the auxiliaries. You had collected baggage-animals. We will seize the baggage.

LESSON XVIII

IMPERATIVE MOOD

The Imperative Mood is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties, as in English.

Imperative Active

PRESENT	
SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>amā, love or love thou</i>	<i>amāte, love ye or you</i>
FUTURE	
2. <i>amātō, thou shalt love</i>	<i>amātōte, you shall love</i>
3. <i>amātō, he shall love</i>	<i>amantō, they shall love</i>

The use of the Future Imperative is limited to actions distinctly future, and to wills, laws, treaties, etc.

EXERCISE

(VOCATIVE CASE AND PRESENT IMPERATIVE)

A

1. *Lēgāti, cōpiās vestrās convocāte. Proelium renovāte.*
2. *Stellās pulchrās, nautae, spectāte. Pecūniam, magister, postulā.*
3. *Ad arma populum vocā. Servi, lignum in tectum portāte.*
4. *Socii, frūmentum comportāte. Mi fili,¹ magistrum amā.*
5. *Serve, epistolam ad rēginām portā. Cōpiās, lēgāti, revocāte.*
6. *Fili mei, magistrōs amāte. Victōriam, lēgāte, nuntiā.*

B

1. *Farmer, plough your fields. Lieutenant, assemble your forces.*
2. *Boy, love books. Lieutenants, assemble your forces.*
3. *Sailors, fight for your native land. O wretched man, hasten to the town.*
4. *Messenger, summon the workmen. Announce the victory, Romans.*
5. *Slave, give the boy his books. Seize the town, sailors.*

¹ Contracted form of Vocative of *meus filius*.

LESSON XIX

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES

1. An Interrogative sentence may be introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb.

quōmodō } how? in what manner?
 quemadmodum }
 quam } how? used with adjectives and adverbs;
 quam altus? how high?
 quam diū? how long (of time)?
 quantus, a um, how large? how great?
 quot (indeclinable adjective), how many?

2. An Interrogative sentence may be introduced by one of three particles.

-nē, nōne, num

Their values are as follows :—

QUESTION.	ANSWER EXPECTED OR DESIRED.
Puernē amat? { Does the boy } { love? }	Amat. He loves = Yes, or Nōn amat. He does not love = No.
Nōne puer amat? { Does not the } { boy love? } { The boy loves, } { does he not? }	Amat. He loves = Yes.
Num puer amat? { Does the boy } { love? } { The boy does } { not love, } { does he? }	Nōn amat. He does not love = No.

3. The particle -nē is an *enclitic*, i.e., it must be appended to some other word. It is usually written after the first word, which is also the emphatic word.

It asks for information simply.

Nōne expects the answer Yes.

Num expects the answer No.

4. Yes may be represented by *sānē*, or, *vērō*, *certainly*.

No may be represented by *minimē*, *by no means*.

Usually, however, they are represented by a repetition of the verb as in the preceding sentences.

5. Double Direct Questions

Whether — or = *utrum* — an or -*nē* — an.

Whether — or not = *utrum* — *annōn*.

Utrum filium an filiam	} amat?	{ Whether does he love the son or the daughter? Does he love the son or the daughter?
Filiumnē an filiam		

Utrum filium amat annōn? Does he love the son or not?

Position

Utrum — an or -*nē* — an should be put in close connection with the *contrasted* words.

EXERCISE

A

1. Amās-nē? num amāmus? nōnne amātis?
2. Num laudābit? nōnne laudāmus? laudāvit-nē?
3. Nōnne laudāvērunt? num amābit? nōnne amābāmus?
4. Laudābant-nē? num laudābat? nōnne laudābis?

1. Does he love? Yes. No. Does he not love? Yes. Has he loved? No.
2. Will he not praise? Yes. Will you praise? No. Shall we praise? Yes. No.

B

1. Num pueri ad oppidum ambulābant? Nōnne praemia nautae dābimus?
2. Gladium-nē in tectum portāvit? Nautae-nē aurum ad oppidum portābant?
3. Num templum pulchrum fabri aedificāvērunt?
4. Quot librōs puer magistrō dedit? Quam diū nautae pugnāvērunt?
5. Quam lātus est mūrus? quam longa sunt tēla?
6. Utrum gladiō an tēlō Gallum lēgātus vulnerāvit?
7. Aurum-nē an argentum in templum portāvistī?

C

1. Is he praising the boy? Yes. No. Did he not praise the boy? Yes.
2. Will you praise the boy? No (we shall not).
3. He was calling the master, was he not?
4. We did not lay waste the fields, did we?
5. Did they put the Gauls to flight? Yes. No.
6. Shall we obtain our request or not?
7. Is he hastening to Italy or Gaul? Do they praise or blame the boys?
8. Did he wound the eagle with an arrow or with a sling?
9. Will you renew the battle or recall your forces?
10. How will they take the town? How many books have you carried?
11. How high is the wall? How long are the walls?
12. How many standards did the barbarians seize?

LESSON XX

THE VERB SUM, I AM

Indicative

SINGULAR	PRESENT	PLURAL
1. <i>sum, I am</i>	<i>sumus, we are</i>	
2. <i>es, thou art</i>	<i>estis, you are</i>	
3. <i>est, he, etc., is</i>	<i>sunt, they are</i>	
IMPERFECT		
1. <i>eram, I was (implying continuity)</i>	<i>erāmus, we were (implying continuity)</i>	
2. <i>erās</i>	<i>erātis</i>	
3. <i>erat</i>	<i>erant</i>	
FUTURE		
1. <i>erō, I shall be</i>	<i>erimus, we shall be</i>	
2. <i>eris</i>	<i>eritis</i>	
3. <i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>	

PERFECT

SINGULAR

1. fu i (1) *I have been*
(2) *I was* (simply stated)
2. fu isti
3. fu it

PLURAL

- fu imus (1) *we have been*
(2) *we were* (simply stated)
- fu istis
- fu erunt or fu ěre

PLUPERFECT

1. fu eram, *I had been*
2. fu erās
3. fu erat

- fu erāmus, *we had been*
- fu erātis
- fu erant

FUTURE PERFECT

1. fu erō, *I shall have been*
2. fu eris
3. fu erit

- fu erimus, *we shall have been*
- fu eritis
- fu erint

Imperative

PRESENT

SINGULAR

1. es, be, or be thou

PLURAL

- este, be, or be ye or you

FUTURE

2. estō, thou shall be
3. estō, he shall be

- estōte, ye shall be
- suntō, they shall be

Infinitive

Present esse, to be

Perfect fu isse, to have been

Future fut ūrus (a, um) esse, to be about to be

Participle

Future futūrus, a, um, about to be

Principal Parts

sum, esse, fui, futūrus (future participle).¹

¹ When a verb has no supine, the future participle active which is regularly formed from the supine by changing um to ūrus may be given.

EXERCISE

A

Review Lesson XV, 1, 2, and state the rule for the agreement of a Predicate Adjective.

1. *est, erat, erit* : *fui*mus, *fuērā*mus, *fuē*rimus.
2. *sunt, erant, erunt* : *fuerint, fuerant, fuērunt*.
3. *erā*mus, *fui*mus, *fuisti, fuistis, fuerātis, fueritis*.
1. They were (perf.), they were (impf.); we shall be, they had been.
2. We shall have been, they are, you (sing.) are, they will be.
3. We had been, you were (perf.), you were (impf.), you are (pl.).
4. I was (perf.), I was (impf.), I had been, you will have been.

B

1. *Tecta sunt parva. Magna fuērunt castra.*
2. *Multi sunt socii. Silva est densa.*
3. *Liber magnus est tuus. Pulchrae erunt corōnae.*
4. *Socii Rōmānōrum fuērā*mus. *Integrae erant cōpia*e.
5. *Sacrum fuerat templum. Magnum erit periculum.*
6. *Dōna mea fuērunt pulchra, parva tua. Ubi sunt liberi?*
7. *Misernē est fīlius agricolae? Num equi sunt in campō magnō?*
8. *Nōne in castris erant auxilia? Utrum meus an tuus est gladius?*
9. *Pueri erant magni; parvae sunt puellae.*
10. *Puellae parvae in templō fuērunt. Este boni pueri.*
11. *Lūnanē est clāra? Num muri alti erant?*

C

Complete with the proper form of *bonus* as a predicate adjective.

1. *Poēta est* . *Poētae sunt* . *Nauta est* .
2. *Mensae sunt* . *Dōnum erat* . *Dōna erant* .
3. *Puella est* . *Puellae erunt* . *Amici fuērunt* .
4. The danger was great. The town will be beautiful.
5. You will be good boys. The horse is mine.
6. Your friends are many. The islands were large and beautiful.
7. The temples had been sacred. The sailors' darts were long.
8. The forces of the barbarians were fresh. The land was rough.
9. Our native land is dear to the slaves. Where are the horses?

LESSON XXI

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES IN -US AND -ER OF
THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

1. Nine adjectives in **-us** and **-er** have in all genders the genitive singular in **-ius** and the dative singular in **-i**.

2. **Unus, ūna, ūnum**
one

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ūn us	ūn a	ūn um
GEN.	ūn ius	ūn ius	ūn ius
DAT.	ūn i	ūn i	ūn i
ACC.	ūn um	ūn am	ūn um
VOC.	wanting		
ABL.	ūn ō	ūn ā	ūn ō

Uter, utra, utrum
which (of two)?

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	uter	utr a	utr um
GEN.	utr ius	utr ius	utr ius
DAT.	utr i	utr i	utr i
ACC.	utr um	utr am	utr um
VOC.	wanting		
ABL.	utr ō	utr ā	utr ō

Alius, alia, aliud
another

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ali us	ali a	ali ud
GEN.	al ius	al ius	al ius
DAT.	ali i	ali i	ali i
ACC.	ali um	ali am	ali ud
VOC.	wanting		
ABL.	ali ō	ali ā	ali ō

Alter, altera, alterum
the other (of two)

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	alter	alter a	alter um
GEN.	alter ius	alter ius	alter ius
DAT.	alter i	alter i	alter i
ACC.	alter um	alter am	alter um
VOC.	wanting		
ABL.	alter ō	alter ā	alter ō

The plural, when used, is regular, like the plural of **bonus**.

Like **ūnus** are declined **tōtus, nūllus, ūllus, sōlus**.

Like **uter** is declined **neuter**.

Observe the short **i** of **-ius** in the genitive of **alter**.

3

Vocabulary

LATIN WORD	MEANING	ENGLISH DERIVATIVE
alius, a, ud	another	alien
nūllus, a, um	no, none	nullify
sōlus, a, um	alone, only	solitude
tōtus, a, um	whole (of)	total
ūllus, a, um	any	
ūnus, a, um	one, alone	unit, unify
alter, a, um	the other, second	alter, alternate
uter, utra, utrum	which (of two)?	
neuter, neutra, neutrum	neither	neutral

alius — alius = one — another

alter — alter = the one — the other

alii — alii = some — others

alterī — alterī = the one party — the other party

EXERCISE

A

1. In proeliō ūnō. In proeliō alterō. Tōtius Galliae.
2. In nūllō oppidō tōtius Galliae. In ūnum oppidum Britanniae.
3. Per tōtam Britanniam. Terram tōtam vastābunt.
4. Britannī sōlī bellum postulant. Nūllum lēgātum exspectant.
5. In alterō oculō. Contrā Gallōs sōlōs. Ab ūnō nuntiō.
6. In alterā ripā barbarī cōpiās convocāverant.
7. Nūllum in insulā erat templum. Galli sōlī bellum renovāvērunt.
8. Ūnō vallō oppida circumdant. In neutrō proeliō.
9. Alii argentum, aurum alii dedērunt.
10. Sociōs sōlōs convocābunt.

B

1. To another girl ; to the other boy ; other workmen ; to the other workman.
2. Some praise, others blame. One gives, another demands.
3. The one island was large, the other small.
4. Of one friend ; of one daughter ; to one son.
5. The barbarians wounded one lieutenant with a sword, the other with a dart.
6. Of the queen alone. The queen's daughters alone were in the garden.
7. They will lay waste the plains of the whole of Gaul.
8. In the other camp. In the dwellings of no town.
9. Of any poet ; of no people ; to any farmer ; to no friend.

READING LESSON

The Discovery of Canada

In ōrā Galliae est oppidum unde nauta multis cum sociis trans Oceanum nāvigāvit. Post multa Oceani pericula fluvium magnum intrāvit ubi erant insulae magnae et multae. Tum in Canadā tōtā erant silvae densae ubi barbari et ferae habitābant. Nūlli agricolae agrōs arābant nec erat cōpia frūmenti. Barbaris autem tecta in ripis fluvii erant et princeps barbarōrum erat Donnacona. Nauta in ripis fluvii magni hiemāvit. Deinde in Galliam nāvigāvit.

Quis erat nauta? Unde nāvigāvit nauta? Quis erat fluvius?

Vocabulary

unde, whence=from which
 post, after (prep.)
 periculum, I, danger, peril
 fluvius, I, river
 intrō, āre, enter
 ubi, where (relative)
 tum, then, at that time
 fera, ae, wild animal

nec, nor, neither
 autem, moreover
 barbaris erant, there were to
 the barbarians = the barbar-
 ians had
 princeps, chief
 deinde, afterwards

LESSON XXII

THIRD DECLENSION

1. Nouns of the Third Declension end in

-a, -e, -i, -o, -y, -c, -l, -n, -r, s, -t, -x.

The Genitive Singular ends in **-is**.

2. There are *two classes* :—

I. Nouns whose Genitive Plural ends in **-um**

II. Nouns whose Genitive Plural ends in **-ium**

Class I is subdivided as follows :—

A. *Mute Bases* { *Labial Bases* ending in **b** or **p**.
Dental Bases ending in **d** or **t**.
Palatal Bases ending in **g** or **c**.

B. *Liquid, Nasal and Sibilant Bases* ending in **l, m, n, r** and **s**.

3.

Class I

Labial (b or p) Bases

Princeps, princip is (M.) chief, prince

Base, princip-

Trabs, trab is (F.) beam

Base, trab-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	princip s	princip ēs	trab s	trab ēs
GEN.	princip is	princip um	trab is	trab um
DAT.	princip i	princip ibus	trab i	trab ibus
ACC.	princip em	princip ēs	trab em	trab ēs
VOC.	princip s	princip ēs	trab s	trab ēs
ABL.	princip e	princip ibus	trab e	trab ibus

4. **Gender** :—Nouns of Class I with Labial Bases are *Masculine* or *Feminine*.

5.

Vocabulary

ENGLISH DERIVATIVE

plēbs, plēb is (F.)	the common people, the plebs	plebeian
verbum, i (N.)	word	verbal
novus, a, um	new	novel
mora, morae (F.)	delay	

Prepositions

With Acc.

With Abl.

ante	before	dē	concerning, about
post	behind, after (of time and place)	prō	before (of place), in pro- portion to
per	through, by means of	sine	without
propter	on account of		
circum	around		

EXERCISE

A

Decline together :—princeps clārus, trabs magna.

1. Fīlius principis clāri; Fīlius principis clāri est in oppidō.
2. Principibus multis dōna dedit. Cum multis principibus.
3. Principēs nostrōs laudāvit. Ā principe Gallōrum.
4. Contrā principem bellum parant. Verba principis.
5. Trabēs magnās ex silvā portāvērunt. Trabibus magnis.
6. Locum trabibus magnis circumdant. Trabem parvam portāveram.
7. Quot principēs in castris nostris sunt? Nullus in castris est princeps.
8. Ūnius principis. Alterī principi dōnum dedit.
9. Per principēs; propter trabem; circum principem; sine principibus.
10. Dē victōriā; ante oculōs meōs; post multōs annōs; post nostra castra.
11. Ante oppidum; ante multōs annōs; ante novam lūnam.
12. Sine morā; sine ūllō periculō; post tōta castra.

B

1. We shall praise the sons of the chief. To the chief we had given a reward.
2. With a large beam; with small beams; he carried many beams.
3. The chiefs assembled the common people.
4. The ambassadors of the plebs are many.
5. Did the boy wound the chief with an arrow?
6. The chiefs station their soldiers around the walls of the town.
7. How many beams did the princes carry? No prince will have carried beams.

LESSON XXIII

THIRD DECLENSION

Class I

Dental (d or t) Bases

1. Nouns of Class I are all declined on the same principle.
- In all the oblique cases the base retains the same form.

Neuter nouns, of course, follow the rule laid down in Lesson xiii, 2.

The case-endings are easily recognized.

2. **Pēs, ped is** (M.) foot
Mīlēs, milit is (M.) soldier

Base, ped-
Base, milit-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	pēs s	ped ēs	mīle s	milit ēs
GEN.	ped is	ped um	milit is	milit um
DAT.	ped i	ped ibus	milit i	milit ibus
ACC.	ped em	ped ēs	milit em	milit ēs
VOC.	pēs s	ped ēs	mīle s	milit ēs
ABL.	ped e	ped ibus	milit e	milit ibus

3

Vocabulary

Masculine Nouns

pēs,	ped is	foot
custōs,	custōd is	guard
lapis,	lapid is	stone
obsēs,	obsid is	hostage
mīlēs,	milit is	soldier
ariēs,	ariet is	ram
comēs,	comit is	companion
equēs,	equit is	horseman, cavalryman
equitēs	(pl.)	cavalry
pēdēs,	pedit is	footman, infantryman
peditēs	(pl.)	infantry
hospēs,	hospit is	guest

Feminine Nouns

laus,	laudis	praise
palūs,	palūdis	marsh, swamp
abiēs,	abiet is	fir-tree
quiēs,	quiet is	rest
virtūs,	virtūt is	virtue, valor
salūs,	salūt is	safety
actās,	actāt is	age
aestās,	aestāt is	summer
civitas,	civitat is	state
auctoritas,	ātis	influence
celeritas,	ātis	speed, swiftness

The following nouns similarly declined are all feminine. Judge their meaning:—*aequitās, alacritās, difficultās, dignitās, facultās, levitās, libertās, nobilitās, novitās, paucitās, pietās, potestas, temeritās, tranquillitās, voluntās, voluptās, velocitās.*

4. The pupil should be required to give, when it is possible to do so, English derivatives from the Latin words in all vocabularies.

EXERCISE

1. Decline together:—*ūnus obses, multi equitēs, magna virtūs.*
2. Give English derivatives from the Latin nouns above.

A

1. *Pedem suum vulnerāvit. Militēs convocābunt. Obsidēs dedērunt.*
2. *Militi praemium dat. Militibus praemia dābant. Cum multis militibus.*
3. *Virtūte militum. Magnam militis virtūtem laudāvit. Custōdēs expectābat.*
4. *Cum ūnō comite; cum peditibus equitibusque; in palūde magnā.*
5. *Prō suā salūte pugnāverant. Ad multās civitatēs; ante aestātem.*

6. Propter civitatis auctoritatem; ob celeritatem militum.
7. Ob aetatem suam non pugnaverunt. Legati militibus quietem dedērunt.
8. Multos obsides legati dābunt. Obsides ā Britannis postulat.

E

1. Against the soldiers. By the swiftness of the soldier.
2. By the cavalry; by the infantry; by the courage of the soldiers.
3. With darts and stones; into the state; into many states.
4. The influence of the state was great. He placed guards on the wall.
5. So great was the valor of the Gauls. He wounded the soldier with a stone.
6. He demands cavalry and infantry. He recalled the soldiers from the battle.
7. With large forces of cavalry and infantry he hastens to the winter-camp.

LESSON XXIV

THIRD DECLENSION

Class I

Palatal (g or c) Bases

Dux, duc is (M.) leader, guide

Base, duc-

Rēx, rēg is (M.) king

Base, rēg-

Decline like previous nouns.

Note that the Vocative in all Third Declension nouns is like the Nominative.

Vocabulary

Masculine Nouns

rēx,	rēg is	king
conjūx,	conjūg is	husband, wife (literally, partner)
grex,	greg is	flock
rēmex,	rēmīg is	rower
dux,	duc is	leader, guide
jūdex,	jūdic is	judge

Feminine Nouns

lēx,	lēg is	law
lūx,	lūc is	light
rādix,	rādic is	root
vōx,	vōcis	voice

EXERCISE

1. Decline together :—*clārus rēx* ; *magna vōx*.
2. Give English derivatives from the Latin nouns above.

A

1. *Rēx clāre, cōpiās, convocā. Magnā vōce militēs vocāvit.*
2. *Prō rēge ; prō rēge militēs pugnābunt ; contrā rēgem.*
3. *Lēgēs Rōmānōrum bonae erant. Contrā lēgem ; contrā lēgēs Rōmānīs.*
4. *Sine duce ; sine ducibus Verba ducis laudāvērunt. Verbis ducia.*
5. *Rēmigēs convocant. Victōriam rēgī nuntiābunt. Rādicēs sunt longae.*
6. *Vir bonus conjugem amat. Lēgātus equitēs in fugam dedit.*
7. *Utrum equitēs an peditēs rēx postulāverit?*

B

1. Soldiers of the king ; to the king's soldiers ; with many soldiers.
2. With a loud voice. In a loud voice he announced victory to the soldiers.
3. Soldiers, fight for your country. He is a good judge.
4. By the king ; by the judge ; by the leader ; by leaders.
5. Without a guide. Without guides they hastened into the town.
6. The light of the moon is bright. Why did they wound the leader ?
7. How many soldiers did the king assemble ? They are in the camp.
8. Are the soldiers preparing arms ? They are.
9. The king summons auxiliaries. The king's soldiers are good.
10. The soldiers renew the battle with swords.

LESSON XXV

THIRD DECLENSION

Class I

Liquid, Nasal, and Sibilant (l, m, n, r, s) Bases

Consul,	consul is (M.)	consul
Söl,	söl is (M.)	sun
Hiems,	hiem is (F.)	winter
Leö,	leön is (M.)	lion
Virgö,	virgin is (F.)	maiden
Victor,	victör is (M.)	victor
Flös,	flör is (M.)	flower
Agger,	agger is (M.)	mound
Pater,	patr is (M.)	father
Arbor,	arbor is (F.)	tree

Masculine Nouns

Like leö, leön is :—

centuriö,	ön is	centurion
sermö,	ön is	discourse, conversation

Like virgö, in is :—

homö,	in is	man
ordö,	in is	order, rank, line

Like victor, ör is :—

clāmor,	ör is	shout
labor,	ör is	labor
imperātor,	ör is	general
örātor,	ör is	orator
pavor,	ör is	panic
timor,	ör is	fear

Like flös, flör is :—

mös,	mör is	custom :—Pl., customs, manners, character
------	--------	---

Like pater, patr is :—

frāter,	frātr is	brother	māter,	mātr is	mother
---------	----------	---------	--------	---------	--------

Also :—

Caesar,	Caesaris	Caesar	mulier,	mulier is	woman
---------	----------	--------	---------	-----------	-------

Feminine Nouns

dēditiö,	ön is	surrender
legiö,	ön is	legion
mūnitiö,	ön is	fortification
nātiö,	ön is	tribe, clan
örātiö,	ön is	oration, speech
regiö,	ön is	district, region

consuetūdö,	in is	custom
multitūdö,	in is	multitude
magnitūdö,	in is	magnitude

soror,	ör is	sister
--------	-------	--------

EXERCISE

Give English derivatives from the Latin nouns in the Vocabulary preceding.

A

1. *Filius consulis*; ad consules; ad consulem; cum consule.
2. *Patri consulis*; cum meo patre; ante hiemem; de deditiōe.
3. In arbore; in arborem; in arboribus; de numero¹ legionum.
4. *Magnā cum multitudine iumentorum*; cum mulieribus liberisque.
5. *Multitudine telorum*; oratione consulis; orationibus consulum.
6. Ob timorem militum; filio imperatoris; a multis nationibus.
7. *Filius consulis vulneraverat*. Patri suo et matri liberos dedit.
8. *Sol erit clarus*. Lux solis erat clara. Solem spectabat.
9. *Virginēs cantant*. Virginibus rosas dabunt. Virginēs mensam floribus ornabunt.
10. *Arboris radicēs sunt longae*. Centurionem telo vulneraverunt.
11. *Legiones in oppidum convocavit*. Orationem oratoris laudaverunt.
12. *Pavor centuriones occupavit*. Magnum numerum obsidum postulavit.

B

1. By the shouts of the soldiers; by the speech of the consul.
2. With my father and mother; to your brother and sister.
3. On a high tree; into high trees; on a high mound.
4. Of one legion; to the soldiers of one legion.
5. By the consul's brother; with one legion; against the legions.
6. By a shower² of darts; the customs of the Gauls and Germans.³
7. In my garden was a high tree. The trees were high.
8. The consuls praised the speech of the general.
9. The general will assemble one legion in the forum.
10. With a large multitude the Gauls hasten to the town.
11. With women and children they hasten into camp.
12. You will praise the discourse of the men.

¹ *numerus*, 1 (M.) number.

² Shower of darts = many darts.

³ *Germānus*, 1 (M.) German.

READING LESSON

Aeneas

In Asiā erat oppidum Trōja. Oppidum Trōjam decem annōs Graeci oppugnāvērunt. Inter Trōjānōs Hector erat vir clārus. Hector erat filius Priamī, rēgis Trōjāni. Prō Trōjānis diū et fortiter Hector pugnāvit. Tandem Graeci dolō et insidiis Trōjam expugnāvērunt. Mūrōs et templa et aedificia vastāvērunt. Itaque Aenēas cum patre et filiō paucisque sociis ad Ītaliā nāvigāvit. Tum in Ītaliā Latinus erat rēx quī Aenēae erat amicus et filiam suam, Lāviniam, in mātirimōnium dedit. Aenēas oppidum in Ītaliā aedificāvit, oppidumque Lāvinium appellāvit. Hic multōs annōs regnāvit. Post Aenēam Ascanius, Aenēae filius, novum oppidum aedificāvit, oppidumque Albam Longam appellāvit.

Vocabulary

Asia, ae, Asia
 Trōja, ae, Troy
 annōs, Acc. of 'Duration of Time'
 Graecus, i, a Greek
 Trōjānus, i, a Trojan
 Hector, oris, Hector
 quī (relative pronoun), who
 Priamus, i, Priam
 diū, (adv. of time), long
 fortiter, bravely
 tandem, at last
 dolus, i, guile, craft, deception
 itaque, accordingly

Aenēas, ae, Aeneas
 pauci, ae, a, pl, few
 Latinus, i, Latinus
 Lāvinia, ae, Lavinia
 in mātirimōnium dō, give in marriage
 Lāvinium, i, Lavinium
 hic, here
 Ascanius, i, Ascanius
 novus, a, um, new
 Alba Longa, Alba Longa
 appellō, āre, call, name.

LESSON XXVI

THIRD DECLENSION

Class I

Neuter Nouns

Dental Mute (t) Bases :— **Caput,** capit is head
Lāc, lact is milk

Liquid, Nasal, and Sibilant Bases :

Carmen, carmin is song
Fulgur, fulgur is lightning, flash
Opus, oper is work
Corpus, corpor is body
Jūs, jūr is right, law
Ōs, ōr is mouth
Ōs, oss is bone

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	opus	oper a	carmen	carmin a
GEN.	oper is	oper um	carmin is	carmin um
DAT.	oper i	oper ibus	carmin i	carmin ibus
ACC.	opus	oper a	carmen	carmin a
VOC.	opus	oper a	carmen	carmin a
ABL.	oper e	oper ibus	carmin e	carmin ibus

Remember Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative are alike in Neuters.

Like **carmen, inis** :— **agmen, inis** army (on the march), line
certāmen, inis struggle
flūmen, inis river
lūmen, inis light
nōmen, inis name

Like **opus, eris** :— **genus, eris** race
latus, eris side
onus, eris burden, load
pondus, eris weight
scelus, eris wickedness, crime
vulnus, eris wound

Like <i>corpus</i> , oris :	<i>dēdecus</i> , oris	disgrace
	<i>facinus</i> , oris	deed, wicked act
	<i>frigus</i> , oris	cold, frost
	<i>lītus</i> , oris	shore
	<i>pecus</i> , oris	herd, cattle (collectively)
	<i>tempus</i> , oris	time
Like <i>jūs</i> , <i>jūris</i> :—	<i>rūs</i> , <i>rūris</i>	country (as opposed to town)

EXERCISE

(Give English derivatives from the Latin nouns above.)

A

1. *Caput rēgis* : *capita flōrum* ; *carmine puellae* : *carminibus virginum*.
2. In *flūmen* : in *flūmine* ; in *lītus* ; in *litore* : in *flūmina*.
3. Ob *frigus* ; ob *frigora* : ā (on) *latere dextrō* : ā *latere sinistrō*.
4. *Magnitūdō operis* ; ob *magnitudinem operum* ; ob *tempus annī*.
5. *Magnum auri et argenti pondus* ; Ō *tempora*, Ō *mōrēs*.
6. *Militēs opera magna trans flūmen aedificāvērunt*.
7. *Corpora Germanōrum erant magna*. *Fulgur clārum est*.
8. *Agmen nostrum Galli spectābant*. In *flūmine altō erant trabēs*.
9. *Genera hominum multa sunt*. *Corpusne leōnis magnum est*?
10. *Puer nōmen flōris rogāvit*. *Viri per alta flūmina ambulant*.
11. *Regiō circum flūmen erat pulchra*. *Tempus annī non erat idōneum*.¹

B

1. The head of the soldier ; on the head of the king ; large heads.
2. With a song ; by work ; with songs ; by works ; by the cold.
3. By the river ; on the banks of the river ; across deep rivers.
4. Beautiful district ; in beautiful districts ; a great struggle.
5. On account of wickedness ; on account of his crimes ; many crimes.
6. The maidens delight the queen with songs.
7. Will the boy walk across the deep river ?
8. The district was beautiful. The country will be beautiful.
9. He carries large loads. We had asked the names of the boys.
10. The generals will have assembled the legions on the bank of the river.

¹*idōneus*, a, um, suitable.

LESSON XXVII

THIRD DECLENSION

Class II

Nouns with -ium in Genitive Plural

These include :—

- (a) Nouns in **ēs-** and **-is** not increasing in the Genitive.
- (b) Neuters in **-e**, **-al**, and **-ar**.
- (c) Mixed Nouns, declined in the Singular like Class I and in the plural like Class II.

Masculine and Feminine Nouns

Nūbēs, nūb is (F.) cloud *Base, nūb-*
Hostis, host is (M. or F.) enemy *Base, host-*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	nūb ēs	nūb ēs	host is	host ēs
GEN.	nūb is	nūb ium	host is	host ium
DAT.	nūb i	nūb ibus	host i	host ibus
ACC.	nūb em	nūb ēs	host em	host ēs
VOC.	nūb ēs	nūb ēs	host is	host ēs
ABL.	nūb e	nūb ibus	host e	host ibus

A few have only **-im** in Accusative Singular and **-i** in Ablative Singular, as :—**Sitis, sitis, siti, sitim, sitis, siti, thirst.**

A few have **-i** or **-e** in ablative singular, as :—**avis, ignis, nāvis, turris.**

Masculine Nouns

Feminine Nouns

Like **hostis, hostis** :—

collis,	collis	hill	avis,	avis	bird
finis,	finis	end	classis,	classis	fleet
finēs,	finium (pl.)	borders,	nāvis,	nāvis	ship, boat
		territory	turris,	turris	tower
fūnis,	fūnis	rope, cable			
ignis,	ignis	fire			
orbis,	orbis	circle			
mensis,	mensis	month			

Like *nūbēs, nūbis* :—

<i>caedēs, caedis</i>	slaughter
<i>clādēs, clādis</i>	disaster
<i>rūpēs, rūpis</i>	rock
<i>sēdēs, sēdis</i>	seat, home, settlement

Canis, canis, dog, } Belong to Class I.
Juvenis, juvenis, youth, } The Genitive Plural is *-um*.

EXERCISE

1. Decline together :—*hostēs multī; collis altus*.
2. Give English derivatives from the Latin nouns above.

A

1. *Contrā hostēs; ab hoste; ad hostem; ad hostēs; cum hostibus*.
2. *In colle altō; in collibus altis; finis belli; in finēs nostrōs*.
3. *Cum magnā classe; cum nāvi longā;¹ ex suis finibus*.
4. *Urbēs hostium sunt magnae. Hostēs turrīm altam aedificāvērunt*.
5. *Militēs nostrī contrā hostēs pugnāvērunt. In colle altō castra locābunt*.
6. *Inter finēs Gallōrum et Germānōrum est flūmen altum*.
7. *Cōpia hostium nostrōs finēs vastāverant*.
8. *Finem belli expectābāmus. Avēs multae in arbore altā sunt*.
9. *Ferrō et ignī² sociī nostrī agrōs hostium vastāvērunt*.

B

1. On a high hill; on high hills; from the enemy; in towers.
2. The forces of the enemy; into the enemy's territory.
3. With fire and sword; (along) with many ships.
4. We shall not give arms to the enemy. Shall we fight against the enemy.
5. They will have built a temple on a high hill.
6. The cavalry of the enemy will fight. Our territory is broad.
7. Why did the enemy lay waste your territory?
8. The barbarians are building a high tower on the hill.
9. They expected an end of the war. Across the river was a high hill.
10. Shall we demand corn or boats from the enemy?

¹ a long ship = a war ship.

² *ferrum*, iron; literally, with iron and fire — with sword and life — with fire and sword.

LESSON XXVIII

THIRD DECLENSION

Class II

Neuter Nouns in -e, -al and -ar

Neuter nouns in -e, -al and -ar have

-i in Ablative Singular, -ia in Nominative Plural, and -ium in Genitive Plural.

Mare,	maris	sea	Base, mar-
Animal,	animālis	animal	Base, animāl-
Calcar,	calcāris	spur	Base, calcar-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	mar e	mar ia
GEN.	mar is	mar ium
DAT.	mar i	mar ibus
ACC.	mar e	mar ia
VOC.	mar e	mar ia
ABL.	mar i	mar ibus

Like *animal*, *animāl is*, is declined *vectigal*, *vectigāl is*, *tax*, *revenue*.

EXERCISE

Decline together:—*mare altum*.

A

1. *Multa animālia; magna vectigālia; animālium magnōrum.*
2. *In altum mare; in altō marī; per mare; trans maria.*
3. *Nonne milītēs Rōmāni aggerem altum in altō mari aedificābunt?*
4. *In litore maris sunt multa tecta.*
5. *Animālia magna in marī altō sunt.*
6. *Leō est rēx animālium. Leō est animal magnum.*
7. *Multa animālia in silvis densis hiemant.*

B

1. The dangers of the sea. The sailors ask about the dangers of the sea.
2. The king's brother stands on the shore of the great sea.
3. On the shore ; in the sea ; into the sea ; of many animals.
4. We shall await the ships of the enemy.
5. The Britons are collecting a fleet of war ships.
6. The workmen of the Romans built many ships.
7. Between the hill and the plain the Romans awaited the enemy.
8. The winters are long in Gaul. The citizens will often praise the valor of the boy.

LESSON XXIX

THIRD DECLENSION

Mixed Nouns

1. Mixed nouns are declined in the Singular like Class I, but in the Plural like Class II.

They have **-em** in Accusative Singular, **-e** in Ablative Singular, **-ium** in the Genitive Plural, and **-ēs** (originally **-is**) in the Accusative Plural.

2. They include the following nouns :—

- (a) Monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant ;
- (b) Most nouns in **-ns** or **-ra**.

3. They are *Masculine* or *Feminine*.

4.	Urbs, urb is (F.) city	Base, urb-
	Nox, noct is (F.) night	Base, noct-
	Amans, amant is (M. or F.) lover	Base, amant-
	Pars, part is (F.) part	Base, part-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	urb s	urb ēs
GEN.	urb is	urb ium
DAT.	urb i	urb ibus
ACC.	urb em	urb ēs
VOC.	urb s	urb ēs
ABL.	urb e	urb ibus

5. Masculine Nouns

dens,	dentis	tooth
fons,	fontis	fountain
mons,	montis	mountain
pons,	pontis	bridge

Feminine Nouns

arx,	arcis	citadel
nox,	noctis	night
pax,	pacis	peace
gens,	gentis	clan, race
mens,	mentis	mind
cohors,	cohortis	cohort
mors,	mortis	death
pars,	partis	part
nix,	nivis	snow

EXERCISE

(Give English derivatives from the Latin nouns above.)

A

1. Decline together : mons altus, nox clāra, urbs pulchra.
2. Nūbe atrā ; nūbibus atris ; in urbe ; in urbem ; in urbēs.
3. Nōne nūbēs atrae erant ? In Italia sunt multae urbēs.
4. Partem oppidi expugnāverunt. Rōmāni multās urbēs in Galliā occupāverant.
5. In monte ; in monte altō ; in montibus altis ; ad montem properant.
6. Puer dē¹ monte in mare ambulat. Prope² urbem erat mons altus.
7. Milītēs Rōmāni urbis partem magnam occupābunt.
8. Ante sōlis lūcem. Stellās ante sōlis lūcem spectābāmus.
9. Consul pontem aedificāvit. Milītēs pontem longum aedificāverant.
10. Milītēs cohortis in altō colle erant. Nix alta ; in nive altā.

B

1. The Roman consul seized many cities of the Gauls.
2. The arrows of the enemy wounded your king. After the death of the king.
3. The general will summon the soldiers to the citadel.
4. The men will build a part of the town. The mountains were high.
5. The nights were long. The snow was deep. In deep snow.
6. They hastened into their (own) homes across the river.
7. The race of the Gauls was warlike. Warlike nations.
8. The enemy built a bridge. The general established peace with the Gauls.
9. Why do you expect peace ? Do you expect peace or war ?

¹ dē often means from, down from.

² prope = near.

LESSON XXX

IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

Rules for Gender of the Third Declension

The chief nouns with irregular bases of the Third Declension are:—

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Senex, sen is (M.)	old man	sen ēs, sen um, etc.	
Iter, itiner is (N.)	journey, road	itiner a, itiner um, etc.	
Bōs, bōvis (M. or F.)	ox, cow	cattle	
Vis, vi s (F.)	force, violence	vir ēs, vir ium, bodily strength	
Jūpiter, Jōv is (M.)	Jupiter		

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	bōs	bov ēs	vis	vir ēs
GEN.	bov is	{ bov um bo um	vi s (rare)	vir ium
DAT.	bov ī	{ bōb us būb us	v ī (rare)	vir ibus
ACC.	bov em	bov ēs	vi m	vir ēs
VOC.	bōs	bov ēs	(vis)	vir ēs
ABL.	bov e	{ bōb us būb us	v ī	vir ibus

Jūpiter, Jov is, Jov ī, Jov em, Jūpiter, Jove; no plural.

Rules for Gender

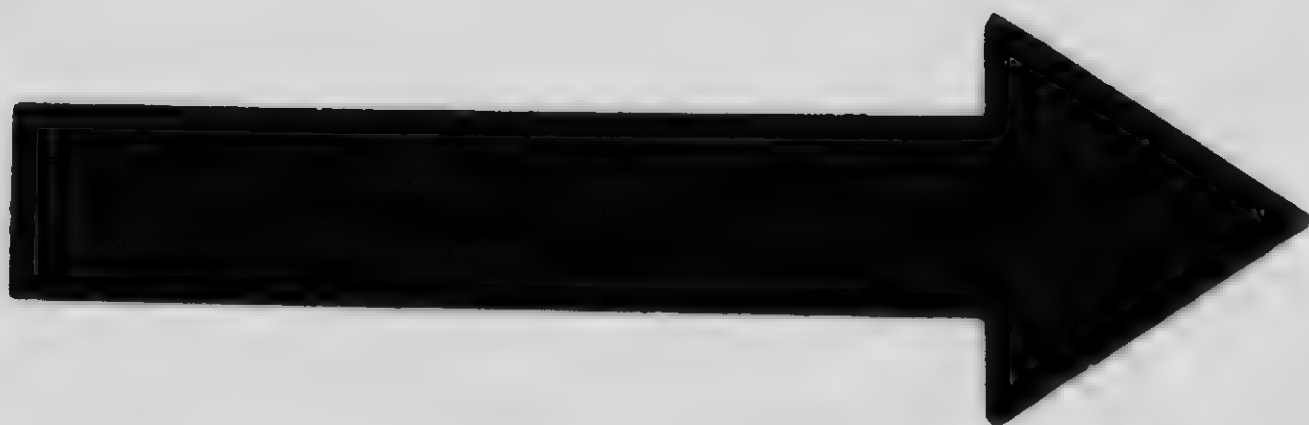
The chief rules for gender of nouns of the Third Declension are:—

Masculine:—

- Nouns ending in -er, -or, -ōs,
- es (increasing in the Gen.),
- ō (except those in -dō, -gō, -iō).

Feminine:—

- Nouns ending in -dō, -gō, -iō,
- ās, -is, -aus, -x,
- es (not increasing in the Gen.),
- s (preceded by a consonant),
- ūs (in words of more than one syllable).



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



4.5

5.0

5.6

6.3

7.1

8.0

9.0

10

11.2

12.5

14

16

18

20

22.4

25

28.2

31.5

36

40

45

50

56

63

71

80

90

100

112

125

140

160

180

200

224

250

282

315

360

400

450

500

560

630

710

800

900

1000

1120

1250

1400

1600

1800

2000

2240

2500

2820

3150

3600

4000

4500

5000

5600

6300

7100

8000

9000

10000

11200

12500

14000

16000

18000

20000

22400

25000

28200

31500

36000

40000

45000

50000

56000

63000

71000

80000

90000

100000

112000

125000

140000

160000

180000

200000

224000

250000

282000

315000

360000

400000

450000

500000

560000

630000

710000

800000

900000

1000000

1120000

1250000

1400000

1600000

1800000

2000000

2240000

2500000

2820000

3150000

3600000

4000000

4500000

5000000

5600000

6300000

7100000

8000000

9000000

10000000

11200000

12500000

14000000

16000000

18000000

20000000

22400000

25000000

28200000

31500000

36000000

40000000

45000000

50000000

56000000

63000000

71000000

80000000

90000000

100000000

112000000

125000000

140000000

160000000

180000000

200000000

224000000

250000000

282000000

315000000

360000000

400000000

450000000

500000000

560000000

630000000

710000000

800000000

900000000

1000000000

1120000000

1250000000

1400000000

1600000000

1800000000

2000000000

2240000000

2500000000

2820000000

3150000000

3600000000

4000000000

4500000000

5000000000

5600000000

6300000000

7100000000

8000000000

9000000000

10000000000

11200000000

12500000000

14000000000

16000000000

18000000000

20000000000

22400000000

25000000000

28200000000

31500000000

36000000000

40000000000

45000000000

50000000000

56000000000

63000000000

71000000000

80000000000

90000000000

100000000000

112000000000

125000000000

140000000000

160000000000

180000000000

200000000000

224000000000

250000000000

282000000000

315000000000

360000000000

400000000000

450000000000

500000000000

560000000000

630000000000

710000000000

800000000000

900000000000

1000000000000

1120000000000

1250000000000

1400000000000

1600000000000

1800000000000

2000000000000

2240000000000

2500000000000

2820000000000

3150000000000

3600000000000

4000000000000

4500000000000

5000000000000

5600000000000

6300000000000

7100000000000

8000000000000

9000000000000

10000000000000

11200000000000

12500000000000

14000000000000

16000000000000

18000000000000

20000000000000

22400000000000

25000000000000

28200000000000

31500000000000

36000000000000

40000000000000

45000000000000

50000000000000

56000000000000

63000000000000

71000000000000

80000000000000

90000000000000

100000000000000

112000000000000

125000000000000

140000000000000

160000000000000

180000000000000

200000000000000

224000000000000

250000000000000

282000000000000

315000000000000

360000000000000

400000000000000

450000000000000

Neuter:—

Nouns ending in -c, -a, -t, -e, -l, -n,
-ar, -ur, -ūs,
-ūs (in words of one syllable).

EXERCISE

Decline together:—iter magnum.

A

1. Multī senēs : magna¹ itinera ; virēs hominis.
2. Magnis itineribus ; magnā vi ; cum multis senibus.
3. Bovēs multī in agris erant, Senēs tempora antiqua² semper laudant.
4. Dux nāvēs multās parāvit. Nix in silvā altā erat.
5. Magnis itineribus ad oppidū properāvērunt. Itinera militum nostrōrum.
6. Pueri in nive altā ambulābant. Dux virtutem magnam militum laudābit.
7. Militēs vōce magnā clamāvērunt. Per nivem altam ambulābimus.
8. Legiōnēs Rōmānae turrēs altās aedificābunt.

B

1. Many cows are in the farmer's field. The old man will always praise his friends.
2. The leader built many ships. We hastened by forced¹ marches to the city.
3. With great violence they attacked the town. The boy was walking along (per) the shore of the sea.
4. How many ships did the enemy build? Are you walking through the deep snow?
5. How many and how large were the enemy's ships.
6. The boy wounded his head with an arrow.
7. We gave many men presents. We shall sing a pleasing song to the maiden.

¹ forced = large, great, magnus.

² antiquus, a, um, ancient.

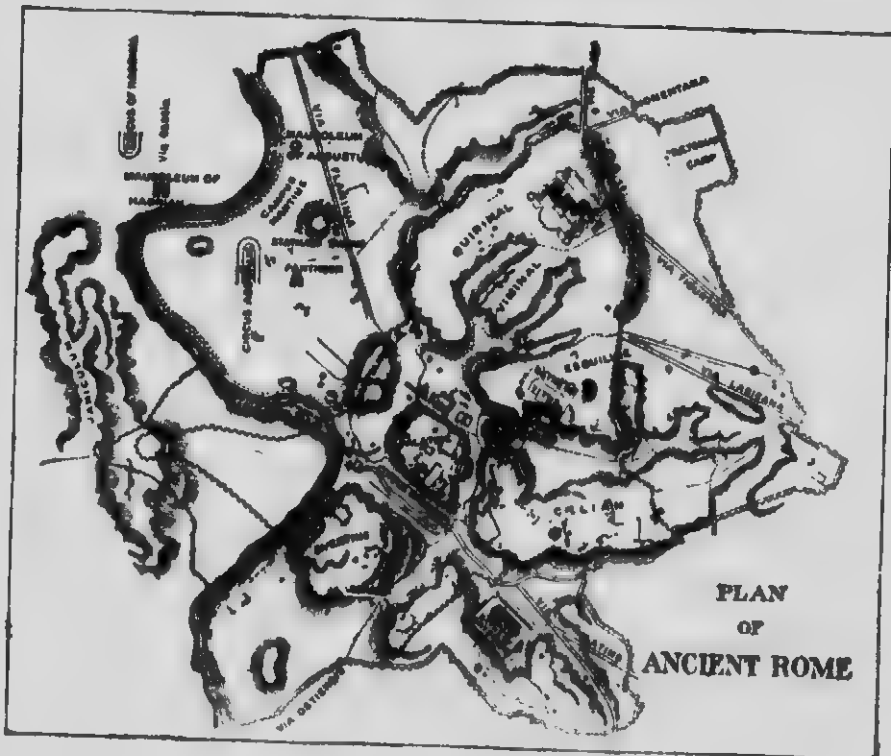
READING LESSON

Rome

Urbis Rōmae conditor erat Rōmulus et urbem ex suō nōmine appellāvit. Rōma erat urbs pulchra et caput nōn solum Itāliae sed etiam orbis terrārum. In urbe erant septem collēs. Hi erant Capitōlinus, Palātinus, Aventinus, Caelius, Esquilinus, Viminālis, Quirīnālis. Primum Rōmulus urbem mūrō circumdedit, deinde Servius Tullius rēx, postrēmo imperātor Marcus Aurēlius. Inter mūrōs et Tiberim erat Campus Martius ubi Rōmānī lūdos celebrābant. Multa et¹ praeclāra aedificia erant in urbe Rōmā. In Amphitheātrō gladiātōrēs cum feris saevis pugnābant. Imperātor Constantinus Arcum² in valle inter montem Palātinum et Caelium aedificāvit.

¹ For many distinguished, Latin says many and distinguished.

² See page 28.



Vocabulary

conditor, ōris	founder	Tiberis, is (M.)	Tiber
caput, itis	capital	lūdus, i	game
nōn solum—sed etiam	not only— but also	celebrō, āre	celebrate
		aedificium, i	building
orbis terrārum	circle of lands = world	Amphitheatrum, i	amphitheatre
septem	seven	fera, ae	beast
hī	these	sacvus, a, um	savage, fierce
primum (Adv.)	first	arcum, Acc. of	
postrēmo	lastly	arcus, ūs	arch
imperātor, ōris	emperor	vallis, is (F.)	valley

LESSON XXXI

SECOND CONJUGATION

Indicative and Imperative Active

1. The Second Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive ends in **ēre**, as:—

moneō, monēre, advise

2. The Present Stem is **monē-**.

The Present Stem is always obtained by dropping the ending **-re** from the Present Infinitive, as:—

amāre, present stem **amā-**

monēre, “ “ **monē-**

3. The Principal Parts of **moneō** are

moneō , Pres. Indic.	} showing the <i>Present Stem</i> , monē-
monēre , Pres. Infin.	
monuī , Perf. Indic.	
monitum , Supine ¹	
	showing the <i>Perfect Stem</i> , monu-
	showing the <i>Supine Stem</i> , monit-

¹ See page 38. Footnote.

4. The Indicative Tenses are

PRESENT	mone ō	} formed from Present Stem monē-
IMPERFECT	monē ba m	
FUTURE	monē bō	
PERFECT	monu ī	} formed from Perfect Stem, monu-
PLUPERFECT	monu eram	
FUTURE PERFECT	monu erō	

(See Lesson XVII)

Compare the above forms with the corresponding tenses of *amō*.

Observe the stems alone differ from those of *amō*.

Present Stem *amā-* *monē-*

Perfect Stem *amāv-* *monu-*

The Endings in all Tenses are the same as those of *amō*.

5. Indicative

Present

SINGULAR

mone ō
monē s
mone t

PLURAL

monē mus
monē tis
mone nt

Imperfect

monē bam -bās -bat monē bāmus -bātis -bant

Future

monē bō -bis -bit monē bimus -bitis -bunt

Perfect

monu ī -istī -it monu imus -istis -ērunt (ēre)

Pluperfect

monu eram -erās -erat monu erāmus -erātis -erant

Future Perfect

monu erō -eris -erit monu erimus -eritis -erint

6.

Imperative

PRESENT

2. Sing. *monē*2. Pl. *monē te*

FUTURE

2. Sing. *monē tō*2. Pl. *monē tōte*3. Sing. *monē tō*2. Pl. *mone ntō*

7.

Principal Parts

The principal parts of verbs of the second conjugation are not formed with the same regularity as those of verbs of the first conjugation.

They must in all cases be learned. From the perfect tense when learned will be obtained the perfect stem from which alone the pluperfect and future perfect tenses can be formed.

Learn the following:—

<i>moneō</i>	2	<i>monu ī</i>	<i>monit um</i>	advise
<i>habeō</i>	2	<i>habu ī</i>	<i>habit um</i>	have
<i>teneō</i>	2	<i>tenu ī</i>	<i>tent um</i>	hold
<i>docēō</i>	2	<i>docu ī</i>	<i>doct um</i>	teach
<i>dēlēō</i>	2	<i>dēlēv ī</i>	<i>dēlēt um</i>	destroy
<i>compleō</i>	2	<i>complēv ī</i>	<i>complēt um</i>	fill
<i>augeō</i>	2	<i>aux ī</i>	<i>auct um</i>	increase
<i>maneō</i>	2	<i>mans ī</i>	<i>mans um</i>	remain
<i>jubeō</i>	2	<i>juss ī</i>	<i>juss um</i>	order
<i>videō</i>	2	<i>vid ī</i>	<i>vis um</i>	see
<i>respondeō</i>	2	<i>respond ī</i>	<i>respons um</i>	reply

Questions:—

1. Analyse into their component parts and so derive the meaning of *monēbāmus*, *monēbunt*. (See page 21, footnote).
2. State the rule for the formation of (1) the Plupf. Indic. Act.; (2) the Fut. Pf. Indic. Act.
3. Give the translations of (1) *docēbam*, (2) *vidī*. (See page 39, Note).
4. What is the impf. stem of *habeō*? The fut. stem of *doceō*? The perf. stem of *dēlēō*, *maneō* and *videō*? The 1st sing. plupf. and fut. pf. of *maneō* and *videō*?

EXERCISE

A

1. Give a synopsis (the 1st sing. of each tense) of (1) *laudō*, (2) *dēleō*.
2. Give a synopsis of *maneō* in 2nd sing. ; of *videō* in 3rd sing.
3. *Tenēs, tenet, tenētis, tenent. Tenuērunt, tenuerant, tenerint.*
4. *Videt, vidit (2). Respondēmus, respondimus (2).*
5. *Respondeō, respondi (2). Manserat, manserit.*
6. *Docēbat, docuit (2). Tenuisti, tenuistis. Habētis, occupātis.*
7. *Aedificāmus; dēlētis; aedificābat; dēlēbant.*

B

1. I see, I saw. They saw, they have seen. He will see.
2. I used to teach. He was filling. They kept increasing.
3. He remains. Shall we remain? You will remain.
4. Who is teaching? Was the master teaching? You will be teaching.
5. He had filled. You (pl.) will have ordered. You see; you saw.

C

1. *Hostēs oppidum tenēbant. Quot oppida hostēs dēlēvērunt?*
2. *Peditēs nostri collēs altōs tenēbunt. Frātre tuum nōn vidimus.*
3. *Multās nāvēs frūmentō vinōque complēverant. In urbe manēbō.*
4. *Imperātōrēs numerum legiōnum augēbunt. In oppidō manseritis.*
5. *Lēgātus magnum numerum obsidum habet. Barbarōs obsidēs dāre iussit.*
6. *Lēgātis respondēbō. Caesar hostibus respondit.*

D

1. We shall remain in the city. You will see the country.
2. The master taught the boys and girls. They will have taught.
3. The leader of the enemy had replied to our general.
4. They were filling the ships with corn. We saw the ships on the shore.
5. He had increased the number of cavalry. You were holding the high hill.
6. When did you see the consul's brother? I did not see the children.
7. He orders the allies to collect cavalry. Where were you remaining?

LESSON XXXII

FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE VOICE
INDICATIVE AND IMPERATIVE

I.

Indicative

PRESENT	amor	<i>I am loved, I am being loved</i>
IMPERFECT	amābar	<i>I was (being) loved</i>
FUTURE	amābor	<i>I shall be loved</i>
PERFECT	amātus (a, um) sum	<i>I have been loved</i> <i>I was loved</i>
PLUPERFECT	amātus (a, um) eram	<i>I had been loved</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	amātus (a, um) erō	<i>I shall have been loved</i>

2.

Present

SINGULAR

PLURAL

1. amo r, <i>I am loved</i>	amā mur, <i>we are loved</i>
2. amā ris (re), <i>thou art loved</i>	amā minī, <i>you are loved</i>
3. amā tur, (he) <i>is loved</i>	ama ntur, <i>they are loved</i>

Imperfect

1. amā bar, <i>I was (being) loved</i>	amā bā mur, <i>we were (being) loved</i>
2. amā bā ris (re)	amā bā minī
3. amā bā tur	amā bā ntur

Future

1. amā bor, <i>I shall be loved</i>	amā bi mur, <i>we shall be loved</i>
2. amā be ris (-re)	amā bi minī
3. amā bi tur	amā bu ntur

Perfect

1. amātus sum, (1) <i>I have been loved</i> (2) <i>I was loved</i>	amāti sumus, (1) <i>we have been loved</i> (2) <i>we were loved</i>
2. amātus es	amāti estis
3. amātus est	amāti sunt

Pluperfect

SINGULAR

1. **amātus eram**, *I had been loved*
2. **amātus erās**
3. **amātus erat**

PLURAL

- amāti erāmus**, *we had been loved*
- amāti erātis**
- amāti erant**

Future Perfect

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. amātus erō , <i>I shall have been loved</i> | amāti erimus , <i>we shall have been loved</i> |
| 2. amātus eris | amāti eritis |
| 3. amātus erit | amāti erunt |

3.

Imperative

PRESENT

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 2. amā re , <i>be thou loved</i> | amā mini , <i>be ye loved</i> |
|---|--------------------------------------|

FUTURE

- | | |
|--|--|
| 2. amā tor , <i>thou shalt be loved</i> | |
| 3. amā tor , <i>he shall be loved</i> | ama ntor , <i>they shall be loved</i> |

4.

Observations and Rules

The form **amātus** found in the perf., plupf., and fut. pf. pass. is the *perfect participle passive* = loved or having been loved.

It is obtained by adding **-us** to the supine stem, as **amāt um**, **amāt us**.

This rule holds good for all verbs of all conjugations.

The perf. part. pass. **amātus** is declined like **bonus**, and must agree with the subject of the sentence.

Puer amātus est. The boy was loved.

Puella amāta est. The girl was loved.

Dōnum amātum est. The gift was loved.

So also in the plural:—

Pueri amāti sunt. The boys were loved.

Puellae amātae sunt. The girls were loved.

Dōna amāta sunt. The gifts were loved.

5. Examine :

- (1) *puer ā (or ab) magistrō laudātur.* The boy is praised by the master
 (2) *puer gladiō vulnerātur.* The boy is wounded with a sword.

Question :—

How in Latin do you express (1) the *Agent* ; (2) *Means* or *Instrument*.

6. Examine :—

- (1) *Vir domum cum diligentia aedificat.* The man diligently (with diligence) builds his house.
 (2) *Vir domum { magna diligentia } aedificat. { cum magna diligentia }* The man with great diligence builds his house.

Rule :—

Manner is generally expressed by *cum* and the *ablative*. If the noun is accompanied by an emphatic adjective, *cum* may be omitted.

EXERCISE

A

1. Give a synopsis (1st sing.) of the indic. pass. of *laudō*.
2. Give the perf. part. pass. of *laudō*, *arō*, *vocō*, *aedificō*.
3. *Portātur, portābātur, portābitur.* *Vocātus est, vocātus erat.*
4. *Vocātus erit, vocata erit.* *Laudātī sunt, laudatae sunt.*
5. *Vocāris, vocāmini.* *Vocāberis, vocābimini.* *Laudāberis, laudābāris.*
6. They are carried. They will be called. She was praised.
7. They will be praised. We shall be called. We were praised.
8. We are carried. We were (being) carried. They are called. We have been called.

B

1. Agri ab agricolā arantur. Pueri ab magistrō laudāti sunt.
2. Urbs ā duce expugnāta est. Vir ā bonis civibus laudābitur.
3. Puella ab magistrō vocāta est. Liber par.us puerō bonō ā patre dābitur.
4. Nōne pueri ab māt্রে vocantur? Cūr ā frātre meō vocātus es?
5. Tectum a patre tuō aedificātum est. Signum pugnae ā duc: datum est.
6. Militēs ā tuō patre laudantur. Hostis ā milite gladiō vulnerātus est.
7. Magnō cum periculō collēs occupāvērunt.

C

1. The farmer was called to the dwelling by his daughter.
2. The boys will be called by their father. Were they not called?
3. Books were given the boy by the master. When were the temples built?
4. Were not the men praised by their friends? The soldiers were praised by the general.
5. The hill was seized by the enemy. The hills will be seized.
6. The orations of the orator were praised. Who is praised?
7. The town is surrounded with a wall and trench.¹ The allies will be assembled.
8. The battle was announced. The fields had been laid waste.
9. The legions were surrounded by a multitude of the enemy.
10. The war will be renewed. Corn will be gathered.

¹ fossa, ae (F.) trench.

LESSON XXXIII

SECOND CONJUGATION PASSIVE VOICE
INDICATIVE AND IMPERATIVE

I. Indicative

PRESENT	moneor	<i>I am advised, I am being advised</i>
IMPERFECT	monēbar	<i>I was (being) advised</i>
FUTURE	monēbor	<i>I shall be advised</i>
PERFECT	monitus (a, um) sum	<i>I have been advised</i> <i>I was advised</i>
PLUPERFECT	monitus (a um) eram	<i>I had been advised</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	monitus (a, um) erō	<i>I shall have been advised</i>

2. Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. mone or	monē mur
2. monē ris (-re)	monē minī
3. monē tur	mone ntur

Imperfect

1. monē bar	monē bā mur
2. monē bā ris (-re)	monē bā minī
3. monē bā tur	monē ba ntur

Future

1. monē bor	monē bi mur
2. monē be ris (-re)	monē bi minī
3. monē bi tur	monē bu ntur

Perfect

monitus sum, es, est	monitī sumus, estis, sunt
----------------------	---------------------------

Pluperfect

monitus eram, erās, erat	monitī erāmus, erātis, erant
--------------------------	------------------------------

Future Perfect

monitus erō, eris, erit	monitī erimus, eritis, erunt
-------------------------	------------------------------

3.

Imperative

SINGULAR

PRESENT

PLURAL

2. *monē re, be thou advised**monē minī, be ye advised*

FUTURE

2. *monē tor, thou shalt be advised*3. *monē tor, he shall be advised**mone ntor, they shall be advised*

4.

Principal Parts

<i>prōhibeō</i>	2	<i>prōhibui</i>	<i>prōhibitum</i>	keep from, prevent
<i>perterreō</i>	2	<i>perterrui</i>	<i>perterritum</i>	frighten, terrify
<i>obtineō</i>	2	<i>obtinuei</i>	<i>obtentum</i>	hold
<i>mōveō</i>	2	<i>mōvi</i>	<i>mōtum</i>	move

5. Questions:—

What part of the verb is *monitus*? How is it obtained?

What is the Latin for *having been moved, frightened, held, kept from*.

EXERCISE

A

1. *Movētur, movēbātur, movēbitur. Moventur, movēbantur, movēbuntur.*
2. *Obtinēbar, obtinēbitur. Prohibēbitur, prohibēbuntur.*
3. *Perterritus, perterritus sum, perterrita est, perterritae sunt.*
4. *Urbs obtinētur. Urbēs dēlētae sunt. Oppidum obtentum erit.*
5. They are frightened. We were frightened. You shall be frightened.
6. The tower is being moved. The towers were moved. We were prevented.
7. They are frightened. The table had been moved. The enemy were prevented.

B

1. *Militēs collem altum obtinuērunt. Pueri magnō clāmōre perterriti sunt.*
2. *Urbem dēlēbimus. Oppidum est dēlētum. Oppida sunt dēlēta.*
3. *Urbs Trōja ab Graecis dēlēbitur. Dux castra mōvit.*

4. Ab itinere nix alta militēs prohibuit. Turrim altam ad mūrōs mōvēbimus.
5. Arx ab militibus nostris obtinētur. Numerus legiōnum auctus est.
6. Nulla nāvis est visa. Nullae nāvēs hostium sunt visae.
7. Hostēs clāmōribus magnis militum perterriti sunt.

C

1. The citadel was held by our soldiers. It had been held.
2. The boys were terrified by the man's shouts.
3. The town will be held by the Romans. The towns had been held.
4. The soldiers moved their baggage to a high hill.
5. The enemy were kept from our camp by the darts of our soldiers.
6. The city was not terrified by the Romans. Our men held the town.
7. The town was destroyed by the enemy. The towns will have been destroyed.
8. We shall increase the number of the legions. The legions are increased.
9. We have never¹ seen the boy's book. The farmer's sons were taught by the master.

READING LESSON

The Seven Kings of Rome

Rōmulus urbem Rōmam a suō nōmine vocāvit.

Numa Pompilius templum Jāni aedificāvit. In bellō templum erat apertum, in pāce clausum.

Tullus Hostilius Albānōs et Sabinōs finitimōs Rōmānōrum superāvit.

Ancus Martius et bellicōsus et bonus erat. Latinōs superāvit et Sabinōs sociōs in urbem Rōmam invāvit.

Tarquinius Priscus in urbem Rōmam ex Etrūriā migrāvit. Sabinōs superāvit et multa oppida Latinōrum expugnāvit.

Servius Tullius urbem Rōmam mūrō circumdedit et magnum Diānae templum aedificāvit.

¹ nunquam.

Tarquinius Superbus regnum dolō et insidiis occupāvit. Finitimōs superāvit. Cum suō filiō Sextō Galīōs, urbem Latinōrum, dolō expugnāvit. Ob sua scelera Rōmānis nōn erat grātus. Posteā Rōmānī duōs consulēs prō ūnō rēge creāvērunt.

Vocabulary

Jānus, i	Janus (Roman god)	migrō, āre	move, migrate
apertus, a, um	open	Etrūria, ae	Etruria
clausus, a, um	closed, shut	Diāna, ae	Diana (Roman goddess)
Albānī, ōrum	Albans	Gabii, ōrum	Gabii (name of town)
Sabinī, ōrum	Sabines	grātus, a, um	pleasing, acceptable
finitimus, i	neighbor	posteā (adv.)	afterwards
Latīnī, ōrum	Latins	duōs, acc. of duo	two
sociōs	(as) allies	creō, āre	elect
	(Apposition)		
invitō, āre	invite		

LESSON XXXIV

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

1. The Second Class of Adjectives (Lesson XV, 3) belong to the Third Declension. These are called Adjectives of one, two, or three terminations respectively, according as they have one, two, or three forms in the nominative singular, expressing gender.

2. Adjectives of Three Terminations

Ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen, severe *Base, ācr-*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ācer	ācr is	ācr e	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
GEN.	ācr is	ācr is	ācr is	ācr ium	ācr ium	ācr ium
DAT.	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus
ACC.	ācr em	ācr em	ācr e	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
VOC.	ācer	ācr is	ācr e	ācr ēs	ācr ēs	ācr ia
ABL.	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ī	ācr ibus	ācr ibus	ācr ibus

Note well the Abl. Sing. in -ī.

3. Decline similarly:—

alacer, alacris, alacre	brisk, quick, lively
equester, equestris, equestre	cavalry
pedester, pedestris, pedestre	infantry, on foot
silvester, silvestris, silvestre	woody
celer, celeris, celere	swift, fleet

Observe that *celer* retains the *e* before *r*. It is the only adjective that does so.

4. Adjectives of Two Terminations

	Fortis, forte brave, valiant, noble		Base, fort-	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	fort is	fort e	fort ēs	fort ia
GEN.	fort is	fort is	fort ium	fort ium
DAT.	fort i	fort i	fort ibus	fort ibus
ACC.	fort em	fort e	fort ēs	fort ia
VOC.	fort is	fort e	fort ēs	fort ia
ABL.	fort i	fort i	fort ibus	fort ibus

Note well the Abl. Sing. in *-i*.

5. Decline similarly:—

brevia	breve	short, brief
facilis	facile	easy
gravis	grave	heavy
mitis	mitis	gentle, mild
omnis	omne	every, all
turpis	turpe	disgraceful, vile
utilis	utile	useful

6. Comparatives

	Fortior, fortius braver		Base, fortior-	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	fortior	fortius	fortiōr ēs	fortiōr a
GEN.	fortiōr is	fortiōr is	fortiōr um	fortiōr um
DAT.	fortiōr i	fortiōr i	fortiōr ibus	fortiōr ibus
ACC.	fortiōr em	fortius	fortiōr ēs	fortiōr a
VOC.	fortior	fortius	fortiōr ēs	fortiōr a
ABL.	fortiōr e	fortiōr e	fortiōr ibus	fortiōr ibus

Note well that Comparatives have

Abl. Sing. in *-e*;

Nom., Acc., and Voc. Pl. Neuter in *-a*;

Gen. Pl. in *-um*.

Decline similarly:—

brevior, facilior, gravior, mitior, turpior, ūtilior.

All regular comparatives are declined like *fortior*.

EXERCISE

A

Decline together: *frigus ācre; miles fortis; onus gravius.*

1. *Alacer est animus pueri. Alacrēs sumus. In proeliō equestri.*
2. *In proeliō pedestri; in proeliis equestribus; in proeliis pedestribus.*
3. *In locō silvestri; in locis silvestribus. Celer est canis.*
4. *Ā militibus fortibus; ab omnibus civibus; ab omnibus servis.*
5. *Breve tempus; opus facile; onera gravia; omnia animālia.*
6. *Hominum turpium; virōrum fortium; viri fortis; viri fortēs.*
7. *Vita brevior; opus facilius; onus grave; itineribus faciliōribus.*
8. *Ex omnibus periculis servātus sum.*
9. *Ab omnibus comitibus monitus erat.*
10. *Nūllum praemium militibus fortibus datum est.*

B

1. Of all the boys; to all the boys; of the brave soldiers; to brave soldiers.
2. (Along) with all the cavalry; with all the infantry; with all the forces.
3. On account of his disgraceful life; on account of heavy loads.
4. By easy marches; by easier marches; with a short spear.
5. By the brave general; by the gentle consul; by braver leaders.
6. The Romans fought a cavalry battle in the plain with the forces of the enemy.
7. In battles on foot the barbarians will conquer the Romans.
8. The brave consuls were praised by all the citizens.
9. Good laws are useful to all states.
10. The enemy's baggage was seized by the brave general.
11. Rewards were given to the brave general and the brave soldiers.

LESSON XXXV

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION
(CONTINUED)

Adjectives of One Termination

- I. **Fēlix** *fēlix* happy *Base, fēlic-*
Prūdēns *prūdēns* foreseeing *Base, prūdēt-*

SINGULAR

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>
GEN.	<i>fēlic is</i>	<i>fēlic is</i>	<i>prūdēt is</i>	<i>prūdēt is</i>
DAT.	<i>fēlic ī</i>	<i>fēlic ī</i>	<i>prūdēt ī</i>	<i>prūdēt ī</i>
ACC.	<i>fēlic em</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>prūdēt em</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>
VOC.	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>
ABL.	<i>fēlic ī</i>	<i>fēlic ī</i>	<i>prūdēt ī</i>	<i>prūdēt ī</i>

PLURAL

NOM.	<i>fēlic ēs</i>	<i>fēlic ia</i>	<i>prūdēt ēs</i>	<i>prūdēt ia</i>
GEN.	<i>fēlic ium</i>	<i>fēlic ium</i>	<i>prūdēt ium</i>	<i>prūdēt ium</i>
DAT.	<i>fēlic ibus</i>	<i>fēlic ibus</i>	<i>prūdēt ibus</i>	<i>prūdēt ibus</i>
ACC.	<i>fēlic ēs</i>	<i>fēlic ia</i>	<i>prūdēt ēs</i>	<i>prūdēt ia</i>
VOC.	<i>fēlic ēs</i>	<i>fēlic ia</i>	<i>prūdēt ēs</i>	<i>prūdēt ia</i>
ABL.	<i>fēlic ibus</i>	<i>fēlic ibus</i>	<i>prūdēt ibus</i>	<i>prūdēt ibus</i>

2. Decline similarly:—

<i>audāx</i>	<i>audācis</i>	bold, daring
<i>atrōx</i>	<i>atrōcis</i>	fierce, cruel
<i>ferōx</i>	<i>ferōcis</i>	spirited, warlike
<i>vēlōx</i>	<i>vēlōcis</i>	swift, fleet
<i>diligēns</i>	<i>diligēntis</i>	diligent
<i>ingēns</i>	<i>ingēntis</i>	huge, immense
<i>potēns</i>	<i>potēntis</i>	powerful
<i>sapiēns</i>	<i>sapiēntis</i>	wise
<i>recēns</i>	<i>recēntis</i>	fresh, late, recent

3. **Amans, amans** loving *Base, amant-*
Vetus, veteris old *Base, veter-*

SINGULAR				
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	amans	amans	vetus	vetus
GEN.	amant is	amant is	veter is	veter is
DAT.	amant i	amant i	veter i	veter i
ACC.	amant em	amans	veter em	vetus
VOC.	amans	amans	vetus	vetus
ABL.	amant e	amant e	veter e	veter e

PLURAL				
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	amant ěs	amant ia	veter ěs	veter a
GEN.	amant ium	amant ium	veter um	veter um
DAT.	amant ibus	amant ibus	veter ibus	veter ibus
ACC.	amant ěs	amant ia	veter ěs	veter a
VOC.	amant ěs	amant ia	veter ěs	veter a
ABL.	amant ibus	amant ibus	veter ibus	veter ibus

4. Decline similarly:—

flens	flentis	weeping
oriens	orientis	rising
divēs	divitis	rich
pauper	pāuperis	poor
par	paris	equal

5.

Notes

Participles in **-ans** and **-ens** have the Abl. Sing. in **-e**.
 These same forms when used as nouns, as **amans**, a *lover*, have the Abl. Sing. in **-e**.

But when they are used as adjectives they have Abl. Sing. in **-i**.
par has Abl. Sing. **-i**; in Pl. **-ia** and **-ium**.

6. **Plūs**, *more*, is defective and is declined as follows:—

SINGULAR				
	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	plūs	plūr ěs	plūr a
GEN.	plūr is	plūr ium	plūr ium
DAT.	plūr ibus	plūr ibus
ACC.	plūs	plūr ěs	plūr a
VOC.
ABL.	plūr e	plūr ibus	plūr ibus

EXERCISE

A

Decline together:—*vir audāx, sōl oriens, flōs recens, jūdex sapiens.*

1. *Miletem audācem laudat. Militēs audācēs laudābat.*
2. *Virtūs militum audācium. Militibus audācibus praemia dedit.*
3. *Contrā rēgēs potentēs; contrā gentēs ferōcēs; ad sōlem orientem.*
4. *Equitēs proeliō recentī perterriti sunt. Barbarōs atrōcēs vidērunt.*
5. *Inter flōrēs recentēs ambulābant. Virum audācem puerī laudant.*
6. *Omnibus animālibus brevis est vita. Lūmen est celere.*
7. *Militēs Rōmānī in proeliis audācēs erant. In silvā sunt animālia vėlōcia.*
8. *Nauta audāx pericula maris amat. Militēs veterēs laudābit.*

B

1. We will praise the valor of the brave soldier. We saw the bold sailors.
2. The lives of all boys are not happy. Huge animals are not swift.
3. Rich men are not often happy. He was dear to both¹ rich and poor.
4. In a fierce battle our forces worsted² the cavalry of the barbarians.
5. The light of the rising sun; the soldiers of powerful kings.
6. By the words of the weeping women the heart of the fierce chief was moved.
7. By the wise judges; by the bold sailors; by a loving mother.
8. By the speech of the foreseeing orator; to the diligent daughters.

COLLOQUIUM

Vir et Puer

- V. Salvē! puer, quō portās tuās librōs?
 P. Ad scholam ambulō.
 V. Ubi est schola et quis est magister tuus?
 P. Schola nōn procul ā Forō abest et magister meus appellātur Marcus.

¹ both—and = et—et. ² = conquered.

- V. Estne tuus magister homo mitis?
 P. Mitis est et pueris, si pensa sua rectē recitant, dōna saepe dat.
 V. Estne magister peritus linguae Latinae et Graecae?
 P. Linguae et Latinae et Graecae est peritus
 V. Quot librōs portās?
 P. Duōs librōs, opera Vergili et Homēri, portō.
 V. Clāra vērū opera sunt, puer. Valē.

Vocabulary

colloquium, i	conversation	peritus, a, um	skilled (in); gov-
salvē	hail, good		erns the Gen.
	morning	lingua, ae	tongue, language
schola, ae	school	Graecus, a, um	Greek
procul (adv.)	far, far away	duos (acc. pl.)	two
ab sum	am distant	Vergilius, i	Vergil
pensum, i	task, lesson	Homēris, i	Homer
rectē (adv.)	rightly, well	vērō (adv.)	indeed, truly,
recitō, āre	recite		verily
		valē	good-bye

LESSON XXXVI

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

I. POSITIVE	BASE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus	alt-	alt ior	alt issimus
fortis	fort-	fort ior	fort issimus
fēlix	fēlic-	fēlic ior	fēlic issimus

From the above deduce the rule for the formation of the Comparative and Superlative degrees of an Adjective.

On the same principle compare:—

brevis, gravis, mitis, turpis, ūtilis, audāx, atrōx, ferōx, vērōx.
 diligens, ingens, potens, sapiens, recens, divēs.

2

Declension

All comparatives (except plūs) are declined like fortior, fortius (Lesson XXXI).

All superlatives are declined like bonus, bona, bonum.

3. Examine:—

Puer est altior $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{quam pater} \\ \text{(patre)} \end{array} \right\}$ The boy is taller than the father.

Than = *quam*

Rules

The word after **quam** is in the same case as the word with which it is compared.

When **quam** is omitted the word is put in the Ablative.

Such a case is called an **Ablative of Comparison**.

4. Examine:—

Filius patri *quam* matri cārior est. The son is dearer to the father
than to the mother.

Note that the ablative cannot be substituted for **quam matri** in this sentence.

Rule:—

Quam cannot be omitted unless the word after it is in the Nominative or Accusative.

5. Examine:—

Turris mūrō est ūnō pede altior. The tower is one foot higher
than the wall (higher than
the wall by one foot).

ūnō pede expresses the *amount of difference*.

Such an ablative is called the **Ablative of Amount of Difference**.

6. Observe:—

brevior = shorter, too short, somewhat short, rather short.

brevissimus = shortest, very short.

7. Observe:—

quam brevissimus = as short as possible.

quam fortissimī militēs = as brave soldiers as possible.

8. Questions:—

1. State the rule for the comparison of adjectives.
2. Translate *turris est mūrō altior multis pedibus*, and explain the syntax of *mūrō* and of *pedibus*.

EXERCISE

A

1. *Vita brevior*; *onus gravius*; *vita brevissima*; *onus gravissimum*.
2. *Viri sapientissimi*; *filiae carissimae*; *onera gravissima*.
3. *Dux fortissimus*; *milites fortissimi*; *ducēs audāciōrēs*.
4. *In aquā altissimā*; *in urbe clārissimā*; *ad virōs clārissimōs*.
5. *In silvam densissimam*; *in urbēs clārissimās*; *ē flūmine rapidissimō*.
6. A very brave soldier; of the bravest soldiers; the highest mountains.
7. In a deeper river; in very deep rivers; in a very deep sea.
8. Most useful animals; heavier loads; rather high mountains.
9. As useful books as possible; mounds as high as possible.
10. Of the bravest leaders; by the bravest soldiers; of most powerful kings.

B

1. *Rēx est altior quam rēgina*. *Pueri sunt altiōrēs quam puellae*.
2. *Brevissima est vita virōrum*. *Omnium animālium leō est fortissimus*.
3. *Nihil est vēcocius quam lūmen sōlis*. *Poēta est vir doctissimus*.
4. *Dux cum militibus fortissimis oppidum oppugnāvit*. *Cum militibus fortiōribus*.
5. *Cōpiās in colle altissimō locāverant*. *In collibus altiōribus*.
6. *Librōs quam ūtilissimōs pueris dedit*. *Dōna quam ūtilissima sunt data*.
7. *Epistola filiae cārrior fuit mātři quam filiū*. *Pater filiō est ūnō pede altior*.
8. *Tectum est multis pedibus altius quam mūrus*.
9. *Tempus quam brevissimum*; *tecta quam altissima*; *in tectis quam altissimis*.

C

1. Too short a time; too high walls; on very high walls; very happy boys.
2. Were not the Roman soldiers braver than the Germans?

3. In Britain the nights are shorter. Of all the Gauls they are the bravest.
4. You are more powerful than the sons of kings.
5. On a higher hill the soldiers placed their luggage.
6. Light is swifter than wind. The Roman is wiser than the German.
7. The Roman soldiers are bolder in battles than the Germans.
8. In the islands the nights are very long.
9. The richest men are not often the happiest.
10. Between the territories of the Gauls and Germans there is a deeper river.

LESSON XXXVII

IRREGULAR COMPARISON

1. Adjectives in **-er** form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the Nom. Sing. Masc. of the Positive.

The Comparative is formed regularly.

POSITIVE	BASE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
aeger	aegr-	aegr ior	aeger rimus
pulcher	pulchr-	pulchr ior	pulcher rimus
tener	tener-	tener ior	tener rimus
miser	miser-	miser ior	miser rimus
acer	acr-	acr ior	acer rimus
celer	celer-	celer ior	celer rimus

2. Six adjectives in **-ilis** form the Superlative by adding **-limus** to the base.

The Comparative is formed regularly.

facilis	easy	facil ior	facil limus
difficilis	difficult	difficil ior	difficil limus
similis	like	simil ior	simil limus
dissimilis	unlike	dissimil ior	dissimil limus
gracilis	slender	gracil ior	gracil limus
humilis	low	humil ior	humil limus

3. The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison.

bonus	good	melior	optimus
malus	bad	pēior	pessimus
magnus	great, large	māior	māximus
parvus	small	minor	minimus
multus	much, many	plūs	plūrimus

4. Comparison by 'Magis' and 'Māximē'

Adjectives in **-us** preceded by **e** or **i** are compared by means of the adverbs **magis**, *more*, and **māximē**, *most*.

idōneus	magis idōneus	māximē idōneus
dubius	magis dubius	māximē dubius

5. **Senex**, *old man*, and **juvenis**, *young man*, used as adjectives, are compared as follows:—

senex	sēnior, older	maximus nātū	{ = greatest by birth = oldest
juvenis	jūnior, younger	minimus nātū	{ = least by birth = youngest

EXERCISE

A

1. Puellārum pulchriōrum; hominum miseriōrum; animālium celeriōrum.
2. Itinere faciliōre; opus facillimum; opera difficillima.
3. Filii simillimī; filiae dissimillimae; puellae graciliōri.
4. Dē libris optimis; cum māximis cōpiis; cum nāvibus quam plūrimis.
5. Towards the most beautiful cities; an easier route; by an easier route.
6. Customs most unlike; children very unlike; better boys: best poets.
7. By the best poets; against the largest towns; into the smallest cities.
8. Through very many rivers; larger forces; with larger forces.

B

1. Puer puellā sēnior est. Omnium puerōrum optimus est.
2. Mōrēs Gallōrum et Germanōrum dissimillimī sunt.
3. Itinera militum nostrōrum difficillima fuērunt.
4. Pueri nōn sunt semper meliōrēs patribus. Puer unō annō senior frātre fuit.
5. Puer mīnor est suō frātre. Filius multis annis jūnior filiā est.
6. Cōpiās quam māximās in Galliā comparāvit. Stellās plūrimās vidērunt.
7. Oppida māxima Gallōrum dēlēvit. In locō max' nē idōneō equitēs locābant.

C

1. The son was better than the father. My books are better than yours.
2. Was not the march easier among the hills? The marches will be easier.
3. Gold is heavier than silver. The rose is the most beautiful of all flowers.
4. The feet of the girl are very small. Was not the slave richer than the master.
5. The richest men are not always the happiest.
6. He was the worst of all. They were the best of all the citizens.
7. The judge is ten years older than the orator.
8. With as large forces of cavalry and infantry as possible they hastened to the camp of the enemy.
9. The largest boys are not always the best.

LESSON XXXVIII

IRREGULAR COMPARISON (CONTINUED)

I. POSITIVE		COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE	
exterus	outward	extērior	outer	extrēmus	outermost, last
inferus	below	in̄erior	lower	infimus } im̄us }	lowest
superus	above	sup̄erior	higher	suprēmus } summus }	highest
posterus	behind	postērior	latter	postrēmus	latest, last

Of the above the positive forms are rare and have special meanings.

nātiōnēs exterae	foreign nations
inferi	the gods below
superi	the gods above
posterus annus	the following year
posterī	descendants

Note well the following :—

summus mons	= the top of the mountain
mons imus	= the foot of the mountain.

2. Some Comparatives and Superlatives have no corresponding Positive.

.....	citērior	hither	citimus	hithermost
.....	intērior	inner	intimus	innermost
.....	prior	former	primus	first
.....	prōpior	nearer	proximus	next, nearest
.....	ultērior	farther	ultimus	farthest, last

Note —

Gallia citērior	= Hither Gaul
Gallia ultērior	= Farther Gaul

3. Examine :—

ūtilis civitātī	useful to the state
proeliō idōneus	suitable for a battle
similis patrī	like (to) the father

Adjectives followed in English by *to* or *for* are usually followed by a *Dative* in Latin.

4. Examine :—

avidus laudis	fond of praise
plēnus militum	full of soldiers

Adjectives followed in English by *of* are usually followed in Latin by the *Genitive*.

5. Adjectives that take the Ablative

Examine :—

Puer est praemiō dignus.	The boy is worthy of a reward.
Vir est contentus vitā.	The man is contented with life.
Puella est praedita ingēniō.	The girl is endowed with ability.
Militēs sunt virtūte frētī.	The soldiers are relying on their valor.
Omnēs timōre liberī sumus.	We all are free from fear.

The following adjectives are followed by the *Ablative* :—

dignus	worthy	indignus	unworthy	contentus	contented
praeditus	endowed (with)	frētus	relying on	liber	free (from)

Rules of Syntax

6. annō decimō	in the tenth	nocte	in the night
	year	supēriore aestāte	in the previous summer
aestāte	in summer		

'Point of Time' or 'Time When' is expressed by the *Ablative* without a preposition.

7. Decem hōrās pugnāverunt.	They fought for ten hours.
Multōs annōs in urbe mansit.	He remained many years in the city.

'Duration of Time' is expressed by the *Accusative* without a preposition.

Vocabulary

hōra, ae	hour	laus, laudis	praise
vigilia, ae	watch	Alpēs, ium (F.)	Alps
nihil (indeclinable neuter)	nothing	amicus, a, um	friendly
ingēnium, ī	ability	inimicus, a, um	unfriendly, hostile
honor, ōris	honor	avidus, a, um	greedy, fond
timor, ōris	fear	supērior	higher
culpa, ae	blame, fault	prior	former

prima lūx = first light = daybreak

sōl oriens = rising sun = sunrise

The cardinal and ordinal numerals required for this exercise will be found in Lesson XLII

EXERCISE

A

1. Ad summum montem ; in summō monte ; in summis Alpibus.
 2. Ad imam arborem ; ad collem imum ; ē locō superiōre.
 3. In Galliā citeriōre ; ad Galliam ulteriōrem ; ad urbem proximam.
 4. Ad inferiōrem partem insulae ; in locō castris māximē idōneō.
 5. Virī morte digni ; omnī honōre indigni ; ingeniō magnō praeditus.
 6. Suā virtūte frētus ; timōre liber ; omnī culpā liberī.
- 'TIME WHEN':—
7. posterō annō : hōrā quartā ; tertiā vigiliā ; priōre annō.
 8. primā luce ; sōle oriente.

B

1. Graeci urbem Trōjam decem annōs oppugnāvērunt.
2. Nostri cum hostibus quatuor hōrās fortiter pugnāvērunt.
3. Multōs annōs in urbe mansit. Collis ab hostibus decem hōrās tenētur.
4. Rēgēs Gallōrum pācem cum proximis civitatibus confirmāvērunt.
5. In summō monte Rōmāni peditēs locāvērunt.
6. Itinera per citeriōrem Galliam fuērunt difficillima.
7. Annō decimō urbs Trōja ā Graecis dēlēta est.
8. Urbēs tūc erant plēnae hominum clārōrum.
9. Locus magis idōneus castris quam urbī est.
10. Populus Romanus avidissimus bellī erat.

C

1. On the tops of the mountains ; to the foot of the trees.
2. In the tops of the trees ; on the top of the hill.
3. Into hither Gaul ; in farther Gaul ; into the farthest province.
4. In the first year ; at the fourth watch.
5. In the previous winter ; at daybreak ; at sunrise.
6. The Roman leader was very friendly to the Gauls.
7. The Romans were more friendly to the Greeks than to others.
8. The place was more suitable for a temple than for a camp.

9. The Romans seized a town full of corn.
10. The hill was very suitable for a camp.
11. Was not the last king very like his brother?
12. The Gauls were next to the Germans.
13. He was very fond of the praise of the citizens.
14. Was not the boy very unlike his father?
15. The cavalry hastened to the nearest city.

READING LESSON

Britain

Britannia est m̄xima insula Eur̄pae, et m̄jor est quam Hibernia. Britannia et Hibernia sunt insulae Britannicae. Incolae insul̄arum sunt mil̄tēs fortissim̄i et nautae aud̄cissim̄i. Multa proelia in omnibus partibus orbis terr̄arum pugn̄vērunt Britanni. Nulla civit̄as aut pl̄rēs n̄vēs aut mil̄tēs fortiōrēs habet. In omnibus maribus n̄vēs Britannōrum spectantur. Itaque Britannia ā poētā appell̄atur gemma Ōceān̄i.

Vocabulary

Eur̄pa, ae	Europe	incola, ae	inhabitant
Hibernia, ae	Ireland	itaque	and so, accordingly
Britannicus, a, um	British	gemma, ae	gem

LESSON XXXIX

ADVERBS

I. In Latin, as in English, most adverbs are formed from adjectives.

From adjectives of the First and Second Declensions, adverbs are usually formed by adding -ē to the base.

altus	deep	alt ē	deeply
aeger	sick, ill	aegr ē	scarcely, with difficulty
liber	free	liber ē	freely

2. From adjectives of the Third Declension adverbs are formed usually by adding **-iter** to the base; but if the adjective ends in **-ns** by adding **-er** to the base.

acer	sharp, fierce	acr iter	fiercely
fortis	brave	fort iter	bravely
felix	prosperous	felic iter	successfully
sapiens	wise	sapient er	wisely

But **audāx**, bold, daring, has usually **audacter**.

3. Some adverbs are in form the same as the neuter accusative singular of the adjective.

multum	much	facile	easily
solum	only		

4. The following are formed irregularly:—

bene	well, from bonus	parum	too little, from parvus
male	badly, ill, from malus	magnopere	greatly(= magnō opere)

5. The following have no corresponding adjectives:—

diū	long (of time)	vix	scarcely
saepe	often	semper	always

Comparison of Adverbs

6. The Comparative of an adverb is the same form as the Nom. Sing. Neut. of the comparative of the corresponding adjective.

The Superlative of the adverb is obtained from the superlative of the corresponding adjective by changing **-us** to **-ē**.

altē	altius	altissimē
aegrē	aegrius	aegerrimē
ācriter	ācrius	ācerrimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
fēliciter	fēlicius	fēlicissimē
celeriter	celerius	celerrimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

7. The irregularly formed adverbs are compared thus:—

bene	melius	optimē
male	pējus	pessimē
magis	magis	māximē
parum	minus	minimē

So also

multum	plūs	plūrimē or plūrimum
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe	saepius	saepissimē

EXERCISE

A

1. Form adverbs from the following adjectives:—
2. Compare the adverbs thus formed:—
longus, lātus, cārus; brevis, gravis; atrōx, ferōx, vēlōx;
prūdēns, diligēns.
3. Rōmānī multōs annōs contrā Karthāgīniēnsēs¹ fortiter pug-
nāvērunt.
4. Gallī peditēs Rōmānōs audacter oppugnāvērunt.
5. Longē lātēque agrī sunt vastātī. Saepissimē castra sunt
oppugnāta.
6. Aestāte consulēs legiōnēs celeriter comparābunt.
7. Una legiō ab duce Rōmānō celerrimē comparātur.
8. Virtūs militum ā Caesare māximē laudātur.
9. Ītalia, nostra patria, ab omnibus cīvibus cārissimē amātur.
10. Gallī magnās equitum et peditum cōpiās celerrimē comparant.
11. Timor māximus omnēs militēs saepissimē occupāvit.
12. Hōrā quartā Caesar omnia arma ad oppidum celerius portābit.
13. Reliquās² legiōnēs prō castrōrum portis hodiē³ locāvit.
14. Imperātor tēlis hostium gravissimē vulnerātus est.

B

1. Far and wide; more freely; very fiercely; more bravely.
2. Very successfully; more wisely; very boldly; too often.
3. Too long; very long; more boldly; too quickly.
4. As quickly as possible; as wisely as possible; as long as possible.

¹ Karthāgīniēnsis, is, a Carthaginian.
remaining.

² reliquus, a, um, rest of,

³ hodie, to-day.

5. The Romans are often defeated in war.
6. Ten legions are quickly collected by the general against the enemy.
7. The soldiers fought very bravely for four hours.
8. Assemble your forces quickly, generals. Fight very bravely, soldiers.
9. The general praised greatly the valor of the soldiers.
10. Many were very severely wounded. They remained too long.
11. They replied very briefly but (*sed*) very boldly.
12. Ten towns were very quickly destroyed.

LESSON XL

FOURTH DECLENSION

1. Nominative endings are **-us** and **-ū**.
Genitive-ending **-ūs**.

2. **Gender**

Nouns in **-us** are Masculine.

Nouns in **-ū** are Neuter.

3. **Fructus, fructūs** (M.) fruit *Base, fruct-*
Cornū, cornūs (N.) horn, wing 'of army' *Base, corn-*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	fruct us	fruct ūs	corn ū	corn ua
GEN.	fruct ūs	fruct uum	corn ūs	corn uum
DAT.	fruct ui	fruct ibus	corn ū	corn ibus
ACC.	fruct um	fruct ūs	corn ū	corn ua
VOC.	fruct us	fruct ūs	corn ū	corn ua
ABL.	fruct ū	fruct ibus	corn ū	corn ibus

4. **Exceptions in Gender**

The following nouns in **-us** are Feminine :—
domus, house : **manus**, hand, band (of soldiers) ; **īdūs**, **īduum**, pl., Ides.

5. Peculiarities of Declension

domus, *house*, is declined according to the Fourth Declension, but it has also the following forms of the Second :—

domī (Locative) = at home **domum** = home, homewards
domō = from home **domōs** = homewards, to (their) homes

6. There are only four Neuter Nouns of the Fourth Declension :—

cornū horn **pecū** herd, cattle
genū knee **verū** spit (for roasting meat)

Vocabulary

arcus	ūs	(M.)	bow
cantus	ūs	(M.)	song, singing
conspectus	ūs	(M.)	sight, view
currus	ūs	(M.)	chariot
exercitus	ūs	(M.)	army
equitātus	ūs	(M.)	cavalry (collectively)
fluctus	ūs	(M.)	wave
lūsus	ūs	(M.)	sport, play
peditātus	ūs	(M.)	infantry (collectively)
portus	ūs	(M.)	harbor, port
senātus	ūs	(M.)	senate
passus	ūs	(M.)	pace

EXERCISE

Decline together :—**exercitus magnus** ; **currus celer** ; **dextrum cornū**.

Write out the 1st sing. of each tense of **ab sum**, *I am distant*.

A

1. **Contrā dextrum cornū exercitūs nostrī** ; **in conspectū ducis vestri**.
2. **Magnō cum exercitū** ; **cum peditatū equitatūque** : **ex superiōre portū**.
3. **In portum** ; **in conspectum** : **in fluctibus maris** ; **ā senātū**.
4. By the cavalry ; by the infantry ; by the army ; by the waves.
5. At home ; from home. They hastened home. He walked home.
6. Against the left wing of the enemy's army ; into the chariots.
7. In the senate ; into the harbor : concerning the army of Caesar.

B

1. Domus mea est māior quam tua. Pueri arcūs longōs habēbant.
2. In portū māximō erant nāvēs plūrimae. Grātissimus est cantus puellārum.
3. Arcūs barbarōrum erant longissimī. Vir ingeniō māximō praeditus est.
4. In conspectū Caesaris militēs fortissimē pugnābant.
5. Oppidum equitātū peditātūque circumdederant.
6. Propter fluctūs māximōs nautae erant magnopere perterriti.
7. Senātus populi Rōmāni virtūtem exercitūs laudat.

C

1. My bow is longer than yours. Your house is higher than mine.
2. Very many ships were in the deep harbor.
3. He gave a large part of the army to his lieutenant.
4. The bows of the Romans were shorter than ours.
5. The general often praised the cavalry of the Roman army.
6. The senate gave many rewards to the soldiers.
7. The consul posted all the cavalry on the right wing.
8. The fields were laid waste in sight of the Roman army.

LESSON XLI

FIFTH DECLENSION

1. Nominative-ending is -ēs.

Genitive-ending -ēī.

2. Rēs, rei (F.) thing, affair
Diēs, diēī (M. or F.) day

Base, rē
Base, diē

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	rē s	rē s	diē s	diē s
GEN.	re ī	rē rum	diē ī	diē rum
DAT.	re ī	rē bus	diē ī	diē bus
ACC.	re m	rē s	diē m	diē s
VOC.	rē s	rē s	diē s	diē s
ABL.	rē	re bus	diē	diē bus

Note :

In the Genitive Singular ending *-ei*, the *e* is short if preceded by a consonant, as *rei*; the *e* is long if preceded by a vowel, as *diēi*.

3.**Gender**

All nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except *diēs* (usually M.), and *merīdiēs*, *mid-day* (always M.).

Diēs is sometimes Feminine in the Singular only, when it refers to a fixed or set day.

4. Decline as above :—

<i>aciēs, aciēi</i>	line of battle	<i>plānitiēs, planitiēi</i>	plain
<i>fidēs, fidei</i>	faith, loyalty	<i>spēs, spei</i>	hope
<i>perniciēs, perniciēi</i>	ruin, harm	<i>speciēs, speciēi</i>	appearance

Note :—

Only *rēs* and *diēs* are declined in full in the Plural.

Aciēs, *spēs* and *speciēs* have Nom. and Acc. only, in the Plural.

Others lack the plural altogether.

5. In *rēs publica* (F.), *commonwealth*, *state*, both parts are inflected.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	<i>rēs publica</i>	<i>rēs publicae</i>
GEN.	<i>rei publicae</i>	<i>rērum publicārum</i>
DAT.	<i>rei publicae</i>	<i>rēbus publicis</i>
ACC.	<i>rem publicam</i>	<i>rēs publicās</i>
VOC.	<i>rēs publica</i>	<i>rēs publicae</i>
ABL.	<i>rē publicā</i>	<i>rēbus publicis</i>

6. Note also :—

<i>rēs frūmentāria</i>	(sing.)	corn supply
<i>rēs adversae</i>	(pl.)	adversity, defeat
<i>rēs secundae</i>	(pl.)	prosperity, success
<i>rēs novae</i>	(pl.)	new things, change, revolution

EXERCISE

A

1. 'Time When.' posterō diē ; hōrā diēi quartā ; proximō annō.
2. 'Duration of Time.' plurimos diēs ; tōtum diem ; multōs diēs.
3. In āciē ; in plānitium ; spē victōriæ ; ob speciem nāvium.
4. In rēbus adversis ; cupidus rērum novārum ; dē rē publicā.
5. The best things ; the easiest things ; the ruin of the republic.
6. On the next day ; for few days ; at mid-day.
7. Against the republic ; into battle-line ; across the plain.
8. Relying on hope ; terrified by the appearance of the ships.

B

1. Magna erat spēs militum. In rēbus adversis este fortēs.
2. Militēs fidē imperātōris frēti erant.
3. Mercātōrēs omnem rem Rōmānis nuntiāvērunt.
4. Magna erat spēs victōriæ in animis militum.
5. Rēs multæ sunt viris facilēs, difficilēs pueris.
6. Sapientēs¹ rēbus adversis nōn moventur.
7. Gallī rērum novārum avidissimī semper erant.
8. Rem frūmentāriam comparābunt. Multos diēs oppidum oppugnātum erat.

C

1. The hopes of the sailors were very great. They will fight for the state.
2. Be brave. O boy, in adversity ; be content in prosperity.
3. The best things are not always the most useful.
4. At mid-day the camp was taken by storm.
5. The allies will provide a corn supply.
6. On account of scarcity of all things the army was not hastening.
7. They called the son of the general, the hope of the common-wealth.
8. The leader, relying on the loyalty of the soldiers, seized the camp of the enemy.

¹ Sapientēs - *The wise*, the noun being often omitted as in English.

READING LESSON

Hannibal and Scipio

Hannibal erat imperator maximus et Rōmānis inimicissimus. Puer cum patre suō in Hispāniā erat. Post patris mortem cum exercitū magnō trans Alpēs in Italiā properāvit. Cōpiās Rōmānās primum ad Ticinum superāvit. Rōmānōrum Scipiō erat dux et in proeliō vulnerātus est sed ā filiō suō ē periculō servātus est. Cum sex imperatoribus Rōmānis in Italiā Hannibal bellāvit. In omnibus proeliis Rōmāni in fugam sunt dati. Tandem ex Italiā in Āfricā Hannibal dēmigrāvit. Ad Zamā ā Scipiōne, quī patrem apud Ticinum servāverat, est superātus. Ob victoriā Scipiō ā populō Rōmānō Āfricānus est appellātus.

Vocabulary

puer	as a boy (Apposition)	tandem	at length
Hispānia, ae	Spain	Āfrica, ae	Africa
Alpēs, ium (F. pl.)	Alps	dēmigrō, āre	depart from
Ticinus, i	Ticinus (a river)	Zamā, ae	Zami (a town)
Scipiō, ōnis	Scipio	apud (prep. acc.)	at
bellō, āre	wage war	Āfricānus, i	Africanus



ROMAN FIGURES

LESSON XLII

NUMERALS

I. Numerals are classified as follows :—

I. Numeral Adjectives.

- (a) *Cardinals* ; as, **ūnus**, one ; **duo**, two.
 (b) *Ordinals* ; as, **prīmus**, first ; **secundus**, second.
 (c) *Distributives* ; as, **singulī**, one by one ; **binī**, two by two.

II. Numeral Adverbs.

as, **semel**, once ; **bis**, twice.

2. It will be sufficient for the present to learn the following :—

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. ūnus , a, um	prīmus , a, um
2. duo , duae, duo	secundus , a, um (or alter)
3. trēs , tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quartus
5. quinque	quintus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
20. vīgintī	vicēsīmus
30. trīgintā	tricēsīmus
100. centum	centēsīmus
200. ducentī , ae, a	ducentēsīmus
1000. mille	millēsīmus
2000. duo millia	
3000. tria millia	

3 Declension of Cardinals

Cardinals are indeclinable except

1. *ūnus*, *duo* and *trēs* ;
2. The hundreds beginning with *ducenti*, *ae*, *a* (like the plural of *bonus* ;
3. The plural of *mille*.
4. For declension of *ūnus* see Lesson XXI.
5. *Duo* and *trēs* are declined as follows :—

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
GEN.	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
DAT.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
ACC.	<i>duōs (duo)</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
ABL.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

6. *Mille* in the singular is indeclinable ; in the plural it is declined as a neuter noun.

NOM.	<i>millia</i>	ACC.	<i>millia</i>
GEN.	<i>millium</i>		
DAT.	<i>millibus</i>	ABL.	<i>millibus</i>

7 Syntax of Mille

Mille in the singular is an indeclinable adjective, as :—

<i>mille hominēs</i>	a thousand men
<i>mille hominum</i>	of a thousand men
<i>mille hominibus</i>	to a thousand men

Mille in the plural is a noun, as :—

<i>duo millia hominum</i>	{ two thousands of men two thousand men
<i>cum tribus millibus equitum</i>	with three thousand cavalry

8 Declension of Ordinals

Ordinals, *primus*, *a*, *um*, etc., are declined like *bonus*, *a*, *um*.

9. Extent of Space

Examine:—

Arbor est decem pedēs alta. The tree is ten feet high.
'decem pedēs' expresses *Extent of Space* and is in the *Accusative*.

Rule of Syntax:—

'Extent of Space' is expressed by the *Accusative*.

10. Partitive Genitive or Genitive of the Whole

Examine:—

alter consulum one of the (two) consuls **nihil operis** no work
multum temporis much (of) time

A noun may be used in the genitive to denote the whole of which a part is taken.

Such a genitive is called a **Partitive Genitive** or **Genitive of the Whole**.

One of the soldiers — **ūnus ex militibus** or
ūnus militum (Partitive Genitive)

One mile or a mile = **mille passūs** = a thousand paces. (See Art. 7)

Two miles = **duo millia passuum** = two thousand paces. (See Art. 7)
passuum is a *Partitive Genitive*

EXERCISE

A

How do you express (1) Duration of time? (2) Measure of Difference?

1. **Ūna legiō**; **prima legiō**; **duārum legiōnum**; **tertiæ legiōnis**.
2. **Cum ducentis militibus**; **cum mille peditibus**; **cum sex millibus equitum**.
3. **Duōs annōs**; **duās hōrās**; **trēs mensēs**; **duo millia pedum**.
4. **Per nivem duōs pedēs altam**; **trans montēs tria millia passuum altōs**.
5. Of one city; of two cities; of the fourth legion; of two cohorts.
6. With two thousand infantry and three thousand cavalry.
7. A dart four feet long; in snow three feet deep; ten miles.
8. Spears six feet long; a wall three feet higher and two hundred feet longer.

B

1. Arbor est viginti pedēs alta. Rēx in urbe annōs decem regnāvit¹.
2. Miles multa millia passuum ambulāvit. Militēs duārum legiōnum convocāvit.
3. Oppidum decem millia passuum ab urbe abest. Vir sex pedēs altus est.
4. Militēs oppidum sex mensēs oppugnāvērunt.
5. Castra duo millia passuum a flūmine aberant.
6. Mensa est sex pedēs longa et quattuor pedēs lāta.
7. Rēx primus inter Rōmānōs erat Rōmulus, secundus Numa.
8. Rōmulus septem et trigintā annōs regnāvit

C

1. The house is thirty feet long and twenty wide.
2. How many miles did the boy walk? He will have walked three miles.
3. Our city is seven miles distant from the mountain.
4. The mountain is one mile high and ten miles long.
5. The general remained in the city for four months.
6. The enemy had fought most fiercely for three hours.
7. The father is three years older than the mother.
8. The tree is twenty feet higher than the tower.

¹ regno. -āre, reign.

LESSON XLIII

THIRD CONJUGATION

Indicative and Imperative Active

1. The Third Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive ends in -ēre, as:—

reg ō reg ēre rule

2. The Principal Parts of regō are

reg ō	Pres. Indic.	} showing the <i>Present Stem</i> rege-
reg ere	Pres. Infin.	
rex i	Perf. Indic.	} showing the <i>Perfect Stem</i> rex-
rect um	Supine ¹	

showing the *Supine Stem* rect-

¹See page 38, Footnote.

3. The Indicative Tenses are

PRESENT	reg ō	} form of Present Perfect Stem rex- (See Lesson XVII)
IMPERFECT	regē ba m	
FUTURE	reg am	
PERFECT	rex i	
PLUPERFECT	rex eram	
FUTURE PERFECT	rex erō	

4. Indicative

Present

reg o	reg imus
reg is	reg itis
reg it	reg unt

Imperfect

regē bam	-bās	-bat	-bāmus	-bātis	-bant
----------	------	------	--------	--------	-------

Future

reg am	reg ēmus
reg ēs	reg ētis
reg et	reg ent

Perfect

rex i	-isti	-it	rex imus	-istis	-ērunt or -ēre
-------	-------	-----	----------	--------	----------------

Pluperfect

rex eram	-erās	-erat	rex erāmus	-erātis	-erant
----------	-------	-------	------------	---------	--------

Future Perfect

rex erō	-eris	-erit	rex erimus	-eritis	-erint
---------	-------	-------	------------	---------	--------

5. Imperative

PRESENT

2. Sing. reg e	2. Pl. reg ite
----------------	----------------

FUTURE

2. Sing. reg itō	2. Pl. reg itōte
3. Sing. reg itō	3. Pl. reg untō

6.

Principal Parts

There is little regularity in the formation of the principal parts of verbs of the third conjugation. Each verb must be learned independently.

dicō	3	dixī	dictum	say, tell
dūcō	3	dūxī	ductum	lead
trahō	3	trāxī	tractum	draw
vivō	3	vixī	victum	live
carpō	3	carpsī	carptum	pluck
scribō	3	scripsī	scriptum	write
mittō	3	misi	missum	send
claudō	3	clausī	clausum	shut
pōnō	3	posuī	positum	place, pitch (camp)
alō	3	alui	altum	rear, nourish
scandō	3	scandi	scansum	climb
pellō	3	pepulī	pulsum	drive, rout
cadō	3	cecidī	cāsum	fall
vincō	3	vici	victum	conquer, defeat

Questions

1. State the rule for the formation of the (1) Plupf. Indic. Act., (2) Fut. Pf. Indic. Act.
2. Give the translations of (1) *vivēbam*, (2) *scripsī*, (3) *dicō*.
3. What is the perf. stem of *pōnō*, *mittō*, *pellō*.
4. Give the 1st sing. plupf. and fut. pf. of *pōnō*, *mittō*, *pellō*.

EXERCISE

A

1. *Regēs, regis; regit, reget; regunt, regent; regitis, regētis.*
2. *Amābat, monēbat, regēbat; amābit, monēbit, reget.*
3. *Rexērunt* (2). *rexerant, rexerint; rege, regite.*
4. *Misit, miserit; scribit, scribet; cadunt, cecidērunt.*
5. We rule, we shall rule; rule; you shall rule; he rules.
6. They sent, they had sent, they will have sent; we were sending.
7. He used to write. They used to live. Are they driving?
8. Who wrote? Did he not write? Where did they pitch the camp?

B

1. Puer multōs annōs in urbe vixit. Quot annōs domī mansit?
2. Imperātor exercitum māximum dūcet. Ad mātrem meam epistolās mittam.
3. Flōrēs multōs in hortō carpsimus. Portam, puer, claude.
4. Portās castrōrum nocte clausit. In summō monte castra posuit.
5. Montem altum multō cum labōre scandi. Hostēs ex oppidō pepulimus.
6. Exercitum magnum in Galliam citeriōrem dūxit.
7. Multi in proeliō cecidērunt. Nāvēs hieme in litus trahēbant.

C

1. We sent auxiliaries across the river. The allies will send ships.
2. We drew a large load of corn to the ships.
3. He will live ten years at home. How long did he live in Gaul?
4. Our men drove the enemy into the river.
5. Why did you not write? I was living in the city at that time.
6. The barbarians sent a large army into our territory.
7. Many brave men have fallen. They had sent hostages.

LESSON XLIV

THIRD CONJUGATION

Indicative and Imperative Passive

I. Indicative

PRESENT	regor	I am ruled, I am being ruled
IMPERFECT	regēbar	I was (being) ruled
FUTURE	regar	I shall be ruled
PERFECT	rectus (a, um) sum	I have been ruled
PLUPERFECT	rectus (a, um) eram	I had been ruled
FUTURE PERFECT	rectus (a, um) erō	I shall have been ruled

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. reg or	reg imur
2. reg eris (-ere)	reg imini
3. reg itur	reg untur

Imperfect

1. reg ēbar	reg ēbāmur
2. reg ēbāris (-re)	reg ēbāmini
3. reg ēbātur	reg ēbantur

Future

1. reg ar	reg ēmur
2. reg ēris (-ēre)	reg ēmini
3. reg ētur	reg entur

Perfect

rectus sum	es	est	recti sumus	estis	sunt
------------	----	-----	-------------	-------	------

Pluperfect

rectus eram	erās	erat	recti erāmus	erātis	erant
-------------	------	------	--------------	--------	-------

Future Perfect

rectus erō	eris	erit	recti erimus	eritis	erunt
------------	------	------	--------------	--------	-------

2.**Imperative****PRESENT**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
2. reg ere be thou ruled	2. reg iminī be ye ruled

FUTURE

2. reg itor thou shalt be ruled	
3. reg itor he shall be ruled	3. reg untor they shall be ruled

3.**Principal Parts**

agō	3	ēgī	actum	drive, do
cō gō	3	co ēgī	co actum	(drive together) collect, force
con dō	3	con didī	con ditum	found

So ab dō, conceal; dē dō, give up, surrender; pō dō, betray;
red dō, return; trā dō, hand over, surrender.

cēdō	3	cessī	cessum	go, withdraw, yield
------	---	-------	--------	---------------------

So *dē cēdō*, go away, depart ; *dis cēdō*, go apart, scatter, depart ;
ex cēdō, go out of, depart ; *prō cēdō*, go forward, advance.

<i>fundō</i>	3	<i>fūdī</i>	<i>fūsum</i>	pour, rout
<i>gerō</i>	3	<i>gessi</i>	<i>gestum</i>	wage, carry on (war), do
<i>frangō</i>	3	<i>frēgī</i>	<i>fractum</i>	break, shatter
<i>premō</i>	3	<i>pressī</i>	<i>pressum</i>	press, press hard
<i>petō</i>	3	<i>petivī</i>	<i>petitum</i>	seek, ask for
<i>vertō</i>	3	<i>verti</i>	<i>versum</i>	turn
<i>cognoscō</i>	3	<i>cognōvī</i>	<i>cognitum</i>	learn, ascertain
<i>relinquō</i>	3	<i>re liquī</i>	<i>re lictum</i>	leave behind, leave
<i>creō</i>	1	<i>creāvī</i>	<i>creātum</i>	make, elect
<i>habeō</i>	2	<i>habuī</i>	<i>habitum</i>	have, hold, regard
<i>legō</i>	3	<i>lēgī</i>	<i>lectum</i>	choose

Predicate Accusative

4. Examine:—

<i>Populus Rōmānus Brutum consulem creāvit.</i>	The Roman people made Brutus consul.
<i>Militēs imperātōrem Scipiōnem lēgērunt.</i>	The soldiers chose Scipio general.
<i>Pater puerum Caesarem appellāvit.</i>	The father called the boy Caesar.
<i>Omnēs virum patrem patriae habuērunt.</i>	All regarded the man (as) the father of his country.

Rule:—

Verbs of *making, choosing, calling, regarding* may in the active take two accusatives ; one, the *Direct Object*, the other, the *Predicate Accusative*.

5. Predicate Nominative

Examine:—

Brutus consul ā populō Rōmānō creātus est.
Scipiō imperātor ā militibus lectus est.
Puer Caesar ā patre appellātus est.
Vir pater patriae ab omnibus habitus est.

Rule :—

These same verbs in the passive take two nominatives ; the *Subject Nominative* and the *Predicate Nominative*.

6. Questions :—

What part of the verb is *rectus*? How is it obtained?

What is the Latin for (*having been*) *led, written, sent, shut, pitched, driven, drawn, plucked, said*.

EXERCISE**A**

1. Obsidēs mittuntur. Nuntii mittentur. Epistolae missae sunt.
2. Castra posuit. Castra ponentur. Castra posuerant. Castra posita erant.
3. Hostēs pepulit. Hostēs pulsī sunt. Barbari pellentur.
4. Urbem condidit. Urbs condita est. Urbēs conditae erunt.
5. Cōpiae equitum cōgentur. Peditātus cōgitur. Cōpiae coactae sunt.
6. Urbem dedit. Impedimenta dedit. Obsidēs traditi sunt.
7. Impedimenta relinquunt. Nāvēs relinquuntur. Senēs relictī erant.
8. In silvās discesserunt. Ex urbe excessit. Socii facile sunt fusi.
9. Cur bellum gerēbatur? Multa bella gesta erunt. Multae res sunt gestae.
10. Viginti nāvēs fractae sunt. Nostri ab hostibus premēbantur.
11. Pācem ab Rōmānis petiverunt. Per lēgātōs pāx petita est.

B

1. He is sent. You were being sent. They were sent. You will be sent.
2. In the following year war was waged by the king.
3. A long war will be waged. Two consuls were chosen.
4. Two letters were sent by the boy. Cicero was chosen consul.
5. Many towns were founded by the Romans in Gaul.
6. The camp will be pitched on the top of the hill.
7. You were chosen general by the soldiers. Our men will be hard pressed.
8. Was not the matter told to your father? The matter will be told.
9. He learned the matter from scouts. The children were abandoned.

READING LESSON

Regulus

Rōmānī bellum cum Kārthāginiensibus annōs novem infēliciter gesserant. Tum Regulus et Manlius consulēs magnā cum classe ad Africam missi sunt. Prope Siciliam classem hostium paene tōtam dēlēverunt. Sine ullō periculō castra in ōrā Africae posuērunt. Inde finēs Kārthāginiensium ferrō et igni vastāverunt et oppida incendērunt. Ante hiemem Manlius cum magnā parte exercitūs ad Italiam nāvigāvit; cum reliquis cōpiis Regulus bellum gerēbat. In montēs ducēs Kārthāginiensium cōpiās duxērunt. Hic ā Regulō magnā cum clāde fūsi sunt. Tum pācem petivērunt sed Regulus nōn dedit. Postēā Kārthāginiensēs novum ducem Xanthippum creāvērunt qui cum Rōmānis in locō campestrī pugnāvit. Rōmāni fūsi fugātique sunt. Trigintā millia in proeliō cecidērunt. Regulus cum quingentis militibus sunt capti. Iterum Kārthāginiensēs pācem petivērunt et cum lēgātis Regulus ad urbem Rōmam missus est. Senātus bellum diūtius gerere nōlēbat nam civēs Regulū servāre volēbant. Is tamen senātum bellum gerere coēgit et sine ullō timōre ex urbe ad Africam contendit. Hic ā Kārthāginiensibus crūdēliter necātus est. Ob virtutem et constantiam Regulus ab omnibus Rōmānis in honōre habitus est.

Vocabulary

Kārthāginiensis, is	Carthaginian	nōlēbat	was unwilling
infēliciter	unsuccessfully	nam(conjunction)	for
paene	almost	volēbant	wished
incendō 3 -di -sum	set on fire, burn	is(demonstrative	
reliquus, a, um	remaining,	pronoun)	he
	rest of	contendō 3 -di	
Xanthippus, i	Xanthippus	-tum	set out
campester, tris, tre	level	crūdēliter	cruelly
fugō, -āre	put to flight	necō, -āre	kill, murder
capiō 3 cēpi		constantia, ae	firmness of
captum	take captive		purpose
iterum	again, a		
	second time		

LESSON XLV

TIME

Rules for Time

1. Time 'at which' is expressed by the **Ablative**.

vère, aestate, autumnō, hieme, prima luce, tertio annō.

2. 'Duration of Time' is expressed by the **Accusative**.

duas horas for two hours

tres annos for three years

Sometimes **per** is added to make a more emphatic form.

per totum diem throughout the whole day

3. Time 'within which' is expressed by

(a) the **Ablative**

(b) **intrā** or **inter** with **Accusative**

Within three days (a) **tribus diebus**

(b) **intrā tres dies**

inter tres dies

4. Time 'ago' is expressed by **abhinc** with **Accusative** or **Ablative**.

Three days ago = **abhinc tres dies** or **abhinc tribus diebus**

abhinc is placed first

5. Many years after = **multis annis post**

Many years before = **multis annis ante**

post and **ante** are *adverbs*

annis is *Ablative of Measure of Difference*

Sometimes the same idea is expressed by

post multos annos = after many years

ante multos annos = before many years

post and **ante** are *prepositions*

6. Time 'prospective' is expressed by 'ad' or 'in' with Accusative.

Mē in posterum diem invitāvit He invited me for the following day

7.

Vocabulary

<i>hiems, hiemis</i> (F.)	winter	<i>sōlis occāsus, ūs</i> (M.)	setting of sun
<i>vēr, vēris</i> (N.)	spring	<i>sōl oriens</i> (M.)	sunrise
<i>auctumnus, i</i> (M.)	autumn	<i>māne</i> (indeclinable)	morning
<i>aestās, aestātis</i> (F.)	summer	<i>vigilia, ae</i> (F.)	watch
<i>nox, noctis</i> (F.)	night	<i>superior</i> }	{ previous,
<i>diēs, diēi</i> (M.)	day	<i>prior</i> }	{ former
<i>hōra, ae</i> (F.)	hour	<i>posterus, a, um</i>	following
<i>prima lūx</i>	daybreak	<i>paucī, ae, a</i>	few

At the beginning of spring = *primō vère*

In the middle of winter = *mediā hieme*

At the end of summer = *extrēmā aestāte*

In these examples the adjectives *primus, medius, extrēmus*, agree with the nouns.

EXERCISE

A

TIME 'AT WHICH'

1. *Extrēmā hieme* ; *primō auctumnō* ; *mediā aestāte*.
2. *Superiōre nocte* ; *posterō diē* ; *superiōre annō* ; *posterō annō*.
3. *Sōlis occāsū* ; *sōle oriente* ; *primā lūce* ; *māne*.

B

1. A few days after ; after a few hours ; a few years ago.
2. For two hours ; at the second hour ; for three years ; in the third year.
3. Before daybreak ; before night ; before sunrise ; before sunset.
4. At the beginning of spring, summer, autumn, winter.
5. In the middle of spring, summer, autumn, winter.
6. At the end of spring, summer, autumn, winter.

LESSON XLVI

PLACE

1. Know the following names of places :—

Rōma, ae	Rome	Athēnae, ārum (F. Pl.)	Athens
Corinthus, ī (F.)	Corinth	Delphi, ōrum (M. Pl.)	Delphi
Tarentum, ī (N.)	Tarentum	Curēs, ium (F. Pl.)	Cures
Karthāgō, inis (F.)	Carthage	Britannia, ae (F.)	Britain
Aegina, ae (F.)	Aegina (a small island)		(a large island)

2. Review the declension of **domus** (Lesson XL, 5).

Decline **rūs**, *country*, thus

rūs, rūris, rūri, rūs, rûre. In the Pl. only **rûra**, Nom. and Acc.

3. The Locative Case

Besides the six regular cases there are traces of another case in Latin, the *Locative*.

The *Locative* denotes *place where*, and is translated by *at* or *in*.

It survives in names of towns and a few other words.

Names of towns and small islands of the first or second declension and singular number have a *Locative*. In *form* it is like the *Genitive*.

Rōmae = at Rome	also
Corinthī = at Corinth	domī = at home
Tarentī = at Tarentum	rūrī = in the country
Aeginae = in Aegina	humī = on the ground
	bellī = in war
	militiae = in war, on service

herī, *yesterday*, and **vesperī**, *at evening*, are Locative forms of **hiesc.**

4. Examine :—

Usual Construction	Names of towns, cities, small islands; also domus and rūs	
Place 'to which'		
ad Galliam	to Gaul	Rōmam to Rome
ad Britanniam	to Britain	Aeginam to Aegina
ad urbem	to the city	domum home
in oppidum	into the town	rūs to the country

Place 'from which'

ab Galliā	from Gaul	Rōmā from Rome
a Britannīā	from Britain	Aeginā from Aegina
ex urbe	from the city	domō from home
ab oppidō	from the town	rūre from the country

Place 'at' or 'in which'

in Galliā	in Gaul	Romae at Rome
in Britannīā	in Britain	Aeginae in Aegina
in urbe	in the city	domī at home
in oppidō	in the town	rūrī in the country

5. Rules of Syntax

Place 'to which' is regularly expressed by the **Accusative** and a preposition **ad** or **in**.

Place 'from which' is regularly expressed by the **Ablative** and a preposition **ab**, **ex** or **dē**.

Place 'in which' is regularly expressed by the **Ablative** and a preposition **in**.

Names of *towns, cities, small islands*, and also **domus** and **rūs** omit the preposition; and express 'place in which' by the **Locative** when possible; otherwise by the **Ablative**, called the **Local Ablative**.

Carthāgine, at Carthage; **Athēnīs**, at Athens

In the case of combinations each word takes its own construction.

To the city of Rome = *ad urbem Rōmam*

EXERCISE

A

1. *Karthāginem* ; *Athēnās* ; *Delphōs*, *Rōmam ad patrem suum*.
2. *Karthāginē ex Africā* ; *Delphis a Graeciā* ; *Rōmā a patre suō*.
3. *In urbe domi* ; *Corinthi* ; *in hortō* ; *in litore* ; *rūri*.
4. To the army in Britain ; from Athens to Rome ; from Rome home.
5. To, from, at (or in) Rome, Corinth, Tarentum, Carthage, Athens, Delphi, Cures, Gaul, home, the city, country.
6. Into the territory of the Remi ; into our province ; on the bank.

B

1. *Multōs annōs Carthāginē vixit. Ab exercitū in Galliam properāvit.*
2. *Imperātor suās legiōnēs cum lēgātis Athēnis ex Graeciā in Italiam Tarentum mittet.*
3. *Consul cum omnibus cōpiis ad urbem mittētur.*
4. *Posterō diē Caesar sua castra decem millia passuum prōmōvit et ibi diēs quinque mansit; diē sextō omnēs domūs in oppidō dēlēvit et paucis post diēbus primā lūce ad Graeciam nāvigāvit.*

C

Ten years ago, on a very beautiful day in spring, two boys walked from home very many miles into the country. They did not carry very heavy loads. For three days they walked through the fields and on the fourth day saw a very deep river. Across the river was a very high mountain and on the top of the mountain many trees. They remained two years in the country and often wrote letters home to their friends. In autumn they were sent home with a farmer who was bringing a large quantity of corn to the city. They were wiser and better boys and often told long stories about the journey to the other boys and girls.

COLLOQUIUM

Marcus et Caius

- M. Salvē! Quandō Athēnis nāvigāvisti?
 C. Abhinc trēs diēs. Quamdiū Rōmae fuisti?
 M. Duōs annōs Rōmae fui. Abhinc diēs viginti Rōmā Tarentum
 nāvigāvi sed Tarentō Rōmam equō vectus sum.
 C. Meumne frātre Tarenti vidisti? Ibi annō proximō vivēbat.
 M. Frātre tuum Tarenti nōn vidi. Tum rūri erat.
 C. Cras ego Karthāginem nāvigābō; tū rūs pedibus contendēs.
 M. Quamdiū Karthāgine manēbis? Longum est iter et mare est
 periculōsum.
 C. Trēs menses Karthāgine manēbō. Meus avus in urbe
 Karthāgine vivit.
 M. Dum tū ibi manēbis, ego rūri tōtam aestātem habitābō. Rūs
 mihi semper aestāte grātissimū est.
 C. Mihi mare est grātius. In mensem quartum Rōmam nāvigābō.
 M. Tum ego Corinthi vivam. Ibi omnem hiemem habitābō
 Valē.

Vocabulary

vehō 3 vexi		tū	thou, you
vectum	carry	contendō 3 -di -tum	set out
vehor	am carried - I ride or sail	periculōsus, a, um	dangerous
ibi	there	avus, i	grandfather
cras	to-morrow	dum	while
ego	I	mihi	dat. of ego = to me

LESSON XLVII

THIRD CONJUGATION

Verbs in -iō

1. A few verbs of the third conjugation have in the present indicative the ending -iō in the active and -ior in the passive.

Capiō, take, is the type.

2. Principal Parts

cap iō cap ĕre cēp ī capt um

3. The Indicative Tenses are

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	cap iō	cap ior
IMPERFECT	cap iēbam	cap iēbar
FUTURE	cap iam	cap iar
PERFECT	cēp ī	capt us (a, um) sum
PLUPERFECT	cēp eram	capt us (a, um) eram
FUTURE PERFECT	cēp erō	capt us (a, um) erō

4. Indicative

Present

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE
1. cap iō	cap imus	cap ior	cap imur
2. cap is	cap itis	cap ĕris, (-ĕre)	cap imini
3. cap it	cap iunt	cap itur	cap iuntur

Imperfect

capiēbam, -bās, -bat, etc. capiēbar, -bāris, -bātur, etc.

Future

1. cap iam	cap iēmus	cap iar	cap iēmur
2. cap iēs	cap iētis	cap iēris (-re)	cap iēmini
3. cap iet	cap ient	cap iētur	cap ientur

Perfect

cēpī, -istī, -it, etc.

captus sum, es, est, etc.

Pluperfect

cēp eram, -erās, -erat, etc.

captus eram, erās, erat, etc.

Future Perfect

cēp erō, -eris, -erit, etc.

captus erō, eris, erit, etc.

5.

Imperative

PRESENT

2. cap e

cap ite

cap ere

cap imini

FUTURE

2. cap itō

cap itōte

cap itor

3. cap itō

cap iuntō

cap itor

cap iuntor

6. All verbs in -iō with the infinitive in -ēre are conjugated like capiō.

7.

Principal Parts

fugiō	3	fūgī	fugitum	flee
faciō	3	fēcī	factum	do, make
jaciō	3	jēcī	actum	throw
rapiō	3	rapuī	raptum	seize

and compounds,

accipiō	3	accēpī	acceptum	receive, accept
		recipiō, get back ; incipiō, begin ;		
effugiō	3	effūgī	effugitum	escape
		refugiō, flee back		
interficiō	3	interfēcī	interfectum	kill
		efficiō, effect ; conficiō, perniciō, accomplish, finish ;		
		reficiō, repair		
conjiciō	3	conjēcī	conjectum	hurl
		ējiciō, throw out ; abjiciō, throw away ; dējiciō, throw down		
diripiō	3	diripuī	direptum	plunder
		abripuī, snatch away		
conspiciō	3	conspexī	conspectum	observe, behold

EXERCISE

A

1. Fūgit, fūgit; fūgiunt, fūgērunt; capit, cēpit; accipitis, accipiētis.
2. Fūgimus, fūgerāmus, fūgerimus; interficiuntur, interficientur.
3. Fugis, fūgistī; interfectī sunt, erant, erint; fuge, fugite.
4. We flee, we fled, we shall flee. He has taken, you had taken.
5. He was killed, he is being killed, he will be killed. They killed.
6. He seized, he was seized; he will seize, he will be seized.

B

1. Num hostēs effugient? Nōne castra diripuērunt? Opusne fecisti?
2. Signa in summō colle conspecta sunt. Litterae heri acceptae sunt.
3. Cur nōn opus factum est? Hostēsne effugiunt? Opera sunt confecta.
4. Tēla coniecta sunt. Hastae coniectae erant. Sagittae coniectae erunt.
5. Obsidēs accipiet. Dōna accēpērunt. Dōna accepta sunt.
6. Impedimenta sunt direpta. Decem oppida capientur. Urbs capitur.
7. Saxa dē mūrō jaciuntur. Libērī mulierēsque effūgērunt.

C

1. The old men were put to death. The whole town was plundered.
 2. The barbarians kept throwing stones down from the wall.
 3. The soldiers of the tenth legion at once took (up) arms.
 4. Javelins were being thrown from the higher ground upon the shore.
 5. The guards of the temple slew the young man.
 6. How many men escaped? When did you receive the letter?
 7. Will the ships be repaired? They were repaired three days ago
-

LESSON XLVIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Indicative and Imperative Active

1. The Fourth Conjugation includes all verbs whose present infinitive ends in **-īre**, as:—

aud iō, **aud īre**, hear.

2. The Principal Parts of **audiō** are

aud iō	Pres. Indic.	} showing the Present Stem audi-
aud īre	Pres. Infin.	
audīv ī	Perf. Indic.	} showing the Perfect Stem audīv-
audīt um	Supine ¹	
		showing the Supine Stem audīt .

3. The Indicative Tenses are

PRESENT	aud iō	} formed from Perfect Stem, audīv- (See Lesson XVIII)
IMPERFECT	aud iēbam	
FUTURE	aud iam	
PERFECT	audīv ī	
PLUPERFECT	audīv eram	
FUTURE PERFECT	audīv erō	

4. Indicative

Present

aud iō	aud īmus
aud īs	aud ītis
aud īt	aud iunt

Imperfect

audiēbam	-bās	-bat	audiēbāmus	-bātis	-bant
-----------------	-------------	-------------	-------------------	---------------	--------------

Future

aud iam	aud iēmus
aud iēs	aud iētis
aud iet	aud ient

¹ See page 38, footnote.

Perfect

audīv ī -istī -it

audīv imus -istis -ērunt or -ēre

Pluperfect

audīv eram -erās -erat

audīv erāmus -erātis -erant

Future Perfect

audīv erō -eris -erit

audīv erimus -eritis erint

5.

Imperative

PRESENT

2. Sing. aud ī

2. Pl. aud ite

FUTURE

2. Sing. aud itō

2. Pl. aud itōte

3. Sing. aud itō

3. Pl. aud iuntō

6.

Principal Parts

audiō	4	audīvī	audītum	hear
mūniō	4	mūnivī	mūnitum	fortify
pūniō	4	pūnivī	pūnitum	punish
vestiō	4	vestivī	vestitum	clothe
finiō	4	finivī	finitum	finish; end
dormiō	4	dormivī	dormitum	sleep
custōdiō	4	custōdivī	custōditum	guard
ērūdiō	4	ērūdivī	ērūditum	bring up, instruct

7.

Questions

1. State the rule for the formation of the (1) Plupf. Indic. Act., (2) Fut. Pf. Indic. Act.
2. Give the translations of **audiō**; **dormiēbam**; **mūnivit**.
3. Give the 1st Sing. of each tense of (1) **mūniō**, (2) **custōdiō**.

EXERCISE

A

1. Audiam, audiēbam, audiveram ; audis, audivistī, audiveris.
2. Mūnis, mūniēs ; mūniētis, mūnivistis ; mūniverātis, mūniveritis.
3. Amābunt, monēbunt, regent, audient ; audivērunt, audiverint.
4. Audi, audite ; dormivit, dormiverit ; custodiēbās, custodiēbātis.
5. We hear, we shall hear ; he hears, he heard ; I slept. I shall have slept.
6. He used to punish. He was guarding. Were you hearing ?
7. They have fortified. They heard. Did they guard ? They did guard.
8. We are finishing the war. We shall guard the gate. Who is guarding ?

B

1. Oppidum vallō fossāque muniverant. Vēre flōrēs multī terram vestiunt.
2. Barbari corpora pellibus vestiunt. Octō hōrās dormiēmus.
3. Nōne carmina virginum audivistī ? Bellum aestāte proximā finient.
4. Portās castrōrum custodivimus. Quot hōrās dormivistī ?
5. Miles fortis, portam custodī. Num magister puerum diligentem pūniet ?
6. Diēs decem domōs suās custodivērunt. Clāmōrem audiverātis.

C

1. We heard the shouts of the sailors. They were fortifying the city.
 2. He will punish the children severely. They had slept too long.
 3. We shall have finished the war in the summer. We have guarded the cities.
 4. The orator instructed the boys in all arts. They will hear the orator.
-

LESSON XLIX

FOURTH CONJUGATION INDICATIVE AND
IMPERATIVE PASSIVE

I.

Indicative

PRESENT	audior	<i>I am heard, I am being heard</i>
IMPERFECT	audiēbar	<i>I was being heard</i>
FUTURE	audiar	<i>I shall be heard</i>
PERFECT	auditus (a, um) sum	<i>I have been heard</i>
PLUPERFECT	auditus (a, um) eram	<i>I had been heard</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	auditus (a, um) erō	<i>I shall have been heard</i>

2.

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. aud ior	aud imur
2. aud iris (-ire)	aud imini
3. aud itur	aud iuntur

Imperfect

1. aud iēbar	aud iēbāmur
2. aud iēbāris (-re)	aud iēbāmini
3. aud iēbātur	aud iēbantur

Future

1. aud iar	aud iēmur
2. aud iēris (-re)	aud iēmini
3. aud iētur	aud ientur

Perfect

auditus sum es est	audīti sumus estis sunt
--------------------	-------------------------

Pluperfect

auditus eram erās erat	audīti erāmus erātis erant
------------------------	----------------------------

Future Perfect

auditus erō eris erit	audīti erimus eritis erunt
-----------------------	----------------------------

3.

Imperative

PRESENT

2. aud ire, be thou heard	aud imini, be ye heard
---------------------------	------------------------

FUTURE

2. aud itor, thou shalt be heard	
3. aud itor, he shall be heard	aud iuntor, they shall be heard

4.

Principal Parts

dēsiliō	4	dēsili	dēsultum	leap down
sepeliō	4	sepeliv	sepultum	bury
re periō	4	rep peri	re pertum	find, discover
com periō	4	com peri	com pertum	find out, ascertain
sentiō	4	sensī	sensum	feel, know
veniō	4	vēni	ventum	come
in veniō				come upon, find
per veniō ad (prep. with acc.)				reach, arrive at
sub veniō (governs dative)				come to the aid of
vinciō	4	vinxi	vinctum	bind

5. Questions:—

What part of the verb is **audītus**? How is it obtained?
How is it declined? What is its meaning?

What is the Latin for (*having been*) *fortified, clothed, finished, guarded, instructed, buried, found, (2) ascertained.*

EXERCISE

A

1. Vēnit, vēnit; venis, veniēs; veniēbās, vēnistī; vēneris, vēnerās.
2. Dēsilit, dēsilit; dēsiliunt, dēsiluērunt; sentimus, sensimus.
3. Custōdiris, custōdiēris; custōdiēbātur, custōdītus est.
4. Auditus es, auditus erās, auditus eris; auditi erant, auditi erunt.
5. We are heard, we shall be heard; we have been heard, we had been heard.
6. We are coming, we came, we shall come; we had come, we shall have come.
7. He leapt down, they shall leap down, you had leapt down.
8. You instruct, you are being instructed, you shall be instructed.

B

1. Puerī auditi sunt. Puellae auditaē sunt. Castra munita erant.
2. Bellum finiētur. Bella finita sunt. Obsidēs custōditi erunt.
3. Corpora sepelivērunt. Corpora sepulta sunt. Corpus ignem sentit.
4. Rēs comperta est. Rēs compertaē sunt. Rem per explorā-tōrēs comperit.

5. Nāvēs viginti parātās reperit. Nāvēs decem fractās invēnit.
6. Hominem vinxit. Homō vinctus est. Hominēs vincti sunt.
7. Hostēs victi sunt. Barbarōs vicērunt.
8. Cur vēnisti? Quandō vēnistis? Utrum vēnit an domi mansit?
9. Equitēs hostium jam ad castra nostra pervēnerant.

C

1. I came, I saw, I conquered. He heard, he came, he saw.
2. The shouts of the enemy were heard in the city.
3. On the fourth day at daybreak the auxiliaries of the allies arrived.
4. At sunset the camp was fortified with a rampart and trench.
5. The soldiers of the tenth legion at once leapt down from the ships.
6. On the seventh day he reached the port and found the ships ready.
7. The infantry of the allies came to the aid of our cavalry (Dat.)

READING LESSON

The Battle of Marathon (B.C. 490)

Dārēus¹ exercitum classemque māximam contrā Graeciam miserat. Exercitus ā barbaris superātus est et classis tempestāte magnā est dēlēta. Itaque alterum exercitum et classem alteram statim parāvit. Interim ad urbēs Graecās nuntiōs misit et terram et aquam² postulāvit. Tum māximō cum exercitū in Graeciam Datis et Artaphernes³, ducēs perītissimī, contendērunt. Primum Eretriam⁴ oppugnāvērunt et sex diēs circum mūrōs ācriter pugnāvērunt; septimō diē civēs duo urbem hostibus prōdidērunt. Postquam Eretriam dēlēvērunt, ad Atticam⁴ nāvigāvērunt. In campō Marathōniō⁵ quī ab Athēnis bidui iter aberat castra posuērunt. Athēniensēs magnō periculō incitāti cōpiās omnēs suās comparāvērunt. Interim cursor celerrimus nōmine Phidippides⁶ Lacedaemona⁷ missus est et auxilium rogāvit. Lacedaemonii⁸ tamen sērō pervēnerunt. In collibus Miltiades⁹ Athēniensēs sociōsque ad decem millia instruxit.

In campō cōpiae Persārum¹⁰ instructae sunt. Athēniensēs impetum Persārum nōn exspectāverunt sed cum omnibus copiis in hostēs impetum ferōcem fēcērunt et in fugam dedērunt.

¹ Darius, King of Persia. ² Earth and water were signs of submission. ³ Datis and Artaphernes. ⁴ Eretria, a city in Euboea which was opposite Attica, the district of which Athens was the capital. ⁵ The Plain of Marathon was in Attica opposite Euboea. ⁶ Phidippides. ⁷ Greek Acc. of Lacedaemon, onis, Sparta. ⁸ The Spartans. ⁹ Miltiades. ¹⁰ Persae, ārum, Persians.

Vocabulary

postquam

(conjunction)

biduum, i

incitātus, a, um

cursor, ōris

after

two days

spurred on

runner

nōmine

sērō

ad

instruō, 3,-struxi,

-structum

by name

late, too late

to the number of

draw up



THE GLADIATOR

LESSON L

DEPONENT VERBS

1. There are verbs in Latin that have no active conjugation.

They are Passive in form but Active in meaning.

They have laid aside (*dēpōnō*, lay aside) their active conjugation and so are called Deponent Verbs.

Deponents occur in all four conjugations. They are conjugated like the passive of the regular verbs, *amō*, *moneō*, *regō*, *audiō*. There are also deponents of the third conjugation like *capiō*.

The student, therefore, should already know the conjugation of deponent verbs as soon as the principal parts are known. These will of course be of passive form.

2. Principal Parts

CONJUGATION	PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. PART.	
FIRST	<i>miror</i>	<i>mirārī</i>	<i>mirātus</i>	admire
SECOND	<i>vereor</i>	<i>verērī</i>	<i>veritus</i>	fear
THIRD	<i>sequor</i>	<i>sequī</i>	<i>secūtus</i>	follow
	<i>patior</i>	<i>patī</i>	<i>passus</i>	suffer, allow
FOURTH	<i>blandior</i>	<i>blandīrī</i>	<i>blandītus</i>	flatter

3. Note the present infinitive endings. These determine the conjugation.

First, *-ārī*; Second, *-ērī*; Third, *-ī*; Fourth, *-īrī*.

4. Indicativ

<i>miror</i>	<i>vereor</i>	<i>sequor</i>	<i>blandior</i>
<i>mirābar</i>	<i>verēbar</i>	<i>sequēbar</i>	<i>blandiēbar</i>
<i>mirābor</i>	<i>verēbor</i>	<i>sequar</i>	<i>blandiar</i>
<i>mirātus sum</i>	<i>veritus sum</i>	<i>secūtus sum</i>	<i>blandītus sum</i>
<i>mirātus eram</i>	<i>veritus eram</i>	<i>secūtus eram</i>	<i>blandītus eram</i>
<i>mirātus erō</i>	<i>veritus erō</i>	<i>secūtus erō</i>	<i>blandītus erō</i>

5

Imperative

PRESENT

mirāre
mirāmini

verēre
verēmini

sequere
sequimini

blandīre
blandimini

FUTURE

mirātor
mirātor
mirantor

verētor
verētor
verentor

sequitor
sequitor
sequuntor

blanditor
blanditor
blandiuntor

6.

Vocabulary

First Conjugation (all are regular)

hortor exhort, urge
arbitror think
cōnor try, attempt
cunctor waver, hesitate

dēpopulor devastate
conspicor observe
suspikor suspect

Second Conjugation

polliceor

pollicēri

pollicitus

promise

Third Conjugation

proficiscor
loquor
colloquor
nanciscor
queror

proficisci
loquī
nancisci
querī

profectus
locūtus
nactus
questus

set out
speak
converse
obtain
complain

Fourth Conjugation

experior
mentior
ordior
orior

experiri
mentiri
ordiri
oriri

expertus
mentitus
orsus
ortus

try, attempt.
lie, speak falsely
begin
rise

Orior admits forms of the third. orēris, oritur, orimur.

adorior

adoriri

adortus

attack, assail

EXERCISE

A

1. Conjugate in the present and future indicative each verb of the third and fourth conjugations.
2. The Perfect Participle of a transitive deponent verb has an active meaning.

Having admired	having followed	having promised
Having exhorted	having tried	having observed
3. Verēris, verēberis ; sequēris, sequēris ; blandiris, blandiēris.
4. Proficiscitur, proficiscētur ; pollicēbantur, polliciti sunt.
5. Pollicitus. Pater filiō rēs multās pollicitus est.
6. Secūtus. Nostri hostēs decem millia passuum ad flūmen secūti erant.
7. Dux primā lūce Rōmam profectus est. Paucis diēbus Rōmā proficiscēmur.
8. Magister puerōs parvōs magnis praemiis hortātus est.
9. Ante occāsum sō¹ ad urbem proficiscar. Ab urbe ante meridiem proficiscēre.
10. Nostri cunctābantur. Socii agrōs hostium dēpopulābuntur.
11. Senex cum amicis collocūtus erat. Tempestātem¹ idōneam nactus est.
12. Dē rēbus multis mentitus est. Num dē suā aetāte mentiēbātur ?
13. Hostēs in summō colle conspicātus est. Clāmor magnus ortus est.
14. Equitēs nostrī copiās hostium trēs diēs per silvās secūti erant.

B

1. Thou art following. Follow your leader. You will follow your father.
2. Set out at daybreak. You will set out on the following day.
3. Far and wide they will devastate the territory of the enemy.
4. He obtained thirty ships and set out for (=to) Britain on the tenth day after.
5. Long and earnestly the leader conversed with his companions.
6. At sunset he observed the infantry on the right bank of the river.
7. They will not set out for Athens at the beginning of winter.
8. They had set out for Tarentum but at the fourth hour were captured.

¹tempestās, ātis, weather.

LESSON LI

DEPONENT VERBS (CONTINUED)

1. Review the Passive of **capiō** (Lesson XLVII).

2. The following deponents are conjugated like the passive of **capiō** :—

patior	pati	passus	suffer, allow
morior	mori	mortuus	die
prō gredior	prō gredi	prō gressus	go forward, advance
ag gredior	ag gredi	ag gressus	go at (ad), attack
ē gredior			go out of, issue, leave
in gredior			go into, enter
rē gredior			go back, retreat
trans gredior			go across, cross
con gredior			go together, meet, engage

3.

Indicative

PRESENT	patior	patēris	patitur	patimur	patimini	patiuntur
IMPF.	patiēbar					
FUTURE	patiar	patiēris	patiētur	patiēmur	patiēmini	patientur
PERFECT	passus sum					
PLUPF.	passus eram					
FUT. PF.	passus erō					

4.

Imperative

PRESENT	patēre		patimini
FUTURE	patitor	patitor	patiuntor

5.

Semi-Deponents

audeō	-ēre	ausus sum	dare, venture
gaudeō	-ēre	gavisus sum	rejoice
soleō	-ēre	solitus sum	am wont, accustomed
fīdō	-ēre	fīsus sum	trust, rely upon

also, **confido**, trust ; **diffido**, distrust.

These verbs are semi-deponent, *i.e.*, half-deponent.

They are deponent in the perfect tenses only.

Thus :—**audeō**, **audēbam**, **audēbō**, **ausus sum**, **ausus eram**, **ausus erō**.

6. *rē vertor rē verti* Perf. *re verti* Sup. *re versum* turn back
is semi-deponent in that the Perfect Tenses are of active form.

Thus : *revertor, revertēbar, revertar, reverti, reverteram, reverterō.*

7. Examine :—

Plurimis rēbus ūtimur et fruimur. We use and enjoy many things.

Magnā praedā potitus est. He obtained much booty.

Lacte et carne vescēbantur. They lived on milk and flesh.

Omnibus officiis bene fungitur. He performs all his duties well.

8. Rule :—

The deponent verbs *ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the *Ablative*.

<i>ūtor</i>	<i>ūti</i>	<i>ūsus</i>	use
<i>fruor</i>	<i>frui</i>		enjoy
<i>fungor</i>	<i>fungi</i> ¹	<i>functus</i>	perform, discharge
<i>potior</i>	<i>potiri</i>	<i>potitus</i>	gain possession of
<i>vescor</i>	<i>vesci</i>		feed upon

9. The principal parts of *nascor* are :—

<i>nascor</i>	<i>nasci</i>	<i>nātus</i>	am born
---------------	--------------	--------------	---------

NOTE.—*puer decem annōs nātus* { = a boy born ten years
= a boy ten years old
decem annōs nātus = at the age of ten.

EXERCISE

A

1. *Patēris, patiēris; patitur, patiētur; patimur, patiēmur.*
2. *Caesar hostēs in provinciam venire nōn patiētur.*
3. *Equitātus hostium jam¹ decem millia passuum prōgressus erat.*
4. *Hostēs jam magnā cum multitudīne jūmentōrum flūmen transgrediēbantur.*
5. *Barbari cum omnibus cōpiis nostrōs aggressi sunt.*
6. *Britanni antiqui lacte et carne vescēbantur.*
7. *Rōmae nātus est sed mortuus est Athēnis.*
8. *Rēs adversās semper aequō animō² passus est.*
9. *Annōs nātus viginti domō cum comite ūnō prōfectus est.*
10. *Nostrī castris impedimentisque hostium nocte potiuntur.*
11. *Nōne ducibus itineris ūsus es? Multis ducibus ūsi sumus.*

¹jam, now, already.

²aequus animus, even mind resignation.

B

1. Shall we allow the enemy to gain possession of our city?
2. The diligent boys will not use their opportunity badly.
3. We shall have gained possession of the enemy's camp before daybreak.
4. The man was born in Gaul but died in Carthage.
5. The consul's son always performed his work well.
6. Ten days ago our infantry got possession of the baggage.
7. Our allies followed the enemy and attacked the camp vigorously.
8. We shall follow our leader to the top of the hill.

LESSON LII

PRONOUNS

I.

Personal

Ego, I			Tū, thou, you (sing.)					
SINGULAR			SINGULAR					
			PLURAL					
NOM.	ego	I	nōs	we	tū	thou	vōs	you
GEN.	mei	of me	{nostrum	of us	tui	of thee	{vestrum	of you
			{nostrī				{vestrī	
DAT.	mihi		nōbis		tibi		vōbis	
ACC.	mē		nōs		tē		vōs	
VOC.		wanting			tū		vōs	
ABL.	mē		nōbis		tē		vōbis	

Nostrum and vestrum are used as '*Partitive Genitives*' (See page 107). Otherwise nostrī and vestrī are used.

2. The pronouns of the first and second persons are rarely used except for emphasis or contrast.

Ego laudō sed tū culpās I praise but you blame.

It is I who praise but you who blame.

3. The personal pronouns of the third person are wanting but their place is supplied by the demonstratives, particularly *is*, *ea*, *id* = *he*, *she*, *it*.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	is	ea	id	ei(ii)	eae	ea
GEN.	ejus	ejus	ejus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	ei	ei	ei	eīs(iīs)	eīs(iīs)	eīs(iīs)
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs(iīs)	eīs(iīs)	eīs(iīs)

Is is the pronoun of mere reference, *i.e.*, it simply refers to some person or thing mentioned before.

Cicerō orātor fuit : is multās orātiōnēs scripsit.

Cicero was an orator : he wrote many speeches.

It agrees in gender and number with the noun to which it refers.

Hostēs nāvēs misērunt. Eās The enemy sent ships. We
accēpimus. received *them*.

Hostēs dōna misērunt. Ea ac- The enemy sent gifts. We
cēpimus. received *them*.

Reflexive

4. A reflexive pronoun is one that refers to the subject of the sentence in which it stands. It has no nominative.

The oblique cases of **ego** and **tū** are used as reflexives of the first and second person.

Ego mē laudō or **Mē laudō.** I praise myself.

Tū tē laudās or **Tē laudās.** You praise yourself.

5. The reflexive of the third person is

suī, of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
GEN.	suī of himself, etc.	suī of themselves
DAT.	sibi	sibi
ACC.	sē	sē
ABL.	sē	sē

The forms of **suī** (as also **suus**, the reflexive possessive adjective), refer to the subject of the verb.

6. The preposition **cum** is always written as a suffix with the ablative of the personal and reflexive pronouns, as :—

mēcum	tēcum	sēcum	nōbiscum	vōbiscum
with me	with you	with himself	with us	with you

7. Examine:—

Ego et tū domī mansimus.
 Ego et Caesar Rōmae erāmus.
 Tū et pater tuus ambulātis.

You and I remained at home.
 Caesar and I were at Rome.
 Your father and you are walking.

8. Rule:—

Ego, first person, precedes tū, second person or Caesar, third.
 Tu, second person, precedes a noun or pronoun of the third person.
 With two subjects in the singular, the verb is in the plural.
 The verb agrees in person with the pronoun first used.

EXERCISE

A

1. Librum ejus habēs. Librum suum habet.
2. Librōs eōrum habēs. Librōs suōs habent.
3. Librum ei dedī. Mihi librōs duōs dedit.
4. Eum interfēcit. Sē interfēcit. Eōs interfēcit. Sē interfēcērunt.
5. Cum eō profectus est. Puerum sēcum duxit.
6. Tibi, non tuō frātrī librum dabō.
7. Ego et tū Athēnīs nāti sumus.
8. Litterās ad tē herī misī. Nōne eās accēpisti?
9. Hostēs Caesarī obsidem dedērunt. Eōs sēcum duxit.
10. Exercitum suum in finēs eōrum duxit. Equitēs eōrum fūdīt.

B

1. He saw his mother yesterday in the city. I shall see his brother.
2. The guards killed him, her, them. They killed themselves.
3. Last year I saw both your brother and sister in the country.
4. On that day you were in the country, I had set out on the previous day for Athens.
5. You and I will stay at home. They will take him with them.
6. The boy walked two miles with me. The boys stayed with you at Rome.
7. Ten men came with us to Rome. Did you see them?
8. The man praises himself. The men praise themselves.
9. The girl blames herself. We were praising her.
10. You will sail with them to Greece; we will stay in Italy.

LESSON LIII

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

1. There are in Latin four Demonstrative Pronouns :—

hic	haec	hoc	this (near me), Pl., these
iste	ista	istud	that (near you), that of yours, Pl., those of yours
ille	illa	illud	that (near him), that (yonder), Pl. those
is	ea	id	

2. Hic, haec, hōc this

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	hic	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	hūjus	hūjus	hūjus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	his	his	his

3. Ille illa illud that

NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
GEN.	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

4. Iste, ista, istud is declined like ille, illa, illud.

5. Hic, ille, iste and is are used alone as pronouns or with a noun as demonstrative adjectives.

They agree in gender, number and case, like adjectives, with the noun expressed or understood.

6. Special Meanings

(a) hic, my friend here.

iste, your friend there.

(b) iste often implies contempt : that fellow, that miserable fellow.

ille is a term of compliment and emphasis : ille Caesar, the well-known, the famous Caesar.

(c) *hic*, the nearer, the latter: *ille*, the more remote, the former.
pāx, bellum; *hōc*, *illa*, peace, war; the latter, the former.

et hic et ille, both the one and the other.

hī... illī = alīi... alīi = some... others.

EXERCISE

A

1. *Hī puerī, hūjus puerī; iste amicus. istius amicī; illius puellae.*
2. *Ad hanc urbem, in hāc urbe; huic principī, cum his principibus.*
3. *Dē hāc rē, dē his rēbus, ob hanc rem, dē istis rēbus; ab istō.*
4. *Illī librī, illius librī; id regnum, in illā urbe.*
5. In this place, in these places; in that town, in those towns.
6. By this leader, by these soldiers; into that island, in those islands.
7. Across this river; through those cities; out of these ships.
8. In that year, on this day; after this battle; of that army.

B

1. *Hic homō est amicus tuus.*
2. *Nōne iste liber pulchrior est quam meus?*
3. *Illa tempora a tē semper laudantur.*
4. *Ob hanc rem Caesar illōs lēgātōs Rōmam misit.*
5. *Neque hic neque ille Rōmae eō diē erat.*
6. *Dē istis rēbus ad tē epistolam mittam.*
7. *Hōrum rēgum, ille bellō, hic pāce clārior erat.*

C

1. This man wrote me a letter about your brother.
2. Did you see that man in the city? No.
3. That well-known general was the most distinguished among the Romans.
4. To this camp they hastened with all their forces.
5. In that year two armies were led by the Romans into this province.
6. The one is a poet, the other is an orator.

READING LESSON

First Expedition of Caesar to Britain (B.C. 55)

Ante tempus Caesaris insula Britannia Rōmānis erat incognita. Mercātōrēs sōli ad regiōnēs maritimās ventitābant. Itaque Caesar mercātōrēs ad castra sua convocāvit et interrogāvit: "quanta est magnitudo insulae? quantaē nātiōnēs habitant?" Nihil tamen certī¹ respondērunt mercātōrēs. Deinde Caesar Caium Volusēnum, lēgātum fortem; cum nāvi longā ad Britanniam nāvigāre et omnia explōrāre iussit. Paulō post Caesari renuntiāvit. Caesar milites et nāvēs comparāvit et ex ōrā Galliae nāvigāvit. Paulō post mediam noctem vēla ventis dedit² et ad Britanniam quartā hōrā diēi appropinquāvit ubi cōpiae armatae hostium in collibus omnibus sunt visae. Hostēs qui in litore stābant, Rōmānōs prohibēbant³. Caesar tamen mox in fugam hostēs dedit.

Vocabulary

incognitus, a, um	unknown	explōrō, -āre	explore
maritimus, a, um	maritime	paulō post	shortly after
ventitō, -āre	go often	vēlum, ī (N.)	sail
interrogō, -āre	ask, inquire	ventus, ī (M.)	wind
Cāius, ī	Caius	appropinquō, -āre	approach
Volusēnus, ī	Volusenus	armātus, a, um	armed, in arms
omnia (neut. pl.)	all things	mox	soon

¹ nihil certī, nothing of a certainty (Part. Gen.) = nothing certain.

² gave sails to the winds = set sail.

³ The Impf. sometimes denotes *attempted action*, "tried to keep back."

LESSON LIV

INTENSIVE OR EMPHATIC PRONOUNS

1. *Idem eadem Idem* (is + dem) the same
Ipse ipsa ipsum self (himself, herself, itself;
 Pl. themselves).

2. *Idem eadem Idem* same

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	<i>idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eidem</i> <i>iidem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
GEN.	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
DAT.	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eidem</i>	<i>eisdem</i> <i>iisdem</i>	<i>eisdem</i> <i>iisdem</i>	<i>eisdem</i> <i>iisdem</i>
ACC.	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
ABL.	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eisdem</i> <i>iisdem</i>	<i>eisdem</i> <i>iisdem</i>	<i>eisdem</i> <i>iisdem</i>

3. *Ipse ipsa ipsum* self

NOM.	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
GEN.	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsius</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>
ACC.	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
ABL.	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>	<i>ipsis</i>

4. These pronouns, like adjectives, agree with the noun expressed or understood in gender, number and case.

Special Meanings

5. *Cicerō orātor fuit idemque philosophus* Cicero was an orator and also a philosopher

idem sometimes has the force of *and also*, *and at the same time*.

6. **Ipse** may be added to another word for emphasis and is then translated into idiomatic English.

Caesar ipse imperāvit.	Caesar in person commanded.
Sē ipsum interfēcit.	He slew himself.
Ipse hōc fēcisti.	You did this by yourself.
Adventū (suō) ipsō	By (his) mere arrival
Trigintā ipsi diēs	Exactly thirty days
Ipse hōc vidī.	I saw this with my own eyes.
Mea ipsius nāvis	My own ship
Tuae ipsius nāvēs	Your own ships
Nostrae ipsōrum nāvēs	Our own ships

EXERCISE

A

1. Eōdem diē, eā ipsā nocte, in eōdem locō, eōdem annō.
2. Ab eisdem hominibus, in his eisdem oppidīs, ex hāc ipsā urbe.
3. Eadem dōna, eadem mulierēs, in eundem portum, per eādem regiōnēs.
4. A suō ipsius frātre, ab eisdem ducibus, contrā eadem oppida.
5. Hīc idem princeps multa bella in Italiā gessit.
6. Nōs ipsi hunc virum hodiē vidimus.
7. Homō servum ad sē vocāvit et ējus opus laudāvit.
8. Adventū suō ipsō hostēs terruit.
9. Adventū ējus ipsō hostēs territi sunt.
10. Ipse abhinc quattuor diēs puerum vidisti.
11. Homō ipse paucis diēbus ad nōs veniet.

B

1. On that very day we came home.
2. Caesar will lead the army in person.
3. This very town was taken by the general.
4. Did not the general himself lead the army into battle.
5. Were the soldiers of this legion on that day at Athens?
6. Exactly ten days ago he set out by the same route into the territory of the enemy.
7. He sent the same man from Athens to Italy.

LESSON LV

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

I. Qui quae quod who, which, what, that

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	qui	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

2. Examine:—

Puer, qui est bonus, laudatur.
 Puer, cūjus librum habeo, est bonus.

Puer, cui librum dedi, est bonus.

Puer, quem laudavisti, est bonus.

Ego, qui te laudavi, sum rex.

The boy, who is good, is praised.
 The boy, whose book I have, is good.

The boy, to whom I gave the book, is good.

The boy, whom you praised, is good.

I, who praised you, am king.

3. Rule:—

The Relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number and person, but its case is determined by the construction of its own clause.

4. Examine:—

Puer, quem laudavisti, est bonus. The boy you praised is good.

The Relative in the objective is often omitted in English, but is not omitted in Latin.

5. Examine:—

Puer, quocum vēnisti . .

The boy with whom you came . . .

Pueri, quibuscum vēnisti . .

The boys with whom you came . . .

Cum, with, is written as a suffix to the relative.

6. Examine:—

Eundem vidi quem tū.

I saw the same man as you.

Tālis est quālis semper fuit.

He is of the same character as he
always was.

Ubi puer vixit, ibi pater.

Where the boy lived, there (lived)
the father.

7.

Correlatives

Many demonstrative pronouns, adjectives and adverbs, have corresponding relative pronouns, adjectives and adverbs in a subordinate clause. These pairs are called *Correlatives*. The chief are:—

idem...qui	the same...as
tālis...quālis	of the same character...as
tot...quot	as many...as
tantus...quantus	as large...as
ibi...ubi	there...where
inde...unde	thence...whence
eō...quō	thither...whither

EXERCISE

A

1. Puella, quae domum vēnit, est mea soror.
2. Haec dōna, quae ad mē misisti, sunt mihi grātissima.
3. Urbs, quam vidēs, est Rōma. Urbem, quae in colle erat, cēpit.
4. Militēs, quōrum virtus magna fuit, contrā hostēs ā duce missi sunt.
5. Cum militibus, quōs sēcum habuit, vēnit.
6. Militēs, ā quibus urbs expugnāta est, fortēs fuērunt.
7. Trēs legiōnēs, quae Tarenti hiemābant, ex hibernis ēdūcit.
8. Rōmulus, ā quō urbs Rōma est condita, annōs septem et trigintā regnāvit.
9. Quō annō nātus est Cicerō, eōdem Marius.
10. Ego et tū tālēs sumus, quālēs semper fuimus.
11. Tot erant militēs quot maris fluctūs.
12. Dux legiōnēs, quārum virtūte urbs servāta erat, laudāvit.

B

1. That house which you saw is mine. I saw the house which you built.
2. At daybreak, he led out of camp two legions which he sent at once against the enemy.
3. He led into camp the troops which he had assembled there.
4. The troops which had assembled there, were sent against the enemy.
5. To Caesar they sent ambassadors of whom the chief was Divico.
6. I will give you the book you sent me yesterday.
7. The boy you praised is the best of all.
8. The soldier by whom the general was wounded will be led to Rome.
9. The barbarians whose fields were laid waste fled into the woods.
10. The tribes to whom ambassadors were sent gave hostages.

READING LESSON

The Geography of Gaul

Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs; quarum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hi omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgis Mātrona et Sēquana dividit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proximique sunt Germānis, quī trans Rhēnum incolunt quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceani, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet.

Vocabulary

dīvīsus, a, um	divided	Belgae, ārum	Belgae,
incolō 3 -colui	inhabit		Belgians
institūtum, i	habit, custom	Aquitāni, ōrum	Aquitani
differō (irregular)	differ	Celtae, ērum	Celts
inter sē	from one another	Garumna, ae	Garonne
dividō 3 -visi	separate	Mātrona, ae	Marne
-visum		Aquitānia, ae	Aquitania
continenter	continuously	Sēquana, ae	Seine
ad	at, next to	Pȳrēnaei, ōrum	Pyrenees
pertineō 2 -tinui	extend		

LESSON LVI

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

I. Quis quae quid who? which? what?

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūjus	cūjus	cūjus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

2. The Interrogative Adjective is

quī quae quod which? what? what kind of?

It is declined like the relative quī, quae, quod.

Strictly speaking, the feminine forms are used only as adjectives.

3. Examine:—

Quis hōc fēcit? Who did this?
 Quī puer hōc fēcit? What boy did this?
 Quid dedit? What did he give?
 Quod dōnum dedit? What gift did he give?

The interrogative pronoun is used without a noun.

The interrogative adjective is used in agreement with a noun.

4. The masculine form quis is sometimes used as an adjective, but it will be well in doing the exercise to observe the distinction made above.

EXERCISE

A

1. Quis hōc dixit? Quae puella hōc dixit? Quid hīc puer dixit?
2. Quem laudāvisti? Quem puerum laudās? Hīc est puer quem laudō.
3. Quis est ille? Quī vir est ille? Ille est vir quem rūri vidī.
4. Cūjus liber est hīc? Cui librum dedisti? Quem librum habēs?
5. A quō est urbs condita? Quā dē causā virum interfēcērunt?
6. Quās urbēs eō annō cēpit Caesar? Quod consilium barbari fēcērunt?

B

1. Who gave this to the soldier? Who was at home on that day?
2. By whom were the Romans conquered in battle?
3. What did you do on the previous night? What plan did you form?
4. Whose children are these? Are they the sons of the consul?
5. To whom did you give the sword? By whom was it given to you?
6. With whom did he set out to the country? With your brother?
7. What mother does not love her children? Whom did they choose (as) general?

LESSON LVII

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

1. The Indefinite Pronouns are chiefly

quis, (qua), quid and quī, qua or quae, quod,
any one, some one, and their compounds.

2. In the compounds the pronominal part alone is declined.

3. In the neuter, forms in **quid** are used as *pronouns*, forms in **quod** are used as *adjectives*.

4. **aliquis, aliqua, aliquid or aliquod**

quisquam, quidquam

quidam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam

some one, some

any one

a certain one, a certain

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque

each

quivis, quaevis, quidvis or quodvis

any you wish

quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet or quodlibet

any you please

Quidam has **quendam, quandam** in Acc. Sing. and **quōrundam**, **quārundam** in Gen. Pl.

Quis is used after **sī, nisi, nē, num, quō** and **quantō**.

The corresponding adjective to **quisquam** is **ūllus, ūlla, ūllum**.

Quisquam and **ūllus** are used chiefly in negative sentences or in sentences implying a negative.

Quisquam is slightly stronger and more emphatic than **quis**.

EXERCISE

1. Num quisquam haec dīxit? Num quemquam vidistī?
2. Num quidquam audīvistī? Num quidquam morte tristius est?
3. Ōrātōrem quendam in forō vidimus.
4. Suōs amicōs quisque amat. Sui cuique amicī cārī sunt.
5. Domum suam quisque profectus est. Num quid dē hāc rē audīvistī?
6. Hunc puerum aliquis laudāvit. Homō quīdam mihi hōc dīxit.



JUPITER

READING LESSON

Dei Romanorum

Rōmānī deōs multōs deāsque colēbant, sed hī in mākīmō honōre habēbantur.

Jūpiter, filius Saturnī, rēx deōrum et hominum in caelō regnābat.

Frātrēs Jovis appellātī sunt Neptūnus et Plūtō; hic regnum mortuōrum, ille imperium maris tenēbat.

Uxor Jovis et rēginā caelī erat Jūno.

Mars, filius Jovis et Jūnōnis, erat deus bellī.

Mercurius erat deōrum nuntius et artium inventor et dux viārum.

Apollō erat deus ēloquentiae mūsicaeque et morbōs dēpellēbat

Minerva, filia Jovis, erat dea sapientiae.

Ceres hominēs artem agricultūrae docēbat.

Vesta, focī dea, inter Rōmānōs maximē colēbātur.

Dea silvārum et vēnātiōnis erat Diāna.

Venus erat dea pulchritūdinis et amōris.

Vulcānus erat deus ignis et fabrōrum.

Vocabulary

colō 3 colui	worship	dēpellō 3 -puli	drive away
cultum		-pulsum	
caelum, i	heaven, sky	agricultūra, ae	agriculture
imperium, i	command, empire	focus, i	hearth
inventor, ōris	inventor	vēnātiō, ōnis	hunting
ēloquentia, ae	eloquence	pulchritūdō, inis	beauty
mūsica, ae	music	amor, ōris	love
morbū, i	disease		

LESSON LVIII

PARTICIPLES

1. A Participle is a *Verbal-Adjective*.

As a *verb*, it has voice and tense, may be modified by an adverb, and may govern an object in the same case as the verb of which it is a part.

As an *adjective*, it is declined and agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun which it modifies.

2. Participles Active Voice

	PRESENT		FUTURE
1st Conj.	amans (while) loving	amāt ūrus	about to love
2nd Conj.	monens (while) advising	monit ūrus	about to advise
3rd Conj.	(regens (while) ruling	rect ūrus	about to rule
	(capiens (while) taking	capt ūrus	about to take
4th Conj.	audiens (while) hearing	audit ūrus	about to hear

3. Formation and Declension

The Present Participle Active is formed in each conjugation according to the above types, and is declined like **amans** and **prūdens** (Lesson XXXIV).

The Future Participle Active is formed by adding **-ūrus** to the Supine stem, and is declined like **bonus, a, um**, as **amātūrus, a, um**.

4. Force and Meaning

The Present Participle Active denotes time contemporaneous with that of the main verb in the sentence.

Eum venientem videō.	I see him coming.
Eum venientem vidi.	I saw him coming.
Eum venientem vidēbō.	I shall see him coming.

5. It is rarely translated by the bare English participial form.

Ambulans eum vidi.	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">As I was walking</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">While walking</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">While I was walking</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">During my walk</div> </div> </div>	I saw him.
---------------------------	---	------------

6. The Future Participle Active denotes both *futurity* and *intention*.

pugnātūrus	{ about to, going to, intending to, { likely to fight
Pugnātūrī sumus.	{ We are going to fight. { We intend to fight.
Pugnātūrī erāmus.	{ We were going to fight. { We intended to fight.

7.

EXERCISE

1. Write out the principal parts of the following verbs:
laudō, aedificō, dō, vidēō, moveō, dēleō, mittō, gerō, accipiō, fugiō, mūniō, veniō.
2. Form present and future participles active of each of these verbs.

8.

Two Rules for Participles

- (1) The participle must agree with the noun or pronoun which it modifies.
- (2) Always put the participle at the end of its phrase.

EXERCISE

A

1. Dux fortiter pugnans interfectus est. Fortiter pignantēs interfectī sunt.
2. Clāmōrēs militum pignantium in urbe audītī sunt.
3. Hostēs ex castris venientēs vidimus.
4. Mihi dē frātre suō rogantī nihil respondit.
5. A Caesare in provinciam discēdente pācem petivērunt.
6. Hostēs ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla conjiciēbant.
7. Pater filium domō discēdentem monuit.
8. Imperātor hostēs sua castra mūnientēs aggressus est.
9. Multitudinem Gallōrum ad castra venientium interfēcimus.
10. Nōbis dē proeliō rogantibus nihil respondistis.
11. Primō vērē bellum gestūrī sumus. Pācem factūrī erātis.
12. Rōmam paucis diēbus ventūrus sum. Diē posterō iter factūrī erāmus.
13. Dux militēs in castra est reductūrus. In castris erant mansūrī.
14. Barbarī pugnātūrī clāmōrem faciunt.
15. Puella epistolam ad mātrem est missūra.

B

1. I heard you shouting. He will hear us shouting.
2. Many enemies were seen devastating our lands.
3. Caesar intends to lead back his forces at daybreak.
4. Did you not see the farmer coming to town?
5. We intend to carry on war with the Gauls this summer.
6. We shall see him departing for Greece.
7. The soldiers intend to make an attack on the flying enemy.
8. Are you going to send a letter to day?
9. On his departure from the camp Caesar assembles the officers.
10. When you asked about the journey we did not reply.
11. We heard the words of the leader as he was praising the soldiers.
12. Our men found many thousands of the enemy devastating the fields of the allies.
13. The soldiers intend to fortify the camp with a rampart and trench.

LESSON LIX

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE

1. As has been stated in previous lessons, the Perfect Participle Passive is formed by adding **-us** to the supine stem, and is declined like **bonus, a, um** (page 33).

2. The Perfect Participle Passive denotes time antecedent to that of the main verb in the sentence.

Hostēs	repulsi	in silvās fūgērunt.
The enemy	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">repulsed</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">being repulsed</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">having been repulsed</div> </div>	fled into the woods.

3. The Perf. Part. Pass. is often translated in other ways than by the bare English participial form.

Homō	captus	interficiētur.
The man	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">when caught</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">if caught</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">after being caught</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">now that he is caught</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">since he has been caught</div> </div>	will be put to death.

4. Scheme of Participles

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRESENT	amans	(while) loving	.....	(while) being loved
PERFECT	.....	having loved	amātus	having been loved
FUTURE	amātūrus	about to love	.....	about to be loved

Latin has	no	Perfect Part. Act.	having loved
	no	Present Part. Pass.	(while) being loved
	no	Future Part. Pass.	about to be loved

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT		PERFECT
monens	monit ūrus	monit us
regens	rect ūrus	rect us
capiens	capt ūrus	capt us
fugiens	fugit ūrus	
audiens	audit ūrus	audit us
veniens	vent ūrus	

5. Intransitive verbs have no Perf. Part. Pass. unless used impersonally, as in **pugnatum est**, literally, *it was fought*; *the battle was fought*; **nuntiātum est**, *word was brought*. The subject in such cases is contained in the verb.

6. Note that 'being advised,' 'being heard,' 'being taken,' have the force and meaning of 'having been advised,' 'having been heard,' 'having been taken,' and must be translated accordingly by **monitus**, **auditus**, **captus**.

EXERCISE

A

1. Write out the principal parts of the following verbs:
comparō, **perterreō**, **jubeō**, **cognoscō**, **cōgō**, **fundō**, **petō**, **pellō**,
pōnō, **mūniō**, **vivō**, **interficiō**.
2. Write a scheme of participles of each of these verbs.
3. What is the rule for a participle in regard to agreement and in regard to position?

B

1. **Germani agris expulsi ad Rhenum pervenerunt.**
2. **Tantā multitudīne hostium perterriti, trans flūmen fugerunt.**
3. **His rebus coacti, impedimenta reliquerunt.**
4. **Impedimenta in castris relictā ab hostibus sunt capta.**

5. Frāter consulis, ā senātū condemnātus, in exilium profectus est.
6. Hanc urbem ā Rōmulō conditam ego servāvi.
7. Virōs multōs et fortēs urbe ēductōs ad pontem miserās.
8. Legiōnēs undique circumventae tandem sē dēdere coactae sunt.
9. Bellum ā tē suscēptum ā mē est confectum.
10. Regnō expulsus novis copiis bellum renovāvit.
11. Ab urbe conditā ; post urbem conditam.

C

1. In the city founded by Romulus. In the cities taken by the enemy.
 2. Into the camp pitched on the top of the hill. Of the wounded soldier.
 3. Concerning the books written by you. Behind the captured camp.
 4. The walls of the destroyed city. The arms of the conquered enemy.
 5. With the ambassadors sent by the enemy to the general.
 6. In the camp fortified with a rampart and trench.
 7. To his brother surrounded by the enemy. To the legions surrounded.
 8. The letter sent by you yesterday was received by me to-day.
 9. Terrified by the shouts of the barbarians, our men threw away their arms.
 10. After being severely wounded, the leader fought bravely.
 11. Since they have been conquered, the enemy will seek peace.
 12. If captured, they will be put to death. If condemned, they will flee.
 13. This city, after being besieged for eight months, was at last surrendered.
-

LESSON LX

PARTICIPLES OF DEPONENT VERBS

I. PRESENT	mirans	(while)	verens	sequens	blandiens
		admiring			
FUTURE	mirātūrus	about to	veritūrus	secūtūrus	blanditūrus
		admire			
PERFECT	mirātus	having	veritus	secūtus	blanditus
		admired			

A deponent verb has three participles, the present and future being of the active form.

The perfect participle is found in the third principal part.

The future participle is found by changing **-us** of the perfect participle to **-ūrus**.

The perfect participle of a transitive deponent verb has (with few exceptions) an active meaning.

2.

Vocabulary

nanciscor	nancisci	nactus sum	get, obtain
nascor	nasci	nātus sum	am born
mori	mori	mortuus sum	die

decem annōs nātus, born ten years=at the age of ten

moriens, dying

moritūrus, about to die } on (his) death bed

mortuus, dead

Eōs mortuōs laudāmus. { We praise them (when) dead.
 { After their death we praise them.

EXERCISE

A

1. Give the participles of **hortor**, **cōnor**, **polliceor**, **proficiscor**, **patior**, **prōgredior**, **aggredior**.
2. **Amātus**, **mirātus**; **monitus**, **veritus**; **rectus**, **secūtus**; **auditus**, **blanditus**.
3. **Prōgrediens**, **prōgressus**; **ēgrediens**, **egressus**; **sequens**, **secūtus**.

4. Nostri ad flūmen prōgressi cōpiās hostium in alterā ripā instructās vidērunt.
5. Consulēs, forō ēgressi, milites ad Campum Martium convocāverunt.
6. Barbari, signa Rōmana procul conspicāti, statim fūgerunt.
7. Ex urbe profecti, ad exercitum tertiō diē, pervēnerunt.
8. Hostēs fugientēs decem millia passuum secūti, magnum numerum eōrum interfēcērunt.
9. Tempestātem idōneam nactus, mediā nocte ad Britanniam nāvigāvit.
10. Ex castris proficiscens, lēgātōs cum hostibus posterō diē pugnāre iussit.
11. Dux noster hostēs impedimentis potiri cōnantēs aggressus est.
12. Equitēs, septem millia passuum prōgressi, revertērunt.

B

1. Make the following participles agree with a subject in the Nom. Pl. Masc. :—While attempting, after attempting; when setting out, after setting out; while following, having followed; while attacking, having attacked.
 2. At last, having obtained suitable weather, the lieutenants set sail with all the ships.
 3. Having exhorted the soldiers, they drew up the line.
 4. Having gained possession of the baggage and camp of the enemy, they sent the cavalry to Caesar.
 5. After delaying three days in the territory of the enemy, they set out as quickly as possible for the camp.
 6. At the age of twenty he was made general of the army.
 7. Having crossed the river with all his forces, he pursued the enemy, for two hours.
 8. Caesar attacked the enemy while they were attempting to lead their forces across the river.
-

LESSON LXI

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. Examine:—

Urbe captā, cōpiās redūxit.

The city having been taken, he led back his forces.

Caesare absente, lēgātī nōn pugnāvērunt.

Caesar being absent, the lieutenants did not fight.

In English the Nominative is used as the case absolute; in Latin the Ablative is so used.

In the above sentences 'city' and 'Caesar' are in the Nominative Absolute.

Urbe is in the Ablative and **captā** is the Perf. Part. Pass. agreeing with **urbe**. **Caesare** is in the Ablative and the adjective **absente** agrees with **Caesare**.

2. Absolute (from **ab solvō**, *loosen from*) means *independent*. An absolute phrase is grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence.

3. The ablative absolute is a very common construction in Latin, and as a rule should not be translated literally into English but according to the meaning intended to be conveyed

The ablative absolute is used to designate the time, cause, manner, condition, or circumstances of an action.

4. It may be variously composed as follows —

(a) A pronoun and noun, or, two nouns:—

tē duce	{ you (being) leader
	{ under your leadership
Caesare consule	{ Caesar (being) consul
	{ in the consulship of Caesar

Note that the verb **sum** has no present participle to represent 'being.'

(b) A noun or pronoun, and an adjective:—

imperātōre praesente	in the presence of the general
mē invitō	against my wish

(c) *A noun or pronoun, and a present participle active :—*

Tarquiniō regnante in the reign of Tarquin
mē dicente while I was speaking

(d) *A noun or pronoun, and a perfect participle passive .—*

Caesar, opere confectō, militēs redūxit.	{	having finished the work,	}	Caesar led back his soldiers.
		after, seeing that, now that,		
		since, when the work was finished,		
		after finishing the work, in consequence of the work being finished,		

Latin has no perfect participle active (*having loved*).

Only Deponent verbs have a perfect participle with an active meaning.

You cannot translate '*having taken the city*,' '*having finished the work*,' literally into Latin. These phrases must be expressed by **urbe captā**, *the city having been taken* ; **opere confectō**, *the work having been finished*.

That is, the active participle must be changed to the passive and the ablative absolute used.

Vocabulary

absens, tis	absent	infirmus, a, um	weak
praesens, tis	present	invitus, a, um	unwilling
insciens, tis	not knowing, ignorant	imperō, -āre	command

EXERCISE

A

Translate as Ablative Absolutes.

1. **Mē imperante ; tē absente ; eis absentibus ; consule praesente.**
2. **Consulibus praesentibus ; Caesare insciente ; nāvibus infirmis.**
3. **Hostibus petentibus ; castris mūnitis ; epistolā acceptā.**
4. **Pompeiō et Crassō consulibus ; itinere confectō ; tē duce.**
5. **At Caesar's command ; in my absence ; in the presence of the whole army.**

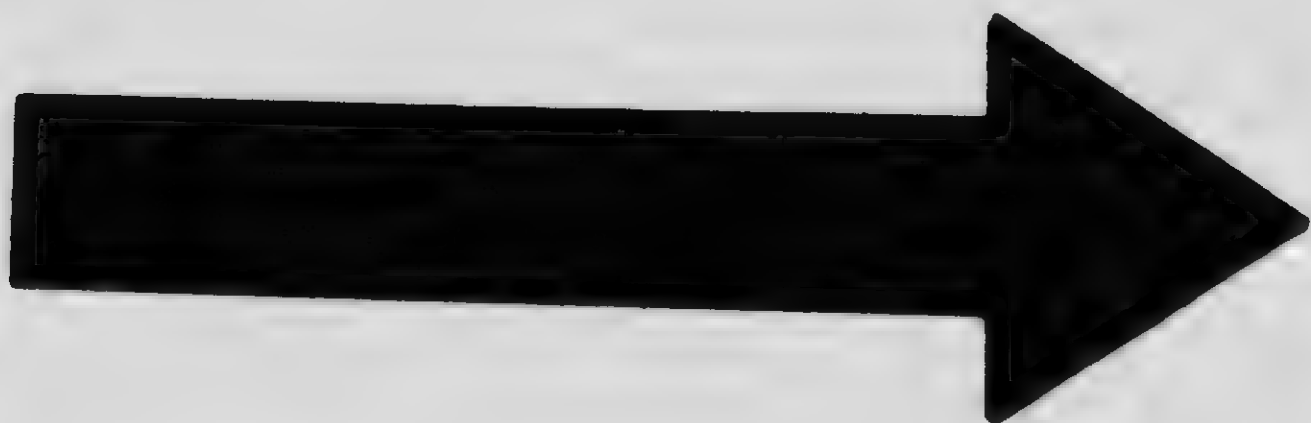
6. Without the knowledge of the general ; under my leadership.
7. Against the wish of his brother ; on the advice of the enemy.
8. At the request of the ambassadors ; after the devastation of the fields.
9. Inasmuch as the cavalry were routed ; having pitched the camp

B

1. Militibus comparātis, bellum est gestum.
2. Epistolā acceptā, ad patrem veniam. Epistolam acceptam patrī meō dabō.
3. Rē nuntiātā, puerum ad tē mittam.
4. Omnibus armis trāditis, in finēs hostium veniēmus.
5. His rēbus constitūtis, pater meus ad exercitum profectus est.
6. His rēbus cognitis, impetum in hostēs fēcimus.
7. Hōc nuntiō auditō, barbari castra in monte posuērunt.
8. Imperātor his rēbus adductus exercitum comparāvit.
9. Castris mūnitis, militēs quiētī sē dedērunt.
10. Opere confectō, domum properāvit. Eō absente opus est confectum.

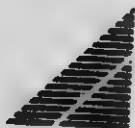
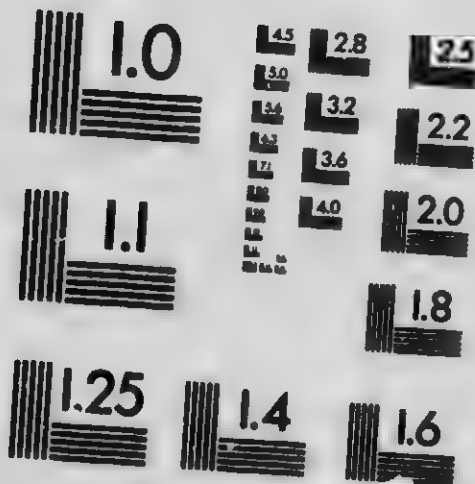
C

1. When they received the message, they moved the camp.
2. Having heard these words, he set out from Rome with five legions.
3. After all Gaul had been subdued, Caesar hastened to Italy.
4. The boy, after the death of his father, was sent to Athens.
5. When Caesar was consul, the Romans carried on many wars.
6. When I had done these things, I hastened home.
7. When we heard the speech of the orator, we all left the market-place.
8. After the capture of the town, we gave up our arms.
9. In consequence of the defeat of the enemy, great praise was given to our general.



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482-0300 - Phone
(716) 288-5889 - Fax

READING LESSON

Caesar defeats the Britons

Caesar, exercitū expositō, locum castris idōneum cēpit. Cohortibus decem ad mare relictis, cum reliquis militibus dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit. Ipse noctū prōgressus millia passuum circiter duodecim, hostium cōpiās conspicātus est. Illi equitātū atque essedis ad flūmen prōgressi ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēbant.¹ Repulsi ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt², locum nacti egregiē et nātūrā³ et opere³ mūnitum quem domestici belli causā⁴ jam ante prae parāverant. Ipsi ex silvis rārī prōpugnābant⁵ nostrōsque intrā mūnitiōnēs ingredi prohibēbant¹. At milites legiōnis septimae locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvis expulērunt. Sed hostēs fugientēs longē Caesar suōs prōsequi⁶ nōn passus est.

¹ Observe the force of the imperfect tense. ² (went) into the woods (and) concealed themselves. ³ Translate idiomatically by adverbs. ⁴ Always placed after the word it governs. ⁵ Observe the force of pro. ⁶

Vocabulary

ex pōnō	land	domesticus, a, um	domestic, civil
noctū (adv.)	in the night	causā	for the sake of
atque	and also	prae parō	prepare beforehand
essedā, ae	chariot	rārū, a, um	thin, far apart
nātūrā, ae	nature	expellō 3 -pulī	
ēgregiē (adv.)	admirably, excellently	-pulsum	drive out
		longē	far

LESSON LXII

REVIEW ON PARTICIPLES SPECIAL POINTS

1. English participial forms must in all cases be translated into Latin according to their real meaning and force.

2. Examine:—

(a) When setting out from camp, he warned the lieutenants.

Ē castris proficiscens lēgātōs monuit.

(b) Setting out at daybreak, he reached camp before midday.

Primā lūce profectus ad castra ante meridiem pervēnit.

(c) Hearing the shout, the enemy fled.

Clāmōre auditō, hostēs fūgerunt.

In (b) and (c) the present participles '*setting out*' and '*hearing*' have the force of perfect participles and mean '*having set out*' and '*having heard*,' and are translated as such.

3. Examine:—

Fearing an ambush, the general led back his forces.

Insidiās veritus, dux cōpiās suās redūxit.

In this sentence '*fearing*' has a causal force and means '*since*' or '*because he feared*.' The perfect participle of a deponent verb will represent the English present participle when used in this sense.

4. Examine:—

(a) Having heard the speech = **ōrātiōne auditā**

(b) Having followed the enemy = **hostēs secūtus**

(c) Having set out = **profectus**

(d) Having fled = **postquam fūgit** = after he fled

You cannot translate the perfect participle of an intransitive verb in English by a participle in Latin unless you have an equivalent deponent.

5. Examine:—

(a) **Consul creātus militēs conscripsit.** Having been elected consul, he enrolled soldiers.

(b) **Consule creātō, militēs conscripti sunt.** A consul having been elected, soldiers were enrolled.

(c) *Urbem captam delēvērunt.*

(d) *Urbe captā, discessērunt.*

They destroyed the city taken.
Having taken the city, they
destroyed it.
They took and destroyed the
city.
Having taken the city, they
departed.

A noun or pronoun cannot be in the ablative absolute if it is the subject or object of another verb. (See examples (a) and (c).)

Notice that the best way to translate such an idiom as (c) is by two co-ordinate verbs.

EXERCISE

A

1. *Consulibus creātis, multī urbe excessērunt.*
2. *Consulēs creātī urbe excessērunt.*
3. *Hostēs repulsī obsidēs statim dedērunt.*
4. *Hostibus repulsis, dux noster cōpiās suās in hiberna reduxit.*
5. *Duce vulnerātō, milītēs perterriti fugērunt.*
6. *Ducem vulnerātum milītēs servāvērunt.*
7. *Cicero, postquam multōs annōs Rōmae vixit, Athēnās profectus est.*
8. *Barbarī centuriōnem circumventum interfēcērunt.*
9. *Postquam ad flūmen pervenērunt, castra in ripā posuērunt.*
10. *Hostibus fortiter pugnantibus, equitēs impedimentis nōn potiti sunt.*

B

1. He called the centurions together and exhorted them.
2. Many having been surrounded on the top of the hill were killed.
3. Attacking the enemy with all their forces, the Romans drove them into the woods and mountains.
4. Abandoning their baggage, the generals hastened across the river.
5. Quickly gathering all their forces, they set out against the barbarians.

6. Hearing a shout behind their camp, the enemy fled into the hills.
7. Advancing six miles in the night, our men assailed the enemy's camp at daybreak.
8. Using the same men (as) guides, they advanced against the right wing of our army.

C

Translate into idiomatic English, rendering the Latin participles by finite verbs and supplying 'and' to connect the clauses, when necessary.

His dimissis et ventum et aestum unō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs constituit.

Vocabulary

<i>dimittō</i>	dismiss	<i>circiter</i> (Adv.)	about
<i>secundus, a, um</i>	favorable	<i>apertus, a, um</i>	open
<i>tollō 3 sustulī</i>		<i>ac</i>	and
<i>sublātum</i>	raise, weigh	<i>plānus, a, um</i>	level
<i>ancora, ae</i>	anchor	<i>constituō</i>	moor

LESSON LXIII

INFINITIVE

I. *Am ō* *am āre* *amāv ī* *amāt um*

ACTIVE

PRESENT	<i>am āre</i>	<i>to love</i>	
PERFECT	<i>amāv isse</i>	<i>to have loved</i>	Perfect Stem + -isse
FUTURE	<i>amāt ūrus esse</i>	<i>to be about to love</i>	Future Participle + esse

PASSIVE.

PRESENT	<i>am āri</i>	<i>to be loved</i>	-āre of Active changed to -āri
PERFECT	<i>amāt us esse</i>	<i>to have been loved</i>	Perfect Participle
FUTURE	<i>amāt um iri</i>	<i>to be about to be loved</i>	Passive + esse Supine + iri

2.	Moneō	mon ěre	monu i	monit um
	Regō	reg ěre	rex i	rect um
	Audiō	aud ire	audiv i	audit um

ACTIVE

PRESENT	mon ěre	reg ěre	aud ire
PERFECT	monu isse	rex isse	audiv isse
FUTURE	monit ūrus esse	rect ūrus esse	audit ūrus esse

PASSIVE

PRESENT	mon ěrī	reg i	aud iri
PERFECT	monit us esse	rect us esse	audit us esse
FUTURE	monit um irī	rect um irī	audit um irī

The *present infinitive active* is learned with the principal parts.

Note well the ending of the present infinitive passive of each conjugation.

First -ārī; Second -ērī; Third -ī; Fourth -irī

3.	Capiō	cap ěre	cĕp i	capt um
	cap ěre	cĕp isse	capt ūrus esse	capī cap tus esse captum iri

4. Intransitive Verbs

Sum	esse	fu i	fut ūrus (See page 46, Footnote)
Fugiō	fug ěre	fūg i	fugit um
Veniō	ven ire	vĕn i	vent um
	esse	fu isse	{ fut ūrus esse fore
	fug ěre	fūg isse	fugit ūrus esse
	ven ire	vĕn isse	vent ūrus esse

Intransitive verbs as a rule have no passive infinitives. When these occur they are used impersonally. (Compare Lesson LIX, 5).

5. Examine :—

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| (1) Ab aliīs laudārī est grātum. | To be praised by others is a pleasant thing. |
| (b) Parentēs amāre est laudābile. | Filial affection is praiseworthy. |
| (c) Fallere est semper turpe. | Deceit is always base. |
| (d) Bellum gerere parat. | He is preparing to carry on war. |
| (e) Omnēs discēdere jubet. | He orders all to depart. |

Observe:—

An infinitive may be used as the subject of a verb. It is then regarded as a neuter noun and a predicate adjective is in the neuter singular, as in (a), (b), (c).

An infinitive may be translated by an abstract noun, as in (b), (c). A *Complementary* infinitive may serve in the predicate of a sentence, as in (d), (e).

EXERCISE**A**

1. Write the principal parts of **dēleō** and **pellō**. Write a list of the infinitives of each of these verbs, and state after each infinitive the rule for its formation.
2. Write the principal parts of the following verbs and a list of the infinitives of each:—
occupō, dō; jubeō, moveō, videō; fundō, gerō, mittō, petō, pōnō; mūniō; maneō; vivō.

B

1. Dēlētūrus, dēlētūrus esse; dēlētus, dēlētus esse; dēlērī, dēlētum iri.
2. Mittens, mitti; misisse, missus esse; missūrus esse, missum iri.
3. Iter per Galliam facere parat. Ex civitāte discēdere parant.
4. Bellum gerere est semper periculōsum.
5. Per agrōs vĕre ambulāre est nōbis grātissimum.
6. Caesar hostēs frūmentum ad sē mittere jussit.
7. Castra mūnire constituerant. Fortiter pugnāre est vincere.
8. Hostēs frūmentum dare coēgit. Nostrōs circumvenire cōnāci sunt.
9. Rōmānōs in finēs suōs ingredi nōn patiuntur.
10. Castra vī expugnāre cōnātī sunt.

C

1. To give, to be given, (while) giving; about to give, to be about to give.
2. To have given, to have been given, having been given; to be about to be given.

3. To be seeking, to be sought ; to be waging, to be waged ; to be coming.
4. The master orders the slave to do this work.
5. Order the slave to come home. To remain in the country is dangerous.
6. The Romans will prepare to carry on war against the Gauls.
7. Hesitation (*dubitāre*) in battle is defeat. Teaching boys is not always pleasant.
8. It is better to give than to receive.
9. Writing letters to friends will always delight us.
10. He did not allow them to depart. They will attempt to take the camp.
11. They will force us to leave our territory.

LESSON LXIV

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE

I. In English we say either

I know that he is a good man, or
I know him to be a good man.

Latin uses only the latter construction :

Sciō eum esse virum bonum.

This construction is called the *Accusative with Infinitive*.

It is used after verbs of *saying, hearing, thinking, believing, knowing*, and the like, and after such expressions as *it is certain, it is manifest, it is true*.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 2. I know that the boy is brave | { = I know the boy to be brave.
Sciō puerum esse fortem. |
| He said that the enemy were coming | { = He said the enemy to be coming.
Dixit hostēs venire. |
| He has heard that the enemy will come | { = He has heard the enemy to be about to come.
Audīvit hostēs ventūrōs esse. |

It is manifest that the enemy have come	{	= It is manifest the enemy to have come.
		Manifestum est hostēs vēnisse.
It is plain that children are loved by their parents	{	= It is plain children to be loved by their parents.
		Manifestum est liberōs ā parentibus amāri.

3. The Tense of the Infinitive

The tense of the infinitive will be the tense used in the indicative, if the speaker's words were actually reported: the perfect infinitive representing all past tenses of the indicative.

ACTUAL WORDS	REPORTED SPEECH	LATIN
The boy is good. Puer est bonus.	{ He says that the boy is good. He said that the boy was good.	Dicit puerum esse bonum. Dixit puerum esse bonum.
The boy was good. Puer erat bonus.	{ He says that the boy was good. He said that the boy was good.	Dicit puerum fuisse bonum. Dixit puerum fuisse bonum.
The boy has come. came. was coming had come.	{ He says that the boy has come. came. was coming. had come.	{ Dicit puerum ventūrum esse. vēnisse.
The boy will come.	{ He says that the boy will come. He said that the boy would come.	Dicit puerum ventūrum esse. Dixit puerum ventūrum esse.

4. Agreement of Participles

Examine:—

Dixit	{ puerum esse amātum. puellam esse amātam. puerōs esse amātōs. puellās esse amātās. dōnum esse amātum. dōna esse amāta.	He said	{ that the boy had been loved. that the girl had been loved. that the boys had been loved. that the girls had been loved. that the gift had been loved. that the gifts had been loved.
-------	--	---------	---

EXERCISE

A

1. Ego omnia prō patriā fēci. Dixit sē omnia prō patriā fēcisse.
2. Urbs ab Rōmānis capta est. Nuntiat urbem ab Rōmānis esse captam.
3. Rōmānī ab Gallis victi sunt. Nuntiāvit Rōmānōs ab Gallis esse victōs.
4. Oppidum ā Caesare nōn est captum. Negāvit¹ oppidum ā Caesare esse captum.
5. Nōs militēs ex oppidō dūcēmus. Dixērunt sē militēs ex oppidō esse ductūrōs.
6. Urbs ā nostris capiētur. Dixit urbem ā suis captum iri.
7. Manifestum erat Gallōs in Italiam esse ventūrōs.
8. Respondit oppida expugnāta esse et hostēs arma trāditūrōs esse.
9. Caesar cognōverat cōpiās hostium augērī et castra mūniri.
10. Dicō tē hōc fēcisse. Dicis mē Rōmae mansisse.
11. Dicit sē mē eō diē vidisse.

B

1. He says that I was at Rome on that day and that you were in the country.
2. They said that the cavalry had been defeated and that the camp had been taken.
3. They replied that they would abandon the baggage.
4. It is manifest that many states will give hostages.
5. He said that his brother had carried on many wars.
6. He thinks that the enemy will assemble new forces and renew the war.
7. The scout brought back word that corn was being collected.
8. It was clear that the enemy would attack the camp.
9. We have heard that the army has been defeated, that the enemy are coming, and that they will soon attack our city.
10. The consul said that the enemy's ships were very many and that the journey would be long.

¹negō,--āre, deny.



THE THREE FATES.

READING LESSON

The Fates

Parcae erant sorōrēs, trēs numerō. Alter scriptor dicit eās fuisse filiās Noctis, alter Necessitātis. Nōmina Parcārum erant Clōthō, Lachesis, Atropos. Hic versus officia eārum expōnit :

Clōtho colum retinet, Lachesis net, et Atropos occat. Parcae rēs deōrum et hominum gubernant. Etiam Jūpiter ipse imperiō Parcārum pāret, neque quisquam eās effugere potest.

Vocabulary

Parca, ae	Fate	neō 2 nēvi nētum	spin
scriptor, ōris	writer	occō -āre	break, cut
versus, ūs	line, verse	gubernō -āre	rule, govern
officium, i	duty	etiam	also, even
expōnō	shew forth, tell	pāreō 2 (governs	obey
colus, i	distaff	Dat.)	
re tineō 2 -tinui	hold	potest	is able
-tentum			

LESSON LXV

ACCUSATIVE WITH INFINITIVE (CONTINUED)

Deponent Infinitives

1. Review Lesson L, 4, Principal Parts ; also Lesson LX, 1.

2. PRESENT	mirārī	to admire
PERFECT	mirātus esse	to have admired
FUTURE	mirātūrus esse	to be about to admire

Note that the *future infinitive* of a *deponent* verb is of the *active form*.

verērī	sequī	blandīrī
veritus esse	secūtus esse	blanditus esse
veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	blanditūrus esse
pati	mori	
passus esse	mortuus esse	
passūrus esse	moritūrus esse	(See Lesson LX, 3)

3. Hope, promise, undertake, swear

Examine:—

He hopes to come to Rome.	}	Spērat sē Rōmam ventūrum esse.
He hopes that he will come to Rome.		
He promises to do this.	}	Prōmittit sē hōc factūrum esse.
He promises that he will do this.		
You undertake to carry on war.		Suscipis tē bellum gestūrum esse.
They swear not to return.	}	Jūrant sē nōn reversūrōs esse.
They swear that they will not return.		

Rule:—The verbs *hope, promise, undertake, rear, take* in Latin the accusative of the pronoun and the future infinitive, where in English they take the present infinitive alone.

4. Pronouns

Review Lesson LII, Exercise A.

5. Vocabulary

spērō, 1, -āvi, -ātum	hope
prōmittō, 3, -misi, -missum	} promise
polliceor, -ēri, pollicitus	
suscipiō, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum	undertake
jūrō, 1, -āvi, -ātum	swear
crēdō, 3, crēdidī, crēditum	believe
putō, 1, -āvi, -ātum	} think
existimō, 1, -āvi, -ātum	
arbitror, -ārī, arbitrātus	
nuntiātum est	{ it was announced word was brought
tē certiōrem faciō		I (make you more certain) inform you
eōs certiōrēs faciō	I inform them
certior factus sum	I was informed
certiōrēs factī sumus	We were informed
certior factus	{ having been informed
certiōrēs factī	

EXERCISE

1. Write the infinitives of each of the following verbs:—

hortor, cōnor; polliceor; proficiscor, ūtor; prōgredior, aggredior; potior; audeō.

A

1. Nuntiātum est hostēs agmen nostrum sequi. Nostri putāvērunt eōs nōn secūtūrōs esse.
2. Crēdebant Caesarem primā lūce esse profectūrum sed Caesar suspicātus erat barbarōs legiōnem aggressūros esse.
3. Dixerunt sē ducibus ad sē missis nōn ūsūrōs esse.
4. Spērant hostēs impedimentis nōn potitūrōs esse.
5. Arbitrāti sunt Caesarem in Italiā esse profectūrum.
6. They thought that our forces had followed the enemy across the river.
7. He believed that Caesar would not set out to Greece at the beginning of winter.
8. Word was brought that the leaders were dead and that the soldiers would not follow the consul's brother.
9. It was manifest that the consul would not attempt to lead his forces across the river.

B

1. Prōmittō mē Rōmam esse ventūrum. Sorōrēs prōmittunt sē esse venturās.
2. Suscēpit sē epistolam esse scriptūrum. Suscēperunt sē esse scriptūrōs.
3. Spērat sorōrem suam esse reversūram. Spērāverant sē urbem esse captūrōs.
4. Sē obsidēs esse datūrōs polliciti, statim domum profecti sunt.
5. Pollicitus sum mē librōs tibi esse datūrum.
6. I hope that you will do this. I hope to see you in the country.
7. He swore that he would conquer the enemies of the state.
8. He undertook to do this work. She undertook to write a letter.
9. Did they not promise to save their native land?
10. Having promised to follow their leader, the soldiers remained in camp.

C

1. Dixit mē librum suum habēre. Dixisti mē librum eius habēre.
2. Dixērunt sē eum nōn secūtūrōs esse. Dixērunt eum esse interfectum.
3. Crēdidērunt custōdem sē interfēcisse. Crēdidērunt eum ab custōdibus interfectum iri.
4. Dixit Caesarem sibi legiōnem dedisse. Dicō tē ei librum dedisse.
5. They said that they would set out at once.
6. They thought that he had set out at daybreak.
7. They said that he had killed himself.
8. He said that the soldier had killed them.
9. He hopes to see you. I hope to see him.
10. We hope to see them. They hope to see us.
11. I informed Caesar. Caesar informed us. He was informed. They were informed.
12. Having been informed about the arrival of Caesar, they at once turned back.

LESSON LXVI

VERBS THAT GOVERN THE DATIVE AND GENITIVE

1. In Latin, only those verbs that govern the accusative are called Transitive.

There are verbs which in English are transitive, but the Latin equivalents govern the genitive, dative, or ablative, and these verbs in Latin are Intransitive.

2. Learn the principal parts of the following verbs: —

(Where the conjugation alone is indicated, the principal parts are regular.)

placeō, 2	please	dis placeō, 2	displease
faveō, 2, fāvī, fautum	favor	obstō, 1, obstiti	oppose
confidō, 3, confisus sum	trust	diffidō, 3, diffisus sum	distrust
subveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum	aid, help	noceō, 2	injure

crēdō, 3, crēdidī, crēditum	believe
persuādeō, 2, -suāsī, -suāsum	persuade
imperō, 1	command
pāreō, 2	obey
serviō, 4	serve
resistō, 3, restitī	resist
parcō, 3, pepercī, parcitum	spare
ignoscō, 3, -nōvī, -uōtum	pardon, forgive
invidēō, 2, -vidī, -visum	envy

3. Examine :—

Rēs omnibus viris placuit.	The matter pleased everybody.
Fortūna fortibus favet.	Fortune favors the brave.
Ego tibi subveniam.	I shall come to your aid.
Puer mihi crēdidit.	The boy believed me.
Pater puerō persuāsit.	The father persuaded the boy.
Rēx lēgibus pāret.	The king obeys the laws.
Dux militi pepercit.	The leader spared the soldier.

4. Rule :—The following verbs govern the Dative :

please, favor, trust, assist and their contraries ; also, believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, spare, pardon, envy, and be angry.

5. Examine :—

Caesari confisus	trusting to Caesar
Tempore confisus	trusting to the time

6. Rule :—Fidō and confidō take the *Dative* of a *Person* ; the *Ablative* of a *Thing*.

7. Verbs that govern the Genitive

The verbs *pity*, (and sometimes) *remember* and *forget* govern the Genitive in Latin.

misereor, -ēri, miseritus	pity
reminiscor, -i	remember
obliviscor, -i, oblitus	forget

EXERCISE

A

1. Puer sibi placet, non aliis. Haec res Caesarī displicēbat.
2. Ōrator nobis persuāsit. Consul civibus nō persuādēbit.
3. Hostēs mulieribus liberisque pepercērunt.
4. Pauperibus nō invident. Milites imperātōrī pārēbunt.
5. Galli exercitui Rōmānō multōs annōs restitērunt.
6. Impetui equitum nō resistunt. Imperator eis nō crēdet.
7. Mihi nō persuādēbunt. Tempestās nāvibus nocēbat.
8. Hostibus ignōvit. Dixit sē eis ignōtūrum esse.
9. Dixērunt sē duci nō pārītūrōs esse.
10. Nuntiāvērunt tempestātem nāvibus nocēre.
11. Miserēmur senis. Injūriarum obliviscor.

B

1. We please many citizens. Did not the soldier obey his commander?
 2. Will he not believe you? They believed the boy.
 3. We shall resist the enemies of the state. They resisted us.
 4. We shall obey our parents in all things.
 5. Caesar will spare the enemy. You spared the conquered.
 6. Pardon me. Spare the enemy. Obey the laws. Serve the king.
 7. They said that the judge would pardon us.
 8. We said that we would not believe the man.
 9. I heard that they had persuaded their neighbors.
 10. Caesar trusted the tenth legion. He trusted to the wisdom of his friend.
-

LESSON LXVII

PASSIVE USE OF VERBS THAT GOVERN THE DATIVE

1. Examine :—

Mihi pārētur.	{ It is obeyed to me. I am obeyed.
Tibi invidētur.	{ It is envied to you. You are envied.
Nāvibus nocēbātur.	{ It was being injured to the ships. The ships were being harmed. Harm was being done to the ships.
Militi parcētur.	{ It will be spared to the soldier. The soldier will be spared. Mercy will be shown to the soldier.
Ei persuāsum est.	{ It was persuaded to him. He was persuaded.

You cannot say *pāreor*, for *I am obeyed*, or *invideor*, for *I am envied*.

2. Rule :—A verb that governs the dative in the active is used *impersonally* in the *passive*.

3. Passive Conjugation of verbs that govern the Dative

PRESENT

mihi persuādētur	I am persuaded	nōbis persuādētur	we are persuaded
tibi persuādētur	you are persuaded	vōbis persuādētur	you are persuaded
eī persuādētur	he is persuaded	eīs persuādētur	they are persuaded

IMPERFECT

mihi persuādēbātur, etc.

FUTURE

mihi persuādēbitur, etc.

PERFECT

mihi persuāsum est, etc.

PLUPERFECT

mihi persuāsum erat, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

mihi persuāsum erit, etc.

EXERCISE

A

1. Nōbis persuāsum est. Eī persuādēbitur.
2. Pauperibus nōn invident. Pauperibus nōn invidētur.
3. Rēgi diū restitērunt. Rēgi nōn diūtius resistētur.
4. Mihi nōn persuādēbunt. Vōbis persuāsum est.
5. Eīs ignoscitur. Mihi ignoscētur. Imperātōri pārēbātur.

B

1. We will be persuaded. He will not be believed.
2. Will not the messenger be believed. You were not obeyed.
3. The general was not obeyed. They were spared.
4. We are not envied. You are not pardoned.

The Coward's Fate

Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā mori.

Mors et fugācem persequitur virum,

Nec parcit imbellis juventae

Poplitibus timidōque tergō.

Vocabulary

decōrus, a, um	seemly, befitting	poples, itis	ham, hough, knee
fugax, ācis	apt to flee, fleeing	timidus, a, um	timid, cowardly
imbellis, e	unwarlike	tergum, ī	back
juventa, ae	youth		

LESSON LXVIII

SUPINES

The Latin verb has two supines, one in **-um**, the other in **-ū**.

amātum	amātū
monitum	monitū
rectum	rectū
auditum	auditū

I. Examine:—

Lēgātōs auxilium rogātum misērunt.
Lūdōs spectātum vēnit.

They sent envoys to ask aid.
He came to see the games.

2. Rule:—

The Supine in **-um** is used with verbs of motion to express purpose.

3. Examine:—

Difficile est dictū.

It is difficult to say.

Hoc est optimum factū.

This is the best thing to do.

The Supine in **-ū** is used with a few adjectives, **facilis**, **difficilis**, **incrēdibilis**, etc., and with **fas est**, **nefas est**, **opus est**.

There are only a few in common use:—

audītū, cōgnitū, dictū, factū, visū.

EXERCISE

Pācem petītum lēgātōs misērunt. Haec rēs est facilis cōgnitū.
Auxilium postulātum vērērunt. Mirābile dictū! Mirābile visū!
Eō diē imperātor decimam legiōnem pābulātum misit.
Ex eā civitāte profugī ad senātum Rōmam vērērunt injūriās
sociōrum questum.

Vocabulary

mirābilis, e

wonderful

profugus, i

exile

injūria, ae

wrong, injury

pābulor, -āri, pābulātus

forage

queror, -i, questus

complain (of)



THE CHARIOT RACE

READING LESSON

How a Roman Schoolboy spends his day

Marcus Patri S.D.¹

S.V.B.E.E.V.² Epistola tua quam per servum mihi misisti erat grātissima. Interrogās: “quōmodō diem consūmis?” Tibi dicam paucis verbis. Primā luce consurgimus omnēs. Māne ad scholam servus mē dūcit. Interdum tardī sumus, et magister, vir benignus, dicit: “quam tardī estis!” Plērumque tamen nōbis veniam dat. Ad sextam hōram diēi pensa legimus et magister nōbis carmina Horāti et poēmata Vergili et ōratiōnēs Cicerōnis, ōrātōris clārissimī, recitat. Nōnnunquam opera Homēri legimus. Post prandium saltū et cursū et natātiōne contendimus quod flūmen Tiberis nōn procul ā scholā abest et magister illud verbum poētae nostri Juvenālis usurpat: “Mens sāna in corpore sānō.” Herī cursum in Circō Māximō spectāvī ubi aurigae multi inter sē summā vī contendēbant. Ad cēnam hōrā decimā domum imus. Primā nocte nōs quiētī damus. Ita diēs consumitur. Valē.

¹ In Roman letters S.D. = **Salutem dat** (with Dat.), gives greeting to, greets. ² Roman letters usually begin with this abbreviation: **Si valēs, bene est, ego valeō**; if you are well, it is well, I am well.

Vocabulary

consūmō 3 -sumpsī spend	prandium, ī	breakfast,
-sumptum		luncheon
consurgō 3 -surrexī rise	saltus, ūs	leaping,
-surrectum		jumping
interdum	cursus, ūs	running, race
tardus, a, um	natātiō, ōnis	swimming
benignus, a, um	Juvenālis, is	Juvenal
		(Roman satirist)
plērumque	usurpō, ī	make use of
venia, ae	verbum, ī	saying
lego 3 lēgi lectum	sānus, a, um	sound
poēma, atis (N.)	auriga, ae	charioteer
recitō, ī	cēna, ae	dinner,
		supper
nōnnunquam	imus	we go
quod	quies, ētis	rest, repose

LESSON LXIX

GERUND

1. The Gerund is a verbal noun corresponding to the English verbal noun in *-ing*. It is declined in the singular, but lacks the nominative case.

GEN.	amandī	of loving	monendī	of advising
DAT.	amandō	to, for loving	monendō	to, for advising
ACC.	amandum	loving	monendum	advising
ABL.	amandō	by loving	monendō	by advising
GEN.	regendī	capiendī	audiendī	
DAT.	regendō	capiendō	audiendō	
ACC.	regendum	capiendum	audiendum	
ABL.	regendō	capiendō	audiendō	

2. The gerunds of deponent verbs are formed similarly, according to their conjugation :—

mirandī, verendī, sequendī, patiendī, blandiendī.

3. The nominative is supplied by the infinitive.

Ambulāre jūcundum est. Walking is delightful.

4. Examine the following examples of gerunds of *intransitive* verbs :—

GEN.	studium pugnandī	desire of fighting
	cupidus pugnandī	desirous of fighting
	praedandī causā	for the purpose of plundering
DAT.	Aqua ūtilis est bibendō.	Water is useful for drinking.
ACC.	ad praedandum missī	sent for the purpose of plundering
ABL.	bene vivendō	by living well
	Mens cōgitandō alitur.	The mind is nourished by reflection.

5. Examine the following examples of gerunds of *transitive* verbs with a direct object :—

GEN.	lēgē is mittendī causā	for the purpose of sending legates
ABL.	epistolās scribendō	by writing letters

As a rule, the gerund with a direct object is limited to the genitive, and the ablative without a preposition.

6. In the case of intransitive verbs that govern the genitive, dative, or ablative, the gerund will govern the same case as the verb from which it is derived.

parcendō hostibus (Dat.) by sparing the enemy

7. Observe :—

The Gerund is a Verbal Noun ;

As a *noun*, it is declined ;

it may be governed by a noun, adjective, preposition, or verb.

As a *verb*, it may govern the same case as the verb from which it is derived ;

it may be modified by an adverb.

Vocabulary

<i>facultās, ātis</i> (F.)	} opportunity
<i>occāsiō, ōnis</i> (F.)	
<i>potestās, ātis</i> (F.)	privilege
<i>studium, ī</i>	desire, zeal
<i>consilium, ī</i>	plan, purpose
<i>tempestās, ātis</i> (F.)	weather
<i>bellō, ī</i>	be at war, war
<i>praedor, āri, praedātus</i>	plunder
<i>frumentor, āri, frumentātus</i>	get grain, forage
<i>consilium capiō</i>	form a plan

ad with acc. and placed *before* }
causā with gen. and placed *after* } = for the purpose of

EXERCISE

A

1. *Ars scribendi est difficilis.*
2. *Equitēs praedandi frumentandique causā missi sunt.*
3. *Spēs praedandi studiumque bellandi militēs ab opere revocābat.*
4. *Tempestātem ad nāvigandum idōneam nactus est.*
5. *Ex pugnā excēdendi facultās nōn dabātur.*
6. *Magna erat nāvigandi difficultās.*
7. *Facultātem proficiscendi habēmus.*
8. *Ad pābulandum aut praedandum prōgressi erant.*
9. *Consilium castra expugnandi cēperunt.*

B

1. The art of living well ; the opportunity of taking the towns.
2. The plan of following the enemy ; the opportunity of taking up arms.
3. For the purpose of taking the towns (use *causā*).
4. We are prepared for (ad) setting out.
5. By obeying the laws ; by sparing the children.
6. He gave them the opportunity of departing.
7. For the purpose of sending hostages (use *causā*).

LESSON LXX

THE GERUNDIVE

1. Latin has a verbal-adjective or participle for which English has no corresponding form. It is called the *Gerundive*.

<i>amandus, a, um</i>	to be loved ; ought to, should, must be loved
<i>monendus, a, um</i>	to be advised ; ought to, should, must be advised
<i>regendus, a, um</i>	to be ruled ; ought to, should, must be ruled
<i>capiendus, a, um</i>	to be taken ; ought to, should, must be taken
<i>audiendus, a, um</i>	to be heard ; ought to, should, must be heard

2. The gerundive of a deponent verb has a passive meaning.

<i>mirandus, a, um</i>	to be admired,	<i>verendus, a, um</i>	to be feared,
	etc.		etc.
<i>sequendus, a, um</i>	to be followed,	<i>partiendus, a, um</i>	to be shared,
	etc.		etc.
<i>patiendus, a, um</i>	to be endured,		
	etc.		

3. The gerundive is declined like *bonus, a, um*.

4. The Gerundive has *two distinct uses* :—

- (1) Its use with the meaning of the gerund.
- (2) Its use to denote duty or necessity (Lesson LXXI).

Gerundive Construction instead of the Gerund

5. Compare:—

<i>Gerund Construction</i>	<i>Gerundive Construction</i>
Spēs urbem videndi The hope of seeing the city	Spēs urbis videndae The hope of the city to-be-seen
Dēlector epistolās scribendō. I am delighted with writing letters.	Dēlector epistolis scribendis. I am delighted with letters to-be-written.

Instead of the Genitive or Ablative of the Gerund with a Direct Object, Latin generally uses the Gerundive Construction. The Direct Object is put in the case of the Gerund, and the Gerundive Participle is used in agreement with it.

When the Gerund governing the Direct Object would be in the Dative or would be governed by a Preposition, the Gerundive Construction should always be used except in the cases mentioned in 6.

Do *not* use **ad urbem videndum** but *use* **ad urbem videndam**
 in epistolās scribendō **in epistolis scribendis**

6. The Gerund Construction necessary

The Gerund must be used:—

(a) With all intransitive verbs;

parcendō hostibus by sparing the enemy
ad mihi persuādendum for the purpose of persuading me

(b) With transitive verbs when the direct object is omitted;

nātus ad regendum born for ruling

(c) To avoid ambiguity;

aliquid docendī causā for the sake of teaching something
 (**alicūjus** could be either masc. *someone*, or neut. *something*)

(d) For the sake of euphony;

arma capiendī causā for the purpose of taking up arms
 (**armōrum capiendōrum causā** would *not* sound well. These genitive plural endings are generally, though not always, avoided.)

EXERCISE

A

In each case state the reason for using the particular construction that is used. The dative is so seldom used that no examples of it are given.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. studium pugnandi | 11. urbis videndae studium |
| 2. oppida expugnandi causā | 12. oppidi expugnandi causā |
| 3. aliquid faciendi facultās | 13. pontis faciendi causā |
| 4. urbe excēdendi occāsiō | 14. consilium belli renovandi |
| 5. ad frūmentandum | 15. ad pācem petendam |
| 6. ad tibi pārendum | 16. ad urbēs capiendās |
| 7. pugnandō ; scribendo | 17. epistolis scribendis |
| 8. multa pollicendō | 18. obsidibus dandis |
| 9. in agendō | 19. in pāce petendā |
| 10. parcendō hostibus | 20. dē rēpublicā servandā |

B

1. Ad arma capiēda parāti sumus. Ad lūdōs videndōs profectus est.
2. Ad ea faciēda, quae Caesar jusserat, convēnerant.
3. Ad duās legiōnēs transportandās nāvēs viginti misērunt.
4. Subitō Galli bellī renovandi legiōnisque opprimendae¹ consilium cēperant.
5. In consiliis capiendis Galli sunt mōbilēs.²
6. Neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatium³ est datum.

C

1. Concerning the taking of the town ; for the purpose of seeing the cities.
2. Workmen were sent f r the purpose of preparing ships (1) causā ; (2) ad
3. We have the opportunity of saving the state—of leaving the camp.
4. The Gauls were desirous of waging war—of driving out the Germans.
5. One legion was sent for the purpose of foraging—of seizing the bridge.

Special Points

7. Utor, fruor, fungor, potior, inasmuch as they were transitive and governed the accusative in early Latin, regularly admit the gerundive construction :

spēs pot'undae urbis the hope of gaining possession of the city.

¹opprimō, 3. -pressi, -pressum, crush. ²mōbilis, e, fickle. ³spatium, i, time, space.

8. With the Genitives *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*, the Gerund or Gerundive form in *-dī* is used, without reference to the gender or number of the pronoun :

sui servandī causā

for the sake of saving herself, himself, or themselves.

9. Observe :—

Obsidēs Aeduis custōdiendōs trādit. He hands over the hostages to the Aedui to guard.

Caesar pontem faciendum cūrāvit. Caesar had a bridge built; provided for the construction of a bridge.

nāvēs, quās faciendās cūrāverat. ships, which he had had built.

Pontem faciendum condūxit. He took a contract for the building of a bridge.

With *dō, trādō, cūrō, locō* let a contract, *condūcō*, take a contract *suscipiō*, undertake :—

The Gerundive acquires a Final sense ; it denotes the end or purpose.

LESSON LXXI

THE GERUNDIVE DENOTING DUTY, OBLIGATION NECESSITY

1. The Gerundive has another use quite distinct from the one explained in the preceding lesson.

2. Examine :—

Pāx petenda est. Peace is to be sought. Peace must be sought.

Dōna mittenda sunt. Gifts are to be sent. Gifts must be sent.

The Gerundive is used to denote *duty, obligation, or necessity*.

In this case it is generally accompanied with some form of the verb *sum* expressed or understood, and is translated by *ought, should or must*.

3. In conjunction with *sum* a whole conjugation may be formed :—

Pāx petenda est. Peace is to be sought. Peace must be sought.

Pāx petenda erat. Peace was to be sought. Peace had to be sought.

Pāx petenda erit. Peace will be to-be-sought. Peace will have to be sought.

4. Examine:—

We must seek peace	} <i>Pāx nōbis petenda est.</i>
Peace is to be sought by us.	
He must send hostages	} <i>Obsidēs eī sunt mittendī.</i>
Hostages are to be sent by him.	

(a) The Gerundive has a passive meaning. Therefore if the English is in the Active form, it must be turned into the Passive before it can be translated into Latin.

(b) The Agent with the Gerundive is expressed, not by the ablative with *ā* or *ab*, as in *pāx ā nōbis petita est*, but by the Dative.

5. Examine:—

<i>Militibus fortiter pugnandum est.</i>	{ It is to be fought bravely by the soldiers. The soldiers must fight bravely.
<i>Lēgibus pārendum est.</i>	{ It is to be obeyed to the law. Laws must be obeyed.
<i>Nāvibus ūtendum est.</i>	{ There is to be a using of ships. Ships must be used.

(c) Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally, and if the verb governs the genitive, dative or ablative, an object may be expressed in the proper case.

6. Examine:—

<i>Mihi ā tē pārendum est.</i>	{ It is to be obeyed to me by you. You must obey me.
<i>Tibi ā mē pārendum est.</i>	{ It is to be obeyed to you by me. I must obey you.

(d) To avoid ambiguity in the case of verbs that govern the Dative, the Agent is expressed by *ā* or *ab* and the Ablative.

Summary of Rules

- (a) The Active form in English must be turned into the Passive.
- (b) The Agent is expressed by the Dative.
- (c) Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally, but admit their own case construction.
- (d) To avoid ambiguity in the case of verbs that govern the Dative, the Agent is expressed by *ā* or *ab* and the Ablative.

EXERCISE

A

1. Bellum statim renovandum est. Nāvēs parandae erant.
2. Haec facienda sunt. Opus erit faciendum.
3. Hic homō interficiendus est. Hae urbēs dēlendae sunt.
4. Hī hominēs nōbis ex civitatē pellendī sunt. Castra eis mūnī-
enda sunt.
5. Militēs imperātōrī hortandī sunt. Fortiter pugnandum erit.
6. Omnibus est moriendum. Itaque nōbis bene est vivendum.
7. Mihi aut cum his vivendum aut prō his est moriendum.
8. Puerō crēdendum est. Cōpiae in finēs hostium dūcendae sunt.
9. Karthāgō est dēlanda. Mediā nocte nuntiō proficiscendum est.

B

1. The letter must be written. Letters must be written.
2. The city must be taken. The cities had to be taken.
3. The town should be taken. The towns will have to be taken.
4. We must conquer the enemy. The enemy must send hostages.
5. You must wage the war. They must destroy the bridges.
6. Forces must be collected. Caesar had to encourage the soldiers.
7. We shall have to take up arms. This opportunity must not be
lost.
8. You must set out at once. I must live with these men.
9. You must not believe the orator. The soldiers had to fight
bravely.

Vincendum aut moriendum, militēs.

Gerundival Infinitive

Hōc nōbis faciendum est.	We must do this.
Hōc nōbis faciendum erat.	We should have done this.
Hōc nōbis faciendum erit.	We shall have to do this.

In Accusative with Infinitive Construction these sentences become

Dixit hōc nōbis faciendum esse.	He said that we must do this.
Dixit hōc nōbis faciendum fuisse.	He said that we should have done this.
Dixit hōc nōbis faciendum fore.	He said that we would have to do this.

EXERCISE

Either of the preceding exercises may be used by using *dixit* or some appropriate word as the introducing verb.

READING LESSON

Difficulty of Caesar's Landing in Britain

Britannī, consiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū, reliquis cōpiis subsecūtī,¹ nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant². Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō constitui nō poterant; militibus³ autem magnō et gravi onere armōrum oppressis simul⁴ et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum⁵ et in fluctibus consistendum⁶ et cum hostibus erat pugnandum. Barbari autem paulum in aquam prōgressi audacter tēla conjiciēbant nec nostris ēgrediendi facultātem dedērunt. Quibus⁶ rēbus nostri perterriti, atque hūjus omninō generis pugnae imperiti, nō eādē alacritāte ac studiō quō⁷ in pedestribus ūti proeliis consuērāt, ūtēbantur.

Vocabulary

causa, ac	reason, cause	paulum	a little, a short distance
quod	because		
nisi	unless, except	omninō	wholly, entirely
altum (neuter)	deep (water)	imperitus, a, um	unskilled in
poterant	were able	(governs Gen.)	
oppressus, a, um	weighed down	alacritās, ātis	eagerness, alacrity
dēsiliō 4 -silui	leap down	consuescō 3	I become accus-
-sultum		-suēvi -suētum	tomed
consistō 3 -stiti	come to a stand	consuēvi (perfect)	I am accustomed
-stitum		consue(ve)rant	were accustomed

¹ The force of *sub* is 'closely.' ² Note the force of the impf. tense and also that *prohibeō* takes the acc. with infin. meaning 'prevent from.' ³ Dat. of Agent.
⁴ At one and the same time. ⁵ *erat* is understood. ⁶ Note how in Latin narrative each sentence is connected with the previous one by some introductory word; the relative pronoun is largely used for this purpose. Translate by using the demonstrative pronoun. ⁷ *quō* is in agreement with the nearest antecedent, *studiō*, and is in the abl. after *ūti*.

LESSON LXXII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

I. The Subjunctive Tenses of **sum, esse, fui** are :—

PRESENT	sim		
IMPERFECT	essem	Present Infinitive + -m	
PERFECT	fu erim	Perfect Stem + -erim	
PLUPERFECT	fu issem	Perfect Stem + -issem	

	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
SINGULAR 1.	sim	esse	fu erim	fu issem
2.	sis	essēs	fu eris	fu issēs
3.	sit	esset	fu erit	fu issēt
PLURAL 1.	simus	essēmus	fu erimus	fu issēmus
2.	sitis	essētis	fu eritis	fu issētis
3.	sint	essent	fu erint	fu issent

Observe that the personal endings are in all tenses the same :
-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt.

3. No general rule can be given for the formation of the present subjunctive that will hold good for all the regular conjugations. The formation for each conjugation must be noted.

The rules given above for the three other tenses hold good for all verbs.

CONJ.	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT	
FIRST	amem	amārem	amāv erim	amāv issem	
SECOND	moneam	monērem	monu erim	monu issem	
THIRD	regam	regerem	rex erim	rex issem	
	capiam	caperem	cēp erim	cēp issem	
FOURTH	audiam	audirem	audīv erim	audīv issem	
4. PRES.	amem	moneam	regam	capiam	audiam
	amēs	moneās	regās	capiās	audiās
	amet	moneat	regat	capiat	audiat
	amēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
	amētis	moneātis	regātis	capiātis	audiātis
	ament	moneant	regant	capiant	audiant

IMPF.	amārem	monērem	regerem	caperem	audirem
	amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	caperēs	audirēs
	amāret	monēret	regeret	caperet	audiret
	amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	caperēmus	audirēmus
	amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	caperētis	audirētis
	amārent	monērent	regerent	caperent	audirent

PERF.	amāv	}	erim, eris, erit,	erimus, eritis, erint
	monu			
	rex			
	audiv			

PLUPF.	amāv	}	issem, issēs, isset,	issēmus, issētis, issent
	monu			
	rex			
	audiv			

5.

Meaning and Use

No meanings have been given to the Subjunctive forms. The subjunctive is used in principal sentences but far more extensively in subordinate clauses where as a rule the English affords no key to its use. The uses and the meanings, therefore, can be learned only in detail.

EXERCISE

Give the principal parts and a synopsis in the 1st Sing. of the Subjunctive Active of:—

laudō. dō, aedificō; dēleō, maneō, videō; mittō, pellō, pōnō; faciō, fugiō; mūniō, veniō, ērudiō.

LESSON LXXIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SIMPLE SENTENCES

The main uses of the Subjunctive in Simple Sentences are:—

1. Hortative : used in the first person plural.

Patriam amēmus.

Let us love our country.

Nē hostibus cēdāmus.

Let us not yield to the enemy.

2. Imperative :

Veniat. Let him come.

Nē audeant. Let them not dare.

Used especially also in negative commands with the 2nd person, in which the *perfect subjunctive* is generally used.

Nē hōc fēceris. Don't do this.

3. Optative : used with or without **utinam** to express a wish.

Veniat or **Utinam veniat.**

May he come. O that he may come.

Utinam veniret.

Would that he were coming.

Utinam vēnisset.

Would that he had come. I wish he had come.

(a) If the wish may be realized, use the Present Subj.

(b) If the wish cannot be realized, use the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subj.; the Imperfect for present time; the Pluperfect for past time.

Utinam may or may not go with the Present, but always accompanies the Impf. or Plupf.

Nē veniat.

May he not come.

Utinam nē veniret.

Would that he were not coming.

Observe the use of **nē** for *not* in the Hortative, Imperative, and Optative subjunctives.

4. Deliberative :

Quid dicam?

What am I to say?

Quid dicerem?

What was I to say?

An te nōn rogem?

Am I not to ask you?

5. Potential: to express a possibility or soften an assertion.

Crēdās.

You would believe.

Nōn crēderēs.

You would not have believed.

Aliquis dicat or dixerit.

Someone may say.

Note that **non** is the negative in the Deliberative and Potential Subjunctives and that a question in the Deliberative Subjunctive is introduced often by **an**.

EXERCISE

A

1. Fortiter pugnēmus. Nē hōc faciat. Nē hōc rogāveris.
2. Beātus sis. Beāti sītis. Utinam Caesar viveret.
3. Quid faciam? Quid facerem? Vix crēdiderim.
4. Orātōrem audiāmus. Civēs meī beāti sint.
5. Utinam eum videam. Utinam eum vidissem.
6. Quid faciāmus, milītēs? Quid facerēmus?

B

1. O that I may see you to-morrow. Would that he were living to-day.
2. Let us not do this. O that he had warned us.
3. What was I to do in so great danger? What am I to say?
4. Are we to love the enemies of the state?
5. Would that I had seen him before. Let us not give hostages.

LESSON LXXIV

SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

I. The Subjunctive Passive is as follows:—

PRESENT	amē	-m of Active changed to -r
IMPERFECT	amārer	-m of Active changed to -r
PERFECT	amātus (a, um) sim	Perfect Participle + sim
PLUPERFECT	amātus (a, um) essem	Perfect Participle + essem

2.	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
	monear	monērer	monitus sim	monitus essem
	regar	regerer	rectus sim	rectus essem
	capiar	caperer	captus sim	captus essem
	audiar	audirer	auditus sim	auditus essem

3. PRES.	amer	monear	regar	capiar	audiar
	amēris	moneāris	regāris	capiāris	audiāris
	amētur	moneātur	regātur	capiātur	audiātur
	amēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
	amēmini	moneāmini	regāmini	capiāmini	audiāmini
	amentur	moneantur	regantur	capiantur	audiantur
IMPF.	amārer	monērer	regerer	caperer	audirer
	amārēris	monērēris	regerēris	caperēris	audirēris
	amārētur	monērētur	regerētur	caperētur	audirētur
	amārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	caperēmur	audirēmur
	amārēmini	monērēmini	regerēmini	caperēmini	audirēmini
	amārentur	monērentur	regerentur	caperentur	audirentur

PERF. amātus sim sis sit amāti simus sītis sint

PLUPF. amātus essem essēs esset amāti essēmus essētis essent

The Perf. and Plupf. Subjunctive of other verbs are formed in the same way.

EXERCISE

A

1. Give a synopsis in the 1st Sing. of the Subjunctive Passive of:—
liberō, postulō, moveō, augeō, cognoscō, dūcō, vincō, interficiō,
conjiciō, mūniō, inveniō.
2. Hās rēs cognoscāmus. Cōpiās nostrās in hostēs audacter
dūcāmus.
3. Utinam urbs nē capiātur. Utinam hostēs victī essent.
4. Tēla in hostēs conjiciāmus. Nostram patriam liberēmus.
5. Utinam nē amicus meus interficiātur. Utinam cōpiae nostrae
augērentur.

B

1. Let us not yield to the enemy. Let us conquer the enemy.
2. O that we may not be seen. O that we had not been seen.
3. Let us devastate their fields. Let us demand hostages.
4. O that the city had been fortified. May they not be conquered.

READING LESSON

Horatius at the Bridge

Porsena, rēx Etruscōrum, ad quem Tarquinii perfūgerant,¹ sē Rōmānōs facile superātūrum² arbitrātus, infestō exercitū Rōmam vēnit. Nōn unquam alias³ ante tantus terror senātum civēsque invāsit: adeō magnum erat Porsenae nōmen. Is Jāniculum repentinō impetū cēpit et jam in urbem ipsam ponte Subliciō⁴ erat prōcessūrus. Rōma vērō virtūte viri unius est servāta. Nam Horātius Cocles cum sociis duōbus, extrēmā pontis parte occupātā, exercitum Etruscōrum tōtum cohibuit. Interim Rōmāni pontem rescindēbant. Cum jam pons paene interruptus est, sociōs regredi jussit: ipse impetum hostium sōlus sustinuit. Illi⁵ virtūtem militis Rōmāni mirāti, aliquamdiū cunctāti sunt; tum clāmōre sublātō in unum hostem undique tēla conjiciunt. Tandem ponte rescissō, dixit Horātius: "Tiberine pater,⁶ haec⁷ arma et hunc militem⁸ accipiās." Ita, sic armātus, in Tiberim dēsiliit et incolumis⁹ ad suōs trānāvit.

Vocabulary

Etruscī, ōrum	Etruscans	rescindō 3 -scidi	break down
Tarquinia, i	a Tarquin	-scissum	
infestus, a, um	hostile	cum jam	when now
unquam	ever	paene	almost
alias (adv.)	at another time	inter rumpō	break down
terror, ōris	terror, fright	aliquamdiū (adv.)	for some time
invādō 3 -vāsi	come upon,	undique (adv.)	from all sides
-vāsum	attack, seize	sic	thus
adeo (adv.)	so, to such an extent	ita (with verb or clause)	thus, so
repentinus, a, um	sudden	tam { (with adj. or adv.) }	so, thus
cohibeō 2 -hibui	hold back, check	trānō -āre	swim across
-hibitum			

¹ per strengthens the meaning of the simple verb. ² esse of the fut. infin. act. and pf. infin. pass. is very often omitted. ³ on no previous occasion. ⁴ Abl. of Means. ⁵ illi is the proper word to indicate 'the enemy.' ⁶ Tiberinus pater, Father Tiber, addressed as a river-god. ⁷ Note the true force of hic. ⁸ i.e., himself. ⁹ Note the use of the adj. where English would use an adv. This is the regular idiom.

LESSON LXXV

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

Final Clauses

Sequence of Tenses

1. A Final Clause is one which expresses a purpose or end (*finis*) to be attained, as :—

He is coming that he may see the city

The most usual way of expressing purpose in English is by the Infinitive :

He is coming to see the city.

Do not use the infinitive in Latin to express purpose.

2. Examine :—

PRIMARY TENSES AND PRIMARY SEQUENCE

Veniō	I come, am coming	} ut videam {	{ to see. that I may see.
Veniam	I shall come		
Venerō	I shall have come		

HISTORICAL TENSES AND HISTORICAL SEQUENCE

Veniēbam	I was coming	} ut vidērem {	{ to see. that I might see.
Vēni ¹	I came		
Vēneram	I had come		

3. Observe :—

The tenses in the first group take the same construction after them, *ut videam*—that I may see.

The tenses in the second group take the same construction after them, *ut vidērem*—that I might see.

The tenses in the first group—Present, Future, and Future Perfect—are called *Primary Tenses*.

¹The Perfect Indicative even with the meaning *I have (come)* is often regarded as an Historical Tense and takes the Historical Sequence. For convenience, *vēni* when it means *I have come*, may be called the Present Perfect, and when it means *I came*, the Historical Perfect.

The tenses in the last group—Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect—are called *Historical Tenses*.

The construction observed above is called the *Law of the Sequence of Tenses*. It may be stated thus:—

4. Rule for the Sequence of Tenses

A Primary Tense in the principal clause is followed by a Primary Tense in the dependent clause;

An Historical Tense in the principal clause is followed by an Historical Tense in the dependent clause.

The first case is called *Primary Sequence*.

The second case is called *Historical Sequence*.

5. In Final Clauses only two tenses are used:—

Present Subjunctive for Primary Sequence;

Imperfect Subjunctive for Historical Sequence.

6. Observe:—

Proficiscar nē eum videam.

I shall set out that I may not see him.

Profectus sum nē eum vidērem.

I set out that I might not see him.

In Final clauses, *that—not, in order that—not* is **ne**.

EXERCISE

A

In each case state the sequence.

1. *Militēs mittent* { *ut agrōs vastent—ut pontem dēleant—*
 ut urbem capiant—ut castra mūniant.
2. *Militēs mittuntur* { *nē agrī vastentur—nē pons dēleātur—*
 nē urbs capiātur—nē castra mūniantur.
3. *Lēgātōs misērunt* { *ut ducem laudārent—ut rēgem vidērent—*
 ut pācem peterent—ut eum audirent.
4. *Lēgātī missi erant* { *nēmūriaedificārentur—nēcōpiaē augērentur—*
 nē bellum gererētur—nē homō vincirētur.
5. *Hanc epistolam scripsi ut dē adventū meō scirēs.*
6. *Mihi scripsit ut dē periculō monēret.*
7. *Ex civitāte discessit nē patriam ēversam vidēret.*

B

1. I am sending you { that you may build—that you may see—
that you may live—that you may guard.
2. We will be sent { that we may not give—that we may not
remain—
that we may not ascertain—that we may not
hear.
3. You sent us { to give them arms—to order them—
to lead them—to do the work to fortify
the town.
4. He was sent { that the forces might not be recalled—that
he might not be seen—that the enemy
might not be hard pressed—that the man
might not be punished
5. I shall write you in order to inform you of Caesar's victory.
6. Many praise that they may be praised.
7. Caesar built a wall that the enemy might be kept back.
8. The barbarians fled into the woods so that our men might not
pursue them.

LESSON LXXVI

SUBJUNCTIVE OF DEPONENT VERBS
INDIRECT QUESTIONS

1. The subjunctive of DepONENT verbs is in each conjugation formed like the subjunctive passive of the regular verbs.

CONJ.	PRESENT	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
FIRST	mirer	mirārer	mirātus sim	mirātus essem
SECOND	verear	verērer	veritus sim	veritus essem
THIRD	{ sequare	sequerer	secūtus sim	secūtus essem
	{ patiar	paterer	passus sim	passus essem
FOURTH	blandiar	blandīrer	blanditus sim	blanditus essem

2.

EXERCISE

Write out a synopsis (in 1st person, sing. and pl.) of the subjunctive of the following:—

cōnor, arbitror, hortor; polliceor; profiteor, loquor; progredior,
moriōr; experior, mentior, orior.

3

Indirect Questions

DIRECT QUESTIONS

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

A. Quid facis?

What are you doing?

Ubi erās?

Where were you?

Quando veniet?

When will he come?

B. Sciō quid faciās.

I know what you are doing.

Audiui ubi essēs.

I heard where you were.

Quando ventūrus sit, est incertum.

When he will come is uncertain.

Observe that the dependent clauses in B. begin with an interrogative word; that they may be the object or subject of a verb or of a verbal expression; and that they contain the substance of a direct question. Such clauses are called *Indirect Questions*.

4. Rule:—Indirect Questions require the Subjunctive.

5.

Sequence of Tenses

The rule for Sequence of Tenses holds in regard to Indirect Questions.

PRIMARY SEQUENCE

Rogō	I ask, am asking	} quid faciās quid feceris quid factūrus sis	what you are doing.
Rogāvi ¹	I have asked		what you have done
Rogābō	I shall ask		what you are going
Rogāverō	I shall have asked		to do.

HISTORICAL SEQUENCE

Rogābam	I was asking	} quid facerēs quid fecissēs quid factūrus essēs	what you were doing.
Rogāvi	I asked (I have asked)		what you had done.
Rogāveram	I had asked		what you were going
			to do.

6. Examine:—

Dic mihi num vēnerit.

Tell me if (whether) he has come.

Utrum veniat an domi maneat, nesciō.

Whether he is coming or

Veniatne an domi maneat, nesciō.

staying at home, I know not.

Utrum vēnerit necne, nesciō.

Whether he has come or not,

I know not.

¹Sometimes the Pres. Pl. is regarded as a Primary tense.

Observe :—

'If' or 'whether' in a single indirect question is **num**.

Indirect Double Questions are introduced by **utrum . . . an**, or, **-ne . . . an**.

'Or not' in an indirect question is **necne**.

7. List of Interrogatives

Give the Latin for :—

who?	what?	which of two?
how great?	how many?	of what kind, of what character?
where?	whence?	whither?
why?	when?	how, in what way?
how broad?	how often?	how long (of time)?

EXERCISE**A**

1. Sciō quis sit, ubi vivat. Scīvi quis esset, ubi viveret.
2. Audiam ubi fueris, unde vēneris. Audiveram ubi fuissēs, unde vēnissēs.
3. Rogāvi quid ēgissent, quid actūri essent, quādo profectūri essent.
4. Cognōverat quō proficiscerentur, quādo profecti essent.
5. Dic mihi quārē morātī sint, quamdiū Rōmae manserint.
6. Eum rogāvi quot insulae essent, quanti essent portūs.
7. Vidēbō quid fēcerint, quid faciant, quōmodō vivant?
8. Nesciō quādo hōc opus factūrus sit. Nescivi quot hostēs essent.
9. Scimus quāto in periculō fueris. Rogāvi num Rōmae fuisset.
10. Nōn dixit utrum profecti essent an domi mansissent.

B

1. He asked me when I had come, if I had seen his son.
2. I told him when I arrived, what I saw, how many soldiers there were.
3. Tell me where you were, whom you saw, what you did.
4. Do you know why they are coming, whether they have written
5. We did not hear whether he was at home or not.
6. We have ascertained where the enemy have pitched their camp
7. We do not know how he died, where he lived.
8. He found out why they had attempted to advance.

READING LESSON

Second Expedition to Britain (B.C. 54)

His rēbus gestis, Labiēnō in continente cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum millibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs tueor et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque¹ in Galliā gererentur cognosceret, consiliūque prō² tempore et prō rē³ caperet, ipse cum quinque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem⁴ in continentī reliquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit; et lēnī Africō prōvectus, mediā circiter⁵ nocte ventō intermissō,⁶ cursum non tenuit; et, longius delātus aestū, ortā lūce,⁷ sub sinistrā⁸ Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestūs commūtatiōnem secūsus, rēmis contendit ut eam partem insulae caperet,⁹ quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat.

Vocabulary

continens, tis	main land, continent	dēlātus, a, um	carried down
tueor -ēri tuitus	protect, watch	aestus, ūs	tide
prō videō	foresee, provide	orior -iri ortus	rise, arise
consilium capiō	form a plan, adopt a policy	sub (prep. takes abl.)	under, on
lēnis, -e	gentle	sinister, tra, trum	left
Africus, ī	south-west wind	commūtatiō, ōnis	change
prō vehō 3 -vexī	carry forward	rēmus, ī	oar
-vectum		contendō	strive
intermittō	discontinue	quā (sc. parte)	where
cursus, ūs	course	ēgressus, ūs	landing

¹ quaeque - quae, neut. pl. of quis + -que, and. ² according to. ³ circumstances. ⁴ parī - quem, equal (to that) - which. ⁵ towards, about. ⁶ having died down. ⁷ Literally, light having risen. ⁸ sc. manū. ⁹ reach.

LESSON LXXVII

SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

Consecutive Clauses Cum with Subjunctive

I. A Consecutive Clause is one which expresses the consequence or result of an action, as :—

- (a) Such was the fear that all fled.
- (b) He lived such a life that all loved him.
- (c) So blind was he that he did not see me.
- (d) He was so good as to be loved by all.

Generally the principal clause has some such word as *so* or *such*.

That in a consecutive clause is *ut*, *that -not* is *ut -non*.

- (a) *Tantus erat timor ut omnēs fūgerint.*
- (b) *Ita vixit ut omnēs eum amārent.*
- (c) *Tam caecus erat ut mē nōn viderit.*
- (d) *Tam bonus erat ut ab omnibus amārētur.*

2. Sequence of Tenses

In Consecutive Clauses the rule for sequence of tenses need not be considered. The tense of the English will be a sufficient guide if the following points are observed :—

(a) The Imperfect Subjunctive, like the imperfect indicative, denotes *continued* action (see (b) and (d) above).

(b) The Perfect Subjunctive, like the perfect indicative, represents two tenses, the *Present Perfect* or Perfect with 'have' and the *Historical Perfect*, representing a single definite act or fact.

<i>Pugnant</i>	They fight	} <i>tam fortiter</i> { <i>ut ab omnibus laudentur</i>
<i>Pugnāverunt</i>	They have fought	
<i>Pugnāverunt</i>	They fought	
		} <i>so bravely</i> { that they are praised by all.

Tam fortiter pugnāverunt They fought so bravely	ut ab omnibus laudārentur. that they were praised by all (<i>continuous</i> <i>action</i>).
	ut ab omnibus laudāti sint. that they were praised by all (<i>single</i> , <i>definite act or fact</i>).

3. Cum, *since* or *when*, with the Subjunctive

Examine :

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) Cum periculum esset magnum,
omnēs timēbant. | Since the danger was great, all
were afraid. |
| (b) Cum ad Caesarem venīrent,
dē hōc proeliō audīverunt. | When they were coming to Caesar,
they heard of this battle. |
| Cum Caesar nuntiōs misisset,
respondērunt. | When Caesar sent messengers,
they replied. |
| Cum haec dixisset, discessit. | When he had said this, he went
away. |

4. Rules :—

- (a) **Cum**, meaning *since*, always takes the Subjunctive.
- (b) **Cum**, *when*, referring to the past, takes the Subjunctive (imperfect or pluperfect) to denote the accompanying circumstances or situation.

The Imperfect denotes the *same time as* } that of the principal
 The Pluperfect denotes *time prior to* } verb.

5. Review Lesson LXII, 3, and observe that you have another way of translating the English Present Participle when it has a *causal* force.

fearing = **veritus** or **cum timēret**

thinking = **arbitrātus** or **cum putāret** or **cum existimāret**

6. Review Lesson LXII, 4, and observe that you have another way of translating the English Perfect Participle Active.

Having spoken these words = (1) **his dictis**

(2) **haec locūtus**

(3) **cum haec dixisset**

(4) **postquam** } **haec dixit**
ubi

EXERCISE

A

1. *Tantus erat numerus hostium ut omnēs timērent.*
2. *Tanta erat tempestās ut nūlla nāvis in portum pervēnerit.*
3. *Tam diligens erat puer ut nihil temporis amitteret.*
4. *Ita vixit ut nēmō eī crēderet.*
5. Such was the valor of our men that they easily conquered the enemy.
6. Such is his courage that even the enemy admire it.
7. The cavalry charged so fiercely that no one escaped.
8. Our men fought so bravely that the barbarians were easily repulsed.

B

1. *Cum ad castra primā lūce pervēnisset, omnia parāta invēnit.*
2. *Postquam Capuae multōs annōs vixit, Rōmam dēmigrāvit.*
3. *Cum per finēs Rēmōrum iter facerent, magnum numerum equitum fūdērunt.*
4. *Cum tridui iter sine ūllō periculō fēcissent, in montibus circumventi omnēs sunt interfecti.*

Translate the participial clause in all possible ways:—

5. Having advanced to the river, he saw the enemy's forces drawn up on the other bank. advance—*prōcēdō*; *prōgredior*
6. Having led his army across, he at once fortified a camp.
7. Having devastated the fields of the Remi, he returned to camp. devastate—*vastō*; *dēpopulor*
8. Having observed the Roman standards in the distance, the barbarians fled into the woods. observe—*conspiciō*; *conspicor*

C

1. *Cum milites circiter trēcenti ex his nāvibus essent expositi atque in castra contenderent, Morini quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adducti magnō suōrum numerō eōs circumstetērunt ac arma ponere iussērunt.*

2. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre auditō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abjectis signisque militāribus relictis, sē ex castris ējēcērunt; et cum ad confluentem Mōsae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt; atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressi perierunt.

Vocabulary

pācātus, a, um	peaceful, at peace	praecipitō I	nurl headlong
tergum, ī	back	lassitūdō, inis	weariness
militāris, e	military	opprimō 3 -pressi	crush, over-
confluens, tis	confluence	-pressum	whelm
circumstō I -steti	surround	perierunt	they perished

READING LESSON

Death of Epaminondas

Omniū Thēbānōrum fortissimus et clārissimus erat Epaminondas. Cum vicisset Lacedaemoniōs apud Mantinēam, simulque mortiferum sē vulnus accēpisse animadverteret¹, primum quaesivit, salvusne esset clipeus. Cum salvum esse flentēs suī respondissent, rogāvit essentne fūsi hostēs. Cumque esset renuntiātum vicisse Boeōtiōs, extrahi jussit eam, quā erat transfixus, hastam. "Satis," inquit, "vixi; invictus enim morior." Tum ferrō extractō confestim est mortuus.

Vocabulary

Thēbānus, ī	Theban	cumque	and when
apud	at, near	ex trahō	draw out
simul	at the same time	transfigō 3 -fixi	pierce through,
mortifer, a, um	deadly, fatal	-fixum	transfix
salvus, a, um	safe	invictus, a, um	unconquered
flens, tis	weeping	ferrum, ī	iron head,
suī	his (friends)		spear-point
Boeōtiī, ōrum	Boeotians	confestim	at once

¹ animadvertō = animum ad-vertō, turn the mind to—perceive.

Compounds of sum

2. Principal Parts

3. Indicative Subjunctive

Infinitive

5. Principal Parts

6.	Indicative	Subjunctive
----	------------	-------------

PRES.	prōsum	prōsim
	prōdes	prōsis
	prōdest	prōsit
	prōsumus	prōsimus
	prōdestis	prōsitis
	prōsunt	prōsint

IMPF.	pröderam	prōdessem
FUT.	prōderō	
PERF.	prōfui	prōfuerim
PLUPF.	prōfueram	prōfuissem
FUT. PF.	prōfuerō	

Imperative

PRES.	2. Sing. prōdes	2. Pl. prōdeste
-------	------------------------	------------------------

Infinitive

PRES.	prōdesse	PERF. prōfuisse	FUT. prōfutūrus esse
-------	-----------------	------------------------	-----------------------------

Participle

FUT. **prōfutūrus**7. Compounds of **sum**

ab sum	ab esse	ab fui	am absent, am distant
ad sum	ad esse	ad fui	am present, am near, help
dē sum	dē esse	dē fui	am lacking, am wanting
inter sum	inter esse	inter fui	am among, am present at, take part in
prae sum	prae esse	prae fui	am at the head of, command
super sum	super esse	super fui	am left, survive

8. All compounds of **sum** except **possum** and **absum** take the Dative. **Absum** is generally construed with **ā** or **ab** and the *Ablative*.

9. Observe:—

quam m̄ximis itineribus	= by as long marches as possible.
Quam m̄ximis (potest) itineribus in Ītaliā contendit.	} He hastens into Italy by as long marches as possible.

The appropriate form of **possum** (otherwise understood) is sometimes expressed.

10. Observe:—

Hōc facere possum.	I am able, can, do this.
Hōc facere potui.	{ I was able to do this.
	{ I could have done this.
Hōc facere poterō.	I shall be able to do this.

The tense of the infinitive that accompanies **possum** does not change in Latin, as in English.

EXERCISE

A

1. Venire nōn potui. Hōc facere potuisti. Manēre nōn poterit.
2. His lēgātis persuadēre nōn poterat.
3. Caesar cōpiās quam māximās comparāvit.
4. Inimicis nocēre tibi nōn prōderit.
5. Tibi in rēbus adversis aderō; neque tibi unquam dēerō.
6. Caesar exercitui Rōmānō praefuit. Nēmō civium tibi aderit.
7. Hic vir eō diē abfuit. Oppidum ā flūmine mille passūs aberat.
8. Ille dux multis proeliis interfuit.
9. In omnibus rēbus vōbis prōdesse poterimus.

B

1. We can hear, we could have heard, we will be able to hear.
2. He was able, he had been able, he will have been able.
3. They are, were, will be, absent. Few survive. Many survived.
4. Caesar was at the head of the army on that day.
5. He collected as many ships as possible.
6. He set out as quickly as possible.
7. These men will not be serviceable to their country.
8. He lacked shrewdness¹ but not boldness.

¹ Say, shrewdness (consilium) was lacking to him.

C

1. Ut hostēs universōs¹ opprimere² posset, quam māximās cōpiās comparāvit.
2. Tam acriter nostrī impetum fēcērunt ut hostēs arma capere nōn possent.
3. Hostēs, cum ad flūmen pervenire non possent, domum revertērunt.
4. Eum rogāvī quārē³ eō diē abfuerit.
5. I shall write to you that you may be able to know why I was absent.
6. He will set out as quickly as possible so that the enemy may not be able to ascertain where he is leading his army.
7. We will gather so large forces that they will not be able to resist our first attack.
8. Since you are not able to come to me, I shall come to you.

¹ universi, ae, a, all together, in a body. ² opprimō, 3, -pressi, -pressum crush. ³ quārē, why.

LESSON LXXIX

Volō, Nōlō, Mālō

I. Principal Parts:—

volō	velle	volui		am willing, will, wish
nōlō	nōlle	nōlui	(nōn, not + volō)	am unwilling, will not
mālō	mālle	mālui	(magis, more + volō)	prefer, had rather

2.

Indicative

PRES.	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vis	nōn vis	māvis
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam, volēs, etc.	nōlam, nōlēs, etc.	mālam, mālēs, etc.
PERF.	volui	nōlui	mālui
PLUPF.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
FUT. PF.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

Subjunctive

PRES.	vēlim	nōlim	mālim
	vēlis	nōlis	mālis
	vēlit	nōlit	mālit
	vēlimus	nōlimus	mālimus
	vēlitis	nōlitis	mālitis
	vēlint	nōlint	mālint
IMPF.	vellem, vellēs, etc.	nōllem, nōllēs, etc.	māllem, mālles, etc.
PERF.	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
PLUPF.	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

Imperative

PRES.	nōlī, nōlite
FUT.	{ nōlitō, nōlitōte nōlitō, nōluntō

Infinitive

PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

Participle

PRES. **volens** willing **nōlens** unwilling

3. Note:—**volō, nōlō, mālō** are followed by a complementary infinitive.

Rōmam venīre vult. He wishes to come to Rome.

4. Note:—The imperative of **nōlō** with an infinitive is the commonest form for a *negative imperative or prohibition*.

Hōc facere nōli. Don't do this.

EXERCISE

A

1. Write out the six forms based upon the perfect stem of **volō**.
2. What is the rule for the formation of the impf. subj. act.?
3. **Vult, volet; nōluit, nōlet; mālēbat, mālet.**
4. **Utinam vēlis; utinam vellēs; utinam voluissēs.**
5. **Nōli putāre mē tibi esse inimicum. Nōlite ad mē venīre.**
6. **Militēs eō diē in castris manēre quam pugnāre maluērunt.**
7. **Utrum domī manēre an rūs proficiscī māluit.**
8. **Cum hostēs sē dēdere nōllent, Caesar eōs ācrius aggredi constituit.**
9. **Cur nōn vis? Quem vidēre vis? Mihi dixit quem vidēre vellēs.**
10. **Dixit sē manēre nōlle. Putāvit militēs pugnāre velle.**

B

1. They will wish to set out. You preferred to stay at home.
2. Do you wish to see the city? Do you not prefer to conquer.
3. Write to me, please.¹ Don't abandon your friends.
4. He sent Labienus to the legions that they might be willing to fight.
5. The storm was so great that he preferred to stay at home.
6. They told me that you were unwilling to depart.
7. I say that you wished. Do you say that I was unwilling.
8. Tell² me why you were unwilling. I shall ask what he wishes.
9. Since you are unwilling to write, send a messenger to me.

¹ *sis=si vis*=if you please, please. ² Imperative of *dīcō* is *dīc*.

READING LESSON

The Battle of Cannae (B.C. 216)

Primā aestāte duo consulēs māximum exercitum in Apuliam contrā Hannibalem dū erunt et castra ad Cannās posuērunt. Consulēs Rōmāni erant Paulus et Varrō. Hannibal, dux peritissimus, cōpiās Rōmānās mox circumvēnit et per octo hōrās ab equitibus Numidis Rōmāni occidēbantur. Millia fere quinquāgintā militum sunt interfecti; millia circiter quinque capti sunt. Consul Varrō cum paucis effūgērunt. Māgō, Hannibalis frāter, clādem exercitūs Rōmāni Karthāginiensibus nuntiāvit. Simul ac clādēs Rōmam¹ nuntiāta est, pavor atque dēspērātiō civēs occupāvērunt. Multi ex urbe perterriti fugiēbant sed jussū senātūs portae sunt clausae. Nunquam antea senātus tantam prūdētiā, tantam sapiētiā, tantam fortitūdinem praestitit. Verbis atque factis populum dē rē publicā nunquam dēspērāre jussit. Omnēs sensērunt Hannibalem statim contrā urbem iter factūrum esse. Itaque equitēs celerrimī s in urbē missi ut cognoscerent quid Hannibal faceret. Hannibal jam lēgātōs Rōmam misit ut pacem facerent sed senātus, quod cum hoste victōre agere nōlēbat, lēgātōs portās inire vetuit. Maharbal, equitum Numidārum dux, Hannibalem ut Rōmam statim proficiscerētur hortātus est.² “Cum equitibus prōcēdam” inquit Maharbal “et diēbus quinque in Capitoliō cēnābis.” Hannibal tamen nōlēbat. Tum Maharbal: “Eheu! scīs vincere, Hannibal; victōriā ūti nescīs.”

Vocabulary

Cannae, ārum	Cannae	factum, i	deed
Numidae, ārum	Numidians	sentiō 4 sensi	feel, think
occidō 3 occidī	kill, slay	sensum	
occisum		victor, ōris (Adj.)	victorious
clādēs, is (F.)	disaster	agere cum	treat with
simul ac	as soon as	inire	to enter
pavor, ōris	fear, panic	vetō I vetui	forbid
dēspērātiō, ōnis	despair	vetitum	
jussū	by order	cēnō I	dine
fortitūdō, inis	courage, fortitude	sciō scire scivi	know
praestō I praestiti	show, display	scitum	
praestitum		ne sciō	not know
verbum, i	word	ehui	alas!

¹ Acc. because motion is implied.
set out.

² urged H. that he should set out=urged H. to

LESSON LXXX

Ferō

1. Principal Parts:—

ACTIVE	ferō	ferre	tulī,	lātum	hear, carry
PASSIVE	feror	ferri	lātus sum		

2.

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

	Indic.	Subj.	Indic.	Subj.
PRES.	ferō	feram	feror	ferar
	fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris
	fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
	ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
	fertis	ferātis	ferimini	ferāmini
	ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
IMPF.	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
PLUPF.	tuleram	tulisse	lātus eram	lātus essem
FUT. PF.	tulerō		lātus erō	

Imperative

PRES.	fer	ferite	ferre	ferimini
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

Participles

PRES.	ferens	PERF.	lātus
FUT.	lāturus	GER.	ferendus

Infinitive

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lāturus esse	lātum iri

Gerund

ferendī, -dō, -dum, -dō

Supine

lātum

lātū

3.

Compounds of *ferō*

The compounds of *ferō*, conjugated like the simple verb, are given for reference.

ad-	afferō	afferre	attuli	allātum	bring to
ab-	auferō	auferre	abstuli	ablātum	take away
con-	conferō	conferre	contuli	collātum	bring together
dis-	differō	differre	distuli	dilātum	put off
ex-	efferō	efferre	extuli	ēlātum	carry off
in-	inferō	inferre	intuli	illātum	bring against
of-	offerō	offerre	obtuli	oblātum	present
prō	prōferō	prōferre	prōtuli	prōlātum	carry forward
re-	referō	referre	rettuli	relātum	bring back
sub-	sufferō	sufferre	sustuli	sublātum	endure
	(tollō)	(tollere)	sustuli	sublātum	lift, take away

4. Note:—

Four verbs—*dicō*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, *ferō*—drop -e in the 2nd sing. pres. imperative active: *dic*, *dūc*, *fac*, *fer*.

5. Phrases:—

arma ferre	to bear arms, fight	
signa ferre	to bear on the standards, advance	
auxilium ferre	to bring aid	
aegrē	} ferre	to bear with difficulty, to be annoyed at
graviter		
molestē		
ferunt	they say	
fertur	it is said	
in silvam ligna ferre	to carry coals to Newcastle	

EXERCISE

A

- Write out the six forms based upon the perfect stem of *ferō*.
- Show that the perfect and future participles and infinitives are formed regularly.
- Eōs*, *quī arma ferre nōn poterant*, *domum discēdere jussit*.
- Hostēs impetum nostrōrum ferre nōn poterant*.
- Nōs omnēs scimus tē dolōrem aequō animō tulisse*.

6. Hanc rem molestē ferēbant.
7. Pollicitus est sē eis auxilium esse lātūrum.
8. Ut impetum hostium ferre possent, castra mūrō fossāque mūniverunt.
9. Dicit sē injuriās diū tulisse.

E

1. Since they were not able to bear arms, he left them in the camp.
2. They were sent for the purpose of bringing aid to the Remi.
3. Since they were annoyed at these things, Caesar promised to bring aid to them.
4. He wished to know why they were unwilling to bear on the standards.
5. There was no opportunity of bringing aid.
6. They made an attack so fiercely that we were not able to bring aid.

LESSON LXXXI

FĪŌ

1. Principal Parts :—

fĭō	ferī	factus sum	
(Act. faciō	facēre	fēci	factum
			am made, become make, do)

2.

Indicative

PRES.	fĭō	fis	fit
	fimus	fitis	fiunt
IMPF.	fĭēbam		
FUT.	fiam		
PERF.	factus	sum	
PLUPF.	factus	eram	
FUT. PF.	factus	erō	

Subjunctive

fiam	fiās	fiat
fiāmus	fiātis	fiant
fierem		
factus	sim	
factus	essem	

Imperative

PRES.	fī	fite
-------	----	------

Participles

PERF.	factus
GER.	faciendus

Infinitive

PRES.	feri
PERF.	factus esse
FUT.	factum iri

3. Compounds of **faciō**

4. Prepositional compounds of **faciō** (page 123, compounds) change **a** to **i** and form their passive regularly :—

interficiō	interficere	interfici	interfectum
interficio	interfici	interfectus sum	

Other compounds retain **a** and have **-fiō** in the passive :—

patefaciō	patefacere	patefeci	patefactum	open
patefiō	pateferi	patefactus sum		

EXERCISE

A

1. Haec nullō modō fieri possunt. Hōc fieri posse dixit.
2. Undique unō tempore impetus in nostrōs milites factus est.
3. Eum dē Caesaris adventū certiorem fecimus. Certiores facti
sumus.
4. Ille ā populō Rōmānō est factus imperātor.
5. Cōpiās ē castris dūcite et impetum in hostēs facite.
6. Utinam nē consul factus esset. Nōne rēx fieri volēbat?
7. Lēgātis dixit quid fieri vellet. Rogāverunt quid fieret.
8. Tam celeriter prōgressus est ut quid fieret cognoscere nōn possent.

B

1. He says that this could have been done by you.
2. We can do this. This cannot be done.
3. We will inform him. He will be informed.
4. He will be made consul. Does he not wish to be made consul?
5. When he saw what was being done, he moved his camp.
6. He will be killed. He does not wish to be killed.
7. What has been done? He found out what had been done.
8. Do you know by whom this was done?

READING LESSON

How Troy was Taken

Graeci bellum contrā urbem Trōjam decem annōs gesserant nec eam capere poterant. Ad extrēmum dolō ūsī equum ligneum mōlis ingentis aedificant in quō virōs fortissimōs abdidērunt. Reliqui Graeci autem ad Graeciam rursus sē abire simulant¹ Trōjānī longā obsidiōne fessī gaudiō magnō ex urbe excēdunt et ad arcem equum ligneum trahunt. Eādem nocte Graeci quī ad Tenedum sē recēperant, ad ōram Trōjae multis cum nāvibus rediērunt et socii, equō ēgressi, portās patefaciunt. Custōdēs interficiuntur et urbs Trōja expugnātur.

Vocabulary

ligneus, a, um	wooden	obsidiō, ōnis	siege
mōles, is (F.)	size, mass	fessus, a, um	wearied
abdō 3 -didi -ditum	hide, conceal	gaudium, ī	joy
simulō 1	pretend	mē recipiō	I betake myself, retreat

¹ Note the idiom; *I pretend to go* = Simulō mē ire.

LESSON LXXII

EÖ

1. Principal Parts :—

eō ire ivi itum go

2. Indicative

PRES.	eō	is	it
	imus	itis	eunt
IMPF.	ibam	ibās	ibat
	ibāmus	ibatis	ibant
FUT.	ibō	ibis	ibit
	ibimus	ibitis	ibunt
PERF.	ivi (ii)		
PLUPF.	iveram (ieram)		
FUT. PF.	iverō (ierō)		

Subjunctive

eam	eās	eat
eāmus	eātis	eant
irem	irēs	iret
irēmus	irētis	irent
iverim (ierim)		
ivissem (iissem)		

Imperative

PRES.	I	ite
FUT.	itō	itōte
	itō	euntō

Participles

PRES.	iens (GEN. euntis)
FUT.	itūrus
GER.	eundum (Neut.)

Infinitive

PRES.	ire
PERF.	ivisse (iisse)
FUT.	itūrus esse

Gerund

eundī, -dō, -dum, -dō

Supine

itum itū

3.**Compounds of eō.**

In the perfect system of **eō** and its compounds the forms with **v** are extremely rare.

abeō	abire	abii	abitus	go away, depart
adeō	adire	adii	aditus	go to, approach
exeō	exire	exii	exitus	go out of, leave
ineō	inire	inii	initus	go into, enter upon
obeō	obire	obii	obitus	meet, face
redeō	redire	redii	reditus	go back, return
pereō	perire	perii	peritus	perish
transeō	transire	transii	transitus	go across, cross
intereō	interire	interii	interitus	perish

EXERCISE**A**

1. **Paucis diēbus redibunt. Ex oppidō abiērunt.**
2. **Omnēs perierant. Puerum domō exiisse dixit.**
3. **Ībisne? Num puer ivit? Quandō rediisti?**
4. **Ante merīdiem redibimus. Nēmō montēs transibit.**
5. **Auctumnō avēs abeunt et vĕre primō redeunt.**
6. **Quō is? Unde rediit? Quot periērunt? Quis exhibat?**
7. **Eōs rogāvī quandō rediissent. Utinam nē pereant.**
8. **Nōbis eundum est. Consilium urbis capiendae iniērunt.**
9. **Ducēs misit ut tūti redirent. In silvis sē abdidērunt nē perirent.**

E

1. We will go. Did he go? Have they not gone? Go home.
2. He said they would go. I say he has returned.
3. Begone. We say that he is leaving the city.
4. We are going. Let us go. O that we were going.
5. O that we may all return. Did anyone perish?
6. They told us why they had crossed the river.
7. We shall set out at once that we may return safely.
8. When they returned to camp, they found everything ready.
9. When we were returning; since they have crossed.
10. Why did you go away? You told me why you went away.

LESSON LXXXIII

DEFECTIVE VERBS

Memini, Coepi, Ōdi, Nōvi

1. Verbs that lack some of their forms are called Defective verbs.

2. The following are entirely or almost entirely limited to the Perfect System:

memini	I remember	coepi	I have begun, I began
ōdi	I hate	nōvi	I know

Indicative

PERF.	memini	coepi	ōdi	nōvi
PLUPF.	memineram	coeperam	ōderam	nōveram
FUT. PF.	meminerō	coeperō	ōderō	nōverō

Subjunctivē

PERF.	meminerim	coeperim	ōderim	nōverim
PLU. PF.	meminissē	coepissē	ōdissem	nōvissem

Imperative

mementō
mementōte

Infinitive

PERF.	meminisse	coepisse	ōdisse	nōvisse
FUT.		coeptūrus esse	ōsūrus esse	

Participle

coeptus	ōsus	nōtus
coeptūrus	ōsūrus	

3. Note the meanings :—

meminī, I remember ; **memineram**, I remembered ; **meminerō**, I shall remember.

ōdī, I hate ; **ōderam**, I hated ; **ōderō**, I shall hate.

nōvī is properly the perfect of **noscō** (**-gnoscō** in compounds), I learn ; **nōvī**, I have learned = I know.

cognoscō, I learn ; **cognōvī**, I have learned, or, I know.

consuescō, I become accustomed ;

consuēvī, I have become accustomed = I am accustomed.

4. Examine :—

Urbem aedificāre coepit.

He began to build a city.

Urbs aedificārī coepta est.

The city began to be built.

Coepī (active) is used when an active infinitive follows.

Coeptus sum (passive) is generally used when a passive infinitive follows.

5. Review Lesson LXVI, 7.

meminī with *Acc.* = I remember, retain in mind
with *Gen.* = I am mindful, or regardful of
obliviscor with *Acc.* = I forget, lose the memory of
with *Gen.* = I am forgetful of, disregard

EXERCISE

A

1. **Nunquam amicōrum oblitus est. Quam multa senēs meminērunt !**
2. **Iter in Ītaliā facere coepit. Pons aedificārī coeptus est.**
3. **In mūrū lapidēs jacī sunt coeptī. Omnēs malōs ōderat.**
4. **Hūjus diēi usque ad extrēmā vitā meminērō.**
5. **Illī cum equitātū prōgressī nostrōs prohibēre coepērunt.**
6. **Haec Caesar ab Rēmīs cognōverat. Nōndum hostiū consilia cognōverat.**
7. **Ab hibernīs in Ītaliā Caesar quartannis discēdere consuēverat.**

B

1. The barbarians began to hurl darts at our men.
2. Darts began to be hurled at our men by the barbarians.
3. We cannot forget the valor of that man.
4. Nor shall I ever forget that day.
5. Caesar knew that the Gauls were desirous of change.
6. He had learned their plans from messengers.
7. They were accustomed to cross the river yearly.
8. We are accustomed. They will remember. Have you learned?
9. He sent cavalry to ascertain their plans.



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

READING LESSON

Death of Caesar (44 B.C.)

Caesar, bellis civilibus totō orbe terrarum confectis, ad urbem rediit. Deinde dictātor in perpetuum¹ creātus, superbius² insolentiusque³ agere coepit. Omnia munera, quae ā populō antea dēferēbantur, amicis suis mandāvit. Cum Antōnius, qui in omnibus bellis Caesaris³ aderat, diadēma capiti³ ejus Lupercālibus⁴ impōneret, haec res ei displicere nōn est visa. Quam ob rem multi cives eum potestatem regiam petere sunt suspicāti. Itaque in eum senātōres equitesque sexāgintā inter se conjūratiōnem fecerunt. Hujus conjūratiōnis ducēs erant Brūtus et Cassius; hic Caesari inimicissimus, ille amicus sed patriae amantissimus. Hi Caesarem dē imprōvisō⁵ Idibus Martiis in cūriā confodere constituērunt. Itaque cum Caesar in cūriam Idibus Martiis vēnisset, conjūrati eum circumsteterunt et, strictis pugionibus, tribus et viginti vulneribus occiderunt.

Vocabulary

mūnus, eris (N.)	duty, office	conjūrātus, i	conspirator
dēferō	offer, confer	cūria, ae	senate-house
mandō I	enjoin, bestow	confodiō 3 -fōdī	stab
diadēma, atis (N.)	crown	-fossū	
impōnō	place on	stringō 3 strinxī	draw
videor -ēri visus	seem, appear	strictum	
rēgius, a, um	regal, royal	pugiō, ōnis	dagger
senātor, ōris	senator	occidō 3 occidi	slay
conjūratiō, ōnis	conspiracy	occisum	

¹ perpetuus, a, um, continuous: in perpetuum, for all time, forever, for life.

² See page 88, 6, for force of Comp. The adverbs are superbē from superbus, a, um, proud, haughty; and insolenter from insolens, tis, haughty, insolent.

³ Dat. after a compound verb (see Lesson LXXXVI, 4).

⁴ Abl. of 'time when';

Lupercālia, ium (N. Pl.), the Lupercalia, a sacred festival.

⁵ imprōvisus,

a, um (in, not, prō-vidēō, foresee) unforeseen; dē imprōvisō, unexpectedly.

LESSON LXXXIV

IMPERSONAL VERBS

1. Verbs used only in the third person singular are called Impersonal Verbs, as :

pluit, it rains ; *tonat*, it thunders ; *ningit*, it snows.

2. As in the case of other verbs, the infinitive determines the conjugation ; and when the principal parts are learned the whole conjugation should be known. Usually they have no imperative, participles, or supine.

3. Principal Parts:—

CONJ.	PRES. INDIC.	PRES. INFIN.	PERF. INDIC.	
FIRST	<i>constat</i>	<i>constāre</i>	<i>constitit</i>	it is admitted
SECOND	<i>licet</i>	<i>licēre</i>	<i>licuit</i>	it is allowed
THIRD	<i>accidit</i>	<i>accidēre</i>	<i>accidit</i>	it happens
FOURTH	<i>ēvenit</i>	<i>ēvenire</i>	<i>ēvenit</i>	it happens

4.

Indicative

PRES.	<i>constat</i>	<i>licet</i>	<i>accidit</i>	<i>ēvenit</i>
IMPF.	<i>constābat</i>	<i>licēbat</i>	<i>accidēbat</i>	<i>ēveniēbat</i>
FUT.	<i>constābit</i>	<i>licēbit</i>	<i>accidet</i>	<i>ēveniet</i>
PERF.	<i>constitit</i>	<i>licuit</i>	<i>accidit</i>	<i>ēvenit</i>
PLUPF.	<i>constiterat</i>	<i>licuerat</i>	<i>acciderat</i>	<i>ēvēnerat</i>
FUT. PF.	<i>constiterit</i>	<i>licuerit</i>	<i>acciderit</i>	<i>ēvēnerit</i>

Subjunctive

PRES.	<i>constet</i>	<i>liceat</i>	<i>accidat</i>	<i>ēveniat</i>
IMPF.	<i>constāret</i>	<i>licēret</i>	<i>accideret</i>	<i>ēveniret</i>
PERF.	<i>constiterit</i>	<i>licuerit</i>	<i>acciderit</i>	<i>ēvēnerit</i>
PLUPF.	<i>constitisset</i>	<i>licuisset</i>	<i>accidisset</i>	<i>ēvēnisset</i>

Infinitive

PRES.	<i>constāre</i>	<i>licēre</i>	<i>accidere</i>	<i>ēvenire</i>
PERF.	<i>constitisse</i>	<i>licuisse</i>	<i>accidisse</i>	<i>ēvēnisse</i>
FUT.	<i>constātūrum</i>	<i>licitūrum</i>	.....	<i>ēventūrum</i>
	<i>esse</i>	<i>esse</i>		<i>esse</i>

5. Note the Phrase :—

It is admitted by all = *inter omnēs constat.*

May Might

6. Permission—*may, might*—is expressed by *licet, licēre, licuit* = it is allowed.

I may do this.	<i>Hōc mihi facere licet.</i>
I might have done this.	<i>Hōc mihi facere licuit, licēbat.</i>
I may, shall be allowed to, do this.	<i>Hōc mihi facere licēbit.</i>
Others may be cowards.	<i>Aliis esse ignāvis licet.</i>

Observe :—

The infinitive does not change as in English ; the change is in the main verb.

A predicate adjective after *esse* agrees with the word to which it refers.

Ought Should

7. Duty, obligation—*ought, should*—may be expressed in three ways :—

- (a) *dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui, I owe, I ought*, used personally, with Infin.
- (b) *oportet, oportere, oportuit, it behoves*, used impersonally, with Acc. and Infin.
- (c) Most commonly by the Gerundive (Lesson LXXI).

I ought to, should, do this.	{ <i>Hōc facere dēbeō.</i>
	{ <i>Hōc facere mē oportet.</i>
I ought to, should, have done this.	{ <i>Hōc facere dēbui, dēbēbam.</i>
It was my duty to do this.	{ <i>Hōc facere mē oportuit, oportēbat.</i>
I ought to, should, do this (future).	{ <i>Hōc facere dēbēbō.</i>
It will be my duty to do this.	{ <i>Hōc facere mē oportēbit.</i>

Observe :—

The infinitive does not change as in English ; the change is in the main verb.

Must

8. Note that the Gerundive (Lesson LXXI) will translate *ought*, *should*, or *must*, but that *dēbeō* and *oportet* will translate *ought* or *should*, but not *must*.

9. **Necessity**—*must*—may be expressed in two ways:—

(a) By the Gerundive;

(b) By **necesse est** with the Dative and Infinitive.

Hōc facere mihi necesse est. It is necessary for me to do this.

EXERCISE

A

1. Write out a synopsis of *oportet*, *oportēre*, *oportuit*.
2. *Tibi ire licuit. Eī proficisci licet. Eīs ire licēbit.*
3. *Aliis esse ignāvis licet, vōbis necesse est viris fortibus esse.*
4. *Inter omnēs constat Rōmam fuisse caput orbis terrārum.*
5. *Īre debēs. Īre dēbuistī. Īre dēbēbis.*
6. *Sequī possumus. Sequī poterāmus. Sequī poterimus.*

B

1. *Express by the Gerundive:* I ought to do this; I ought to have done this; I ought to do this (future).
2. *Express in three ways:* We ought to go. We ought to have gone. The soldiers ought to have obeyed the general. They ought not to destroy the city.
3. I can go. I may go. I ought to go. I must go.
4. He could have remained. He might have remained. He ought to have remained.
5. You shall be able to be present. You may be present. It shall be your duty to be present.
6. All admit that Caesar was a great general.
7. This man ought to have been put to death.
8. We should have come. You ought to send. All ought to obey the laws.
9. You may not leave the camp. You might have returned.
10. The citizens will not be allowed to speak.

LESSON LXXXV

IMPERSONAL VERBS

VERBS OF FEELING

1. Principal Parts:—

miseret	miserēre	miseruit	it pities
poenitet	poenitēre	poenituit	it repents
piget	pigēre	piguit	it vexes
pudet	pudēre	puduit	it shames
taedet	taedēre	taeduit	it wearies

2. Examine:—

Mē pueri miseret.	I pity the boy.
Hominem stultitiae poenitet.	The man repents of his folly.
Mē mei piget.	I am disgusted with myself.
Puerum ignāviae pudet.	The boy is ashamed of his cowardice.
Mē dubitātiōis taedet.	I am weary of hesitation.

3. Rule:—

Miseret, poenitet, piget, pudet, taedet :

Take the Accus. of the person who feels ;

The Gen. of the cause of the feeling.

4. Interest, interesse, interfuit, *it is of interest.*

Examine:—

Interest omnium.	It is the interest of all.
Meā interest.	It is my interest.

5. Rule:—

Interest takes the Genitive of the person or thing concerned ; but in the case of pronouns, the Abl. Sing. Fem. of the Possessive Adjective is used.

6. Opus est, opus esse, opus fuit, *there is need.*

Examine:—

Opus est mihi auxiliō.	{ There is need to me with help.
	{ I need help.

Rule:—

Opus est, there is need:

Takes the Dative of the person who needs;
The Ablative of the thing needed.

EXERCISE

A

1. Nōne tē stultitiae puduit. Illum vitae taedēbat.
2. Mē tuī miseruit. Eōs pudēbit. Patrem poenituerat.
3. Poenitet nōs hoc fēcisse. Tē pudēbit hōc dixisse.
4. Omnium intererit urbem servārī. Tuā intererat.
5. Dixit suā interesse venire. Nōbis opus est tuō auxiliō.
6. Nōbis armis opūs est. Nōs illius virī miseret.

B

1. I am ashamed of your folly. Have you repented?
2. You have need of friends. It is your interest to go.
3. We repent. We repented. We will repent.
4. Is he ashamed? Was he ashamed? Will he not be ashamed?
5. It was the interest of all the citizens to be saved by the consul.
6. All need your help to-day. They are vexed and wearied.

READING LESSON

Romulus (753-716 B.C.)

Imperium Rōmānum ā Rōmulō exordium habet. Is octōdecim annōs nātus, frātre Rēmō, quod irridens¹ moenia nova transiluit, occisō, urbem exiguam in monte Palatinō constituit. Conditā urbe quam ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, ut civium numerum augēret, multōs quī ex civitātibus suis erant expulsi, recēpit et postea ex senīoribus lēgit centum quōs propter senectūtem appellāvit senātōrēs. Tum, cum novae urbis civibus dēessent uxōrēs, ad lūdōs nātiōnēs urbi Rōmae vicinas invitāvit et Rōmānī eārum virginēs rapuērunt.² Ob hanc rem bellō illātō, oppida finitima Rōmulus superāvit. Annō post urbem conditam tricēsīmō septimō, cum exercitum inspiceret, ortā subitō tempestāte, repente ex oculis hominum est sublātus. Ad deōs eum esse abiātum civēs crēdidērunt.

¹ = in derison, in mockery. ² carried off.

Vocabulary

exordium, i	beginning	senectus, ūtis	old age
irridens, tis	laughing in derision	finitimus, a, um	neighboring
moenia, ium (N.)	walls	rapiō 3 rapui	seize, carry off
transiliō 4 -silui	leap over	raptum	
-sultum		tricēsimus, a, um	thirtieth
exiguus, a, um	small	inspiciō 3 -spexi	look upon,
legō 3 lēgi	choose, select	-spectrum	inspect
lectum		subitō (Adv.)	suddenly
		repente (Adv.)	unexpectedly

LESSON LXXXVI

DATIVE OF PURPOSE DATIVE WITH
COMPOUNDS

1. Examine :—

Malō est hominibus avāritia.	Avarice is for an evil to men. an evil
Quinque cohortēs castris praesidiō reliquit.	He left fivecohorts for a guard to the camp. to guard the camp.
Vēnit nōbis auxiliō.	He came for an aid to us. to aid us.
Gallis magnō erat impedi- mentō.	It was (for) a great hindrance to the Gauls.

2. Rule :—

The Dative is used to denote the Purpose or End, generally with another Dative of the person or thing affected.

3. Examine :—

Labiēnus exercitui praefuit.	Labiēnus was in command of the army. commanded
Caesar Labiēnum exercitui praefecit.	Caesar placed Labiēnus in command of the army.
Consiliis consulis obstat.	He opposes the plans of the consul.

Many verbs compounded with the following prepositions govern the Dative :—

**ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter
ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super**

Intransitive verbs so compounded govern the Dative ;

Transitive verbs so compounded govern the Accusative and Dative.

5. Rōmānī bellum hostibus inferunt. The Romans make war upon the enemy.
Ab Rōmānīs bellum hostibus illātum est. War was made on the enemy by the Romans.

Note:—In the passive, the Acc. of the active becomes the subject; the Dative after the compound remains.

6. Review the compounds of **sum**, Lesson LXXVIII.

Vocabulary

inferō, -ferre, -tuli, illātum	bring against
ob stō, -stāre, -stiti	oppose
prae ficiō, 3, -fēcī, fectum	place in command of
sub veniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum	come to the aid of
bellum inferō	make war upon
bellum indicō	declare war
praesidium, ī	guard, defence
subsidium, ī	support, reinforcement
ūsus, ūs	use, service

EXERCISE

1. Galli finitimis bellum intulērunt.
2. Interdum fortuna nostris consiliis obstat.
3. Caesar lēgātōs legiōnibus praefēcit.
4. Hunc imperātōrem bellō praeficient.
5. Eō diē tibi aderam. Dumnorix equitibus praefuit.

6. Ducī audācia, virtus militibus dēerat.
7. Legiō decima illō proeliō interfuit.
8. Paucī Rōmānī pugnae Cannensi superfuērunt.
9. Consul civitāti multum prōderat.
10. Lēgātus filiō circumventō subvēnit.

B

1. He left the tenth legion to guard the baggage.
2. He sent the cavalry to the support of the infantry.
3. This thing was of great service to our men.
4. Pericles gave his lands as a gift to the state.
5. He will be placed in command of the war.
6. The Germans commenced hostilities against the Gauls.
7. In the consulship of Caesar, war was declared against the Gauls.
8. He was sent to the aid of the Athenians.

LESSON LXXXVII

SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT CLAUSES

1. The following summary contains the kinds of clauses to be considered in studying the uses of the Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses. In some of them the Subjunctive alone is used, in others either the Indicative or Subjunctive.

2. The Rule underlying all uses of the Indicative and Subjunctive is :—

The Indicative is used in stating *facts*; the Subjunctive makes assertions, not as *facts*, but as *conceptions* present to the speaker's mind.

3	KIND OF CLAUSE	MOOD USED
(1)	Final Clauses	Subj.
(2)	Indirect Questions	Subj.
(3)	Consecutive Clauses	Subj.
(4)	Clauses of Characteristic	Subj.

(5) Substantive Clauses—

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) of Purpose | Subj. |
| (b) with Verbs of Fearing | Subj. |
| (c) of Result | Subj. |
| (d) with <i>quod</i> | Indic. |
| (6) Clauses with <i>quā</i> and <i>quōminus</i> | Subj. |
| (7) Conditional Clauses | Indic. and Subj. |
| (8) Causal Clauses | Indic. and Subj. |
| (9) Concessive Clauses | Indic. and Subj. |
| (10) Clauses of Comparison | Indic. and Subj. |
| (11) Temporal Clauses | Indic. and Subj. |
| (12) Indirect Narration or
<i>Oratio Obliqua</i> | { Acc. with Infin., and Subj.
{ (Indic. occasionally) |

READING LESSON

Numa Pompilius (B.C. 715-672)

(The second king of Rome. He established laws and religious rites.)

Mortuō Rōmulō, senātus primō ut ipse imperium habēret rēgem novum fieri nōlēbat. Sed cum ūnus annus hōc modō¹ transisset, populus postulāvit ut rēx fieret. Itaque Numa Pompilius, homō sapientissimus, est lectus. Is bellum quidem nūllum gessit sed nōn minus civitāti quam Rōmulus prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs mōrēsque Rōmānis constituit et annum dēscripsit in decem mensēs et templa Rōmae permulta² aedificāvit.

Vocabulary

primō	at first	quidem	indeed, it is true
modus, I	manner	dēscribō	divide, map out
postulō I	demand	mensis, is	month

¹ Abl. of Manner.

² The force of *per* is very.

LESSON LXXXVIII

FINAL CLAUSES

ut, nē, quō

1. Recapitulatory (Lesson LXXV):—

ut = not ; nē = that . . . not, or lest.

Pres. Subj. is used after Primary Tenses ;

Impf. Subj. is used after Historical Tenses.

Do not use the infinitive in Latin to express purpose.

2. The Relative Pronoun **quī** (called **quī Final**) is often used like **ut** to express purpose :—

Lēgātōs misit	quī pācem peterent
He sent ambassadors	{ who should seek peace
	{ to sue for peace

A Relative Adverb—**ubi**, *where* ; **unde**, *whence* ; **quō**, *whither*—may be used in the same way to express purpose :

Nōn habēbant quō sē reciperent.

They had not whither they might betake themselves=

They had no place to betake themselves to.

3. There are in all eight ways of expressing purpose in Latin :

He sent ambassadors . . . to sue for peace.

Lēgātōs misit	quī pācem peterent.	(Rel. with Subj.)
	ut pācem peterent.	(ut with Subj.)
	ad pācem petendam.	(Gerundive)
	pācis petendae causā.	(Gerundive)
	pācem petitum.	(Supine)
	pācem petitūrōs.	(Fut. Part., rare)

In the necessary cases (page 185, 6) the Gerund would be substituted for the Gerundive :

. . . to persuade the enemy.

ad hostibus persuādendum.**hostibus persuādendi causā.**

He sent soldiers . . . to plunder = for the purpose of plundering.

ad praedandum.**praedandi causā.**

4. **quō = by which, whereby**

Militibus praemia prōmisit He promised rewards to the soldiers
quō fortius pugnārent. that they might fight more bravely.

Rule :—

Use **quō** for **ut** when a comparative follows.

5. **Examine :—**

Porta clausa est nē The gate was shut that no one might go out.
quis exiret. to prevent anyone going out.

Abiī nē quid vidērem. I went away that I might not see anything.
 that I might see nothing.
 to avoid seeing anything.

In Final clauses—that...not = **nē**
 that...nobody **nē quis**
 that...nothing **nē quid**
 that...no **nē ūllus**
 that...never **nē unquam**

When a second final clause is added, it is introduced by **nēve** or **neu** :
Abiībō nē eum videam nēve audiam. I shall go away that I may not
 see nor hear him.

EXERCISE

A

1. **Hōc factum est nē quis ex civitāte pellerētur.**
2. **Captivōs omnēs interfici jussit quō celerius iter faceret.**
3. **Civēs fortissimē pugnāvērunt nē urbs caperētur neu quis interficerētur.**
4. **Sē interfēcit nē patriam ēversam unquam vidēret.**
5. **Ad urbem statim redibit nē absens condemnētur.**
6. **Nōn aliās nāvēs habēbant quibus domum nāvigārent.**
7. **Suōs in castris tōtam diem continuit nē quis rem hostibus nuntiāret.**
8. **Multa mentitus est quō jūnior viderētur.**
9. **Hominēs vivus laudāvit ut ab eis mortuus laudārētur.**
10. **Hōc proeliō factō, ut reliquās cōpiās Rēmōrum sequi posset, pontem in flūmine faciendum curāvit atque ita exercitum trādūxit.**

B

1. Translate in all possible ways:—

- (a) He sent soldiers to storm the camp.
 - (b) He will send cavalry across the river to plunder.
 - (c) They said he ought to have returned to the city to see his friends.
2. Caesar sent the cavalry to pursue those who had fled.
 3. To avoid being killed the ambassadors remained in camp.
 4. We will set out in the morning that we may reach the city before night.
 5. He will return in the night that no one may see him.
 6. Since the woods were burned down, the enemy had no place to betake themselves to.
 7. That he might cross the river more easily, he sent two thousand cavalry to build a bridge.
 8. We shall carry on the war by land and sea that we may the more quickly force the enemy to surrender.
 9. To ascertain these things, he sent his lieutenant ahead with a warship.

LESSON LXXXIX

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

ADAPTATION

1. Recapitulatory (Lesson LXXVI):—

An Indirect Question requires the Subjunctive.

The Rule for Sequence of Tenses is observed but in general the English is a sufficient guide.

2. Examine:—

Quot essent hostēs rogāvit.	He asked how many the enemy were. the number of the enemy.
Eis diximus quō irēmus.	We told them whither we were going our destination.

EXERCISE

Adapt to Indirect Question construction and translate :—

1. I tell you the nature of the danger.
2. He sent scouts to ascertain the number of the enemy's ships.
3. Can you tell us the date of his departure from home?
4. We have learned the reason for his return.
5. He wishes to know the number and size of the harbors.
6. You see the kind of man he is and his manner of life in old age.
7. We shall never know the manner of his death.
8. They cannot tell us the size of the river.
9. Cavalry were sent to ascertain the location of the enemy's camp.
10. He pointed out the ease with which the Romans might march across the mountains and gain possession of the city.
11. We wish to tell you our opinion about the matter.

READING LESSON

Tullus Hostilius (B.C. 672-640)

Famous fight between the Horatii and Curiatii

Post Numae mortem interrēx rursus est factus sed brevī¹ postea Tullus Hostilius, civis Rōmānus, atque vir bellicōsissimus rēx est creātus. Eō regnante bellum inter Albānōs et Rōmānōs exortum est. Ducibus Hostiliō et Fūfetiō placuit rem paucōrum certāmine finiri. Forte erant tum in exercitū utrōque trigeminī² neque aetate neque viribus imparēs. Frātrēs Rōmānī vocāti sunt Horātii, Albānī Cūriātii. Cum eis agunt rēgēs ut prō suā quisque patriā dimicent ferrō.³ Foedus ictum est eā lēge, ut,⁴ unde victōria, ibi imperium esset.

Vocabulary

interrēx, rēgis	interrex	agō	arrange
exorior	start up, arise	foedus, eris (N)	treaty
finiō 4	finish, end	icō 3 icī ictum	strike
forte	by chance		

¹Sc. tempore. ²Three brothers born at a birth. ³Iron=sword. ⁴on this condition, that.

LESSON XC

CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES

1. Recapitulatory (Lesson LXXVII):—

In Consecutive clauses, *ut* = that ; *ut...non* = that . . not.

The English is a sufficient guide for the tense of the Subjunctive that is to be used—Present, Imperfect or Perfect.

2. The Relative Pronoun *quī* (called *quī Consecutive*) is sometimes used to express result :

Nēmō tam audax est quī hōc faciat. No one is so bold as to do this.

3. Examine :—

Tālis erat ut nēmō eī crēderet. He was of such a character that no one believed him.

In Consecutive clauses—that...not	= <i>ut nōn</i>
that...nobody	<i>ut nēmō</i>
that... nothing	<i>ut nihil</i>
that, no	<i>ut nūllus</i>
that...never	<i>ut nunquam</i>
nor, and not	<i>neque</i>

4. Distinguish :—

Celeriter prōgressi sunt ut castris potirentur. *Final Clause*

They advanced quickly that they might get possession of the camp.

Tam celeriter prōgressi sunt ut castris potirentur. *Consecutive Clause*

They advanced so quickly that they got possession of the camp.

EXERCISE

1. The enemy were so cruel that they did not spare even the women and children.
2. I returned home that I might save the state, but so numerous were the enemy that I was not able even to defend the city.
3. Our men advanced with such speed that no opportunity was given the enemy to take up arms.
4. So terrified were the Germans that they threw away their arms.
5. The walls were so high that the city was not taken nor was anyone killed.

6. So many ships were lost that the army could not be transported before winter.
7. They left the tenth legion to defend the baggage so that they might advance more quickly.
8. So great was the storm that many perished in the sea.

LESSON XCI

CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

I. Compare :—

- Nōn is sum quī hōc fēcī.** I am not the man who did it.
Nōn is sum quī hōc faciam. I am not the man { who would do this.
 { to do this.

The relative clause with the Indic. makes a statement of fact about an antecedent which the relative directly represents.

The relative with the Subj. characterizes a class of persons implied in the antecedent, which the relative represents as a class.

Such a relative clause with the Subj. is called a *Clause of Characteristic*. In such a clause the relative means 'of such a kind as to' and the Subj. is closely allied to the Subj. in Consecutive clauses.

2. Quī is similarly used with the Subj.:—

- (a) After **dignus**, **indignus** and **idōneus**.

Dignus est quī amētur. He is worthy to be loved.

- (b) After **quam** with a comparative.

Facta eōrum mājōra sunt quam quae dici possint

Their deeds are { greater than which are able to be told.
 { too great to be told.

3. Note :—

sunt quī = there are some who
erant quī = there were some who

EXERCISE

A

1. Sunt qui putent mē fuisse crudeliōrem consulem.
2. Erant qui dicerent eum interfici oportuisse.
3. Quis est qui putet hōc esse vērū?
4. Idōneus est quem mirēmur.
5. Nōn erat idōneus qui rēx fieret.
6. Lapidēs mājorēs sunt quam qui movēri possint.

B

1. There are some who believe that he will leave the city.
2. There is no one who believes that he will remain.
3. He is not the man to tell a falsehood.
4. They are not the men to be terrified by danger.
5. There was no one who would dare to defend him.
6. Who is there to whom these temples are not dear?

READING LESSON

Fight between the Horatii and Curiatii

Ictō foedere, trigeminī arma capiunt et in medium inter duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Consēderant utrimque prō castris duo exercitūs. Datur signum infestisque armis juvenēs concurrunt. Ut¹ primō concursū increpuēre² arma micantēsque³ fulsere⁴ gladii, horror ingens spectantēs perstringit. Diū et ācriter pugnātum est et tandem quo Horātiī, multis vulneribus acceptis, alius super alium mortuū ceciderunt; et Cūriātiī omnēs graviter sunt vulnerāti. Exercitus Albānus, cum hōc perspexisset, gaudiō conclāmāvit; jam omnis spēs legiōnēs Rōmānās dēseruerat quo⁵ Horātium ūnum trēs Cūriātiī circumsteterant. Is vērō adhuc integer⁶ fuit, nequāquam tamen sōlus pār universis.⁵ Dolō igitur ūsus, ut hostēs distraheret, fugere coepit. Quam celerrimē sequuntur Albāni.

¹ ut meaning as or when takes the Indic. ² 3rd pl. perf. indic. ³ Used as an adj., gleaming. ⁴ whole = without a scratch. ⁵ for all together.

Vocabulary

medium, ī (sc. spatium)	the middle	perstringō 3 -strinxi -strictum	move deeply
consido 3 -sēdi -sessum	sit down to- gether, encamp	super (Prep. governs Acc.)	over, after
utrimque	on either side	perspiciō 3 -spexi -spectum	observe, per- ceive
concurrō 3 -curri -cursum	run together, rush together	con clāmō 1	shout together
conkursus, ūs	charge, assault	adhuc	as yet
increpō 1 -crepui -crepitum	clash	nequāquam	by no means
micō 1 micui	gleam	dis trahō	separate, divide
fulgeo 2 fulsi	flash		
horror, ōris	fear, dread		

LESSON XCII

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

Substantive Clauses of Purpose or Indirect Commands

I. Examine:—

Tē rogat	He asks you	ut hōc faciās	{ that you do this to do this
Tibi imperat	He commands you		
Tē monet	He advises you	nē hōc faciās	{ that you do not this not to do this
Tibi persuādet	He persuades you		
Tē hortātur	He exhorts you		
Tē rogāvit	He asked you	ut hōc facerēs	{ that you should do this to do this
Tibi imperāvit	He commanded you		
Tē monuit	He advised you	nē hōc facerēs	{ that you should not do this not to do this
Tibi persuāsīt	He persuaded you		
Tē hortātus est	He exhorted you		

2. Rule:—Such verbs as *ask, command, advise, warn, exhort, persuade, take ut* or *nē* with the Subjunctive to translate the English infinitive.

3. Rule for Tense:—The same as for Final clauses. Sequence is observed. Only two tenses are used.

Present Subj. for Primary Sequence ;

Impf. Subj. for Historical Sequence.

4. The following verbs take this construction :—

<i>ōrō</i> I ; <i>rogō</i> I ; <i>petō</i> (ab)	ask, beg
<i>optō</i> I ; <i>precor</i> I (ab)	pray, intreat
<i>postulō</i> I	demand
<i>moneō</i> ; <i>admoneō</i>	advise, warn
<i>hortor</i> ; <i>adhortor</i>	urge, exhort
<i>suādeō</i> ; <i>persuādeō</i> (Dat.)	urge, persuade
<i>imperō</i> ; <i>mandō</i> I ;	command ; commission ;
<i>praecipiō</i> ; <i>ēdicō</i> }	give instructions ; announce

All govern Dat.

5. Exceptions :—

jubeō, order, and vetō, forbid, take the Acc. and the Infin. (See page 165, 5 (e); 166, Obs.)

6. Observe :—

Caesar in Italiam redire statuit. Caesar decided to return to Italy.
Caesar statuit ut legiōnēs redirent. Caesar decided that the legions should return.

7. Rule :—

statuō, decide, constituō, decide, dēcernō, decree, take the Infin. when the action of the Infin. refers to the subject of the main verb ; otherwise they take ut or nē with the Subj. (Sequence as above).

8. Note the phrases :—

id agō ut = I make it my aim to
operam dō ut = I take pains to

EXERCISE

A

1. Mē ōrābit ut sēcum eam. Tē ōrābat ut sēcum irēs.
2. Eum rogāvit ut mihi monstrāret ubi librum posuisset.
3. Moneō tē nē hōc faciās. Monuistī mē nē hōc facerem.
4. Militēs hortatus est ut fortiter pugnārent.
5. Ā Caesare petivērunt nē castra propius sē movēret.
6. Eum monet ut iter cautē faciat nē ab hostibus videātur.
7. Finitimis persuāsērunt ut sēcum proficiscerentur.
8. Mandat ei ut ad sē quam celerrimē redeat et quae apud hostēs gerantur nuntiet.
9. Monitus est nē Gallis confideret nēve prope castra eōrum viderētur.
10. Eōs hortāmur nē tantam suī liberandī occasiōnem omittant.
11. Opus statim conficere statuit. Dēcrēvit ut hic homō interficerētur.
12. Constituit sibi diūtius non dubitandum esse.

B

1. He persuades him not to go. He has warned him not to come.
2. He will persuade him not to go. He had warned him not to come.
3. They will send messengers to entreat him not to advance further.
4. He was warned not to land from the ship.
5. Caesar demanded that they surrender their arms and set out for home.
6. They will ask him to give them three days' time to assemble forces.
7. We determined to stay at home on that day.
8. He made it his aim to raise an army.
9. We took pains to learn the plans of the enemy.

READING LESSON

The Fight between the Horatii and Curiatii

(CONTINUED)

Cum jam aliquantum¹ spatii² ex eō locō, ubi pugnātum est, aufūgiasset, respiciens videt ūnum ē Cūriātiis haud procul ab sēsē³ abesse. In eum magnō impetū redit, et dum exercitus Albānus inclāmat Cūriātiis ut opem ferant frātri, jam Horātius ūnum hostem occiderat et alterum petit.⁴ Tum Rōmāni, clāmōre sublātō, militem suum adhortantur et pugnā dēfungi⁵ festinat. Mox alter Cūriātius, qui nōn procul abest, interficitur; et jam duo sōli ex sex supersunt, nec spē nec viribus parēs. Horātius gladiō Cūriātium aegrē arma sustentem conficit,⁶ et jacentem spoliāt. Rōmāni ovantēs⁷ ac grātulantēs⁷ Horātium accipiunt et domum dēducunt.

Vocabulary

aliquantus, a, um	some, considerable	jaceō 2 jacui	lie
re spiciō	look back	spoliō 1	strip, despoil
haud (adv.)	not (used before adjs. and advs.)	ovō -āre	exult
in clāmō	call out to	grātulor 1	rejoice, congratulate
ad hortor	urge on	dē dūcō	escort

¹Neut. of the adj. used as a subst. ²Part. Gen.; something of distance=some distance. ³Strong form for simple sē. ⁴is making for. ⁵Compound of fungor governs the Abl. to finish. ⁶puts an end to. ⁷Translate freely.

LESSON XCIII

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

With Verbs of Fearing

I. Examine:—

Vereor nē veniat.

I fear (that) he will come.

Vereor ut veniat.

I fear (that) he will not come.

Veritus sum nē veniret.

I feared (that) he would come.

Veritus sum ut veniret.

I feared (that) he would not come.

Vereor ut reditūrus sit.

I am afraid he is not likely to come.

2. Rule:—

With verbs of fearing **nē** = *that, or lest*;
ut = *that . . . not*

Sequence of Tenses is observed.

Two tenses only—Pres. and Impf.—are in general required.

3. Note the various ways of translating the subjunctive in the dependent clause:—

Vereor nē veniat. I fear that he is coming, will come, or may come.

Veritus sum nē veniret. I feared that he was coming, would come, or might come.

4. Principal Parts:—

vereor, verēri, veritus sum	} I fear
timeō, -ēre, -ui	
metuō, -ēre, ui, -ūtum	} I am afraid
periculum est	
	There is a danger

EXERCISE

A

1. Vereor ut hōc faciat. Verēbar nē hōc faceret.
2. Timui ut puer domum rediret. Timeō nē pueri domum redeant.
3. Metuērunt nē hanc rem hostibus dicerent.
4. Veriti sunt ut satis frūmenti habērent.
5. Timeō ut posterō diē proficisci possitis.
6. Metuimus nē militēs urbem hostibus dēderent.
7. Pater meus est veritus ut domum ante vesperum redīrem.
8. Periculum erat ut nostrī barbarōs flūmen transire prohibēre possent.

B

1. I am afraid that he will not be able to return.
2. We were afraid that the boy would not do this.
3. We all feared that he would inform the enemy about our plans.
4. I am afraid that they will not be able to defeat the enemy.
5. The man was afraid that his son would die.

6. We were afraid that all would not be able to return to camp.
7. There was the greatest danger that the enemy might seize the boats and cross the river in the night.
8. The citizens were afraid that the consuls would be defeated and that the enemy would immediately assault the city.

LESSON XCIV

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT
CLAUSES WITH QUOD

1. Substantive Clauses of Result occur with :—

(a) *faciō* and its compounds, *efficiō*, *conficiō*, *perficiō*, do, accomplish ; *impetrō*, I, I obtain a request.

Efficiēbat ut commeātus portārī posset. He brought it about that supplies could be brought.

Impetrāvit ut sibi parcerētur. He obtained his request to be spared.

(b) Impersonal verbs and phrases :

<i>accidit, ēvenit, contingit</i>	it happens
<i>accēdit</i>	it is added
<i>sequitur</i>	it follows
<i>ferī potest</i>	it may be
<i>nullō modō ferī potest</i>	it is quite impossible
<i>tantum abest ut . . . ut</i>	so far from . . . that
<i>ex quō factum est</i>	the result of this was

Accidit ut nēmō adesset. It happened that no one was present.

Ferī potest ut errēmus. It is possible that we are mistaken.

Tantum abest ut eum culpem ut etiam laudem. So far am I from blaming him that I even commend him.

2. Quod Clauses with Indic.

Quod Regulus rediit, nobis mirābile vidētur. That Regulus returned seems wonderful to us.

Note that the statement in the *quod* clause with indic. is regarded as a fact.

quod = that, the fact that

EXERCISE

A

1. Magnum est hōc, quōd victor victis pepercit.
2. Quod tū incolumis domum rediisti, mihi grātum est.
3. Opportūnissima rēs accidit quod postridiē Germānī in castra venērunt.
4. Accidit ut esset lūna plēna.
5. A Sequānis impetrat ut per finēs suōs ire Helvetiōs patiantur.
6. A Caesare nōn impetrāre poterant ut discēderent.
7. Ex quō factum est ut multae civitatēs Caesari sē dēderent.
8. Tantum aberat ut hōc impetrāret ut statim castris excēdere cōgerētur.

B

1. The fact that you betrayed your country is enough.
2. It happened that we were absent.
3. They obtained their request to remain in the camp.
4. The result of this was that he was condemned by the senate.
5. So far are we from admiring this man that we think he ought to be banished.
6. The result of this was that they could not so easily make war on their neighbors.
7. I succeeded in having the man liberated (I brought it to pass that the man was freed).
8. Shall we not obtain our request to give hostages !

READING LESSON

The Death of Servius Tullius

Serviō Tulliō, quī erat sextus Rōmānōrum rēx, erant filiae duae, altera ferōx, mitis altera; Tarquiniō Priscō, quī ante Servium regnāverat, erant duo filiī parī animō.¹ Servius ferōcem filiam filiō miti, mitem ferōci in mātrimonium dedit, nē duo violenta ingenia mātrimonio jungerentur. Sed filia ferōx verita ut, patre mortuō, conjunx suus imperiō potirētur, et patrem et conjugem occidere constituit. Paulō post mitēs, Tulliae conjunx et uxor Lūcii, seu forte seu fraude periērunt; ferōcēs mōrum similitūdō conjunxit. Statim Tullia Lūciō persuādet² ut patrem occideret quō ipse citius regnō potirētur. Ita ab uxōre ferōci incitātus effecit ut sē senātus regem salūtāret. Quā rē auditā, quam celerrimē ad cūriam Servius

estināvit; sed cum cūrian iniret, a Lūciō crūdēlissimē comprehensus gradibus est dējectus et domum vulnerātus refugiens est interfectus. Tullia, filia ferōx, carpentō vecta² in forum properāvit et conjugem prima rēgem salūtāvit. Postea cum ē turbā et tumultū dēcessisset et domum rediret corpus patris vidit et mūliōnem cunctantem et frēna inhibentem super ipsum corpus carpentum agere⁴ jussit. Ex quō factum est ut ea via appellārētur Scelerāta.⁵

Vocabulary

violentus, a, um	violent	salūtō I	salute
ingenium, i	nature,	gradus, ūs	step
	disposition	carpentum, i	carriage
jungō 3 junxi	join	turba, ae	crowd
junctum		tumultus, ūs	rising, tumult
similitūdō, inis	likeness :	mūliō, ōnis	(mule-) driver
citō	soon, quickly	frēnum, i	rein, bridle
incitō I	instigate	in hibeō	hold in, draw in

¹ Abl. of Description, of like disposition.
sequence. ² carried = riding. ⁴ to drive.

³ Historic Present. It may take either
⁵ Via Scelerāta, the Wicked Street.



DEATH OF SERVIUS TULLIUS

LESSON XCV

CLAUSES WITH QUIN AND QUOMINUS

Quin

1. **Quin**=**quī** (old form of Abl. **quō**) + **nē** (**nōn**)=whereby not, that by it not ; or in some cases=**quī** (**quae**, **quod**) **nōn**.

Uses of Quin

2. **Quin** may denote Negative Result = **ut nōn** :

Nēmō est tam fortis quin perturbētur.

No one is so brave as not to be disturbed.

3. **Quin** may introduce a Clause of Characteristic :
— **quī** (**quae**, **quod**) **nōn**.

Nēmō est quin crēdat.

There is no one but believes.

4. **Quin** may introduce a Substantive Clause :

(a) With verbs and phrases of *doubting* and *omitting* :

Nōn est dubium quin hōc facere possint.

There is no doubt that they are able to do this.

Nec multum abfuit quin omnēs interficerēmur.

{ Nor was much wanting but that we were all killed.
And we were very near being all killed.

(b) With verbs of *hindering*, *preventing*, *opposing* :

Retinērī nōn poterant quin tēla conjicerent.

They could not be restrained from hurling their darts.

5. **Quin** requires that the principal verb or phrase must be negative or virtual negative.

6. Words and phrases followed by **Quin** :—

nēmō est quin

nōn dubitō quin

nōn est dubium quin

negārī nōn potest quin

facere nōn possum quin

there is no one but

I do not doubt that

there is no doubt that

it cannot be denied that

I cannot help ; I cannot but

feri non potest quin	} used impersonally {	it cannot be but that
minimum abesse		to be very near
haud multum abesse		to be within a very little
nihil praetermittō quin		I leave nothing undone to
temperāre mihi nōn possum quin		{ I cannot control myself but
		{ I cannot refrain from

7. Note:—

dubitō may also take the Infin :

Hōc facere nōn dubitat. He does not hesitate to do this.

Quōminus

8. Quōminus = quō minus = ut eō minus, by which the less, that by it the less.

9. Quōminus is used with verbs and phrases of *preventing, hindering, opposing*, in Substantive Clauses akin to final clauses:—

Nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quōminus	The ships were prevented by the
in portum pervenirent.	wind from reaching the harbor.
Per tē stetit quōminus ad urbem	It was owing to you that I did not
redirem.	return to the city.
Quid obstat quōminus hōc faciā-	What prevents us from doing
mus?	this?

10. The verb or phrase is generally negative or virtual negative.

EXERCISE

A

1. Negārī nōn potest quin mentiri sit turpe.
2. Nōn dubitō quin Rōmam itūrus sit.
3. Facere nōn possum quin litterās ad tē mittam.
4. Fieri nōn potest quin Crassō subveniam.
5. Quis dubitat quin hōc vērū sit?
6. Nōn erat dubium quin domum ventūrus esset.
7. Nunquam eum audīvī quin laudārem.
8. Nēmō est quin sciat eum multa mentitū esse.
9. Nēmō est quin hōc saepe audierit.
10. Dubitandum esse nōn existimāvit quin proficiacerēt.
11. Nōn cunctandum existimāvit quin cum Germānis pugnāret.
12. Neque multum abfuit quin nostrī castris expellerentur.

B

1. There is no doubt that the Belgae are the bravest of all the Gauls.
2. They were very near being all taken prisoners.
3. Nothing prevents you from doing this (use *quōminus*).
4. There is no doubt that he intends to set out at once.
5. Who doubts that it is better for us to die free than to live slaves.
6. The ships were within a very little of being all built.
7. There is no one but believes that he was put to death.
8. You were the cause of our not winning the day (use *quōminus*).
9. I cannot help admiring this citizen.
10. They could not be prevented from setting out (use *quōminus*).

LESSON XCVI

CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

- I. A Conditional Sentence consists of two parts :

If he says so, he is wrong.

These two parts are :

- (a) The if-clause, containing the *condition*, called the *Protasis* ;
- (b) The main clause, containing the *conclusion*, called the *Apodosis*.

2. The Conditional Clause is introduced by
si, if ; *nisi*, unless ; *si nōn*, *si minus*, if not ; or *sin*, but if.

3. Conditional Clauses are of the following types :—

1. SIMPLE	PRESENT	<i>Si habet, dat.</i> If he has, he gives.	<i>Pres. Indic. in both.</i>
	PAST	<i>Si habuit, dedit.</i> If he had, he gave.	<i>Perf. Indic. in both.</i>
2. FUTURE MORE VIVID		<i>Si habēbit, dabit,</i> If he has (= shall have), he will give.	<i>Fut. Indic. in both.</i>
		<i>Si viderit, vidēbit.</i> If he comes (= shall have come), he will see	<i>Fut. Pf. and Fut. Indic.</i>

3. FUTURE LESS
VIVID**Sī habeat, det.***Pres. Subj. in both.*If he should (were to)
have, he would give.4. CONTRARY
TO FACT{ PRESENT
PAST**Sī habēret, daret.***Impf. Subj. in both.*

If he had, he would give.

Sī habuisset, dedisset.*Plupf. Subj. in both.*If he had had, he would
have given.**Sī hōc fēcisset, viveret.** *Plupf. and Impf.*If he had done this, *Subj.*
he would now be alive.

Note :—Latin is very exact in its use of the proper tense ;
The present tense in English is sometimes used to represent
the future or future perfect in Latin.

Note :—If any = **sī quis** ; unless any = **nisi quis**.

See page 149, 4, **Quis**.

EXERCISE

A

1. **Sī hōc dicis, errās. Sī hōc dicēs, errābis. Sī hōc dicerēs, errārēs.**
2. **Sī id rogābis, respondēbō. Sī hōc rogēs, respondeam.**
3. **Sī epistolam mīssissēs, accēpissēm. Sī epistolam mīstisti, accēpī.**
4. **Sī domum redībis, mē vidēbis. Sī in urbem irem, eum vidērem.**
5. **Nisi tē in numerō amīcōrum habērem, tibi nōn scriberem.**
6. **Sī Caesar exercitui praeuisset, nōn victi essemus.**
7. **Illi sī haec fēcissent, viverent.**
8. **Militēs sī fortius pugnāvissent, liberī hodiē essent.**
9. **Veniam, si poterō. Sī voluissēs, ad mē vēnissēs.**

B

1. If you come to-day, I shall see you. If you were to come, I should see you.
2. The cavalry would not have returned, if the army had conquered.
3. If the enemy should cross the river, Caesar would attack them.
4. Come to me to-morrow, if you can.¹ Let us go,² if we may.

5. The whole army would have been destroyed, if the enemy had pursued.
6. Unless you come to my aid, I shall be captured.
7. If he were unwilling, we would not go. If he should be unwilling, we would not go.
8. If anyone should say so, he would not be listened to³ by anyone.
9. If you were to ask me that, I should answer nothing.
10. If the enemy had been routed yesterday, the state would now be free.
11. Unless you send a guide within five days, we shall set out ourselves.
12. If you wish, set out at once. If you were willing, you would set out.

¹ What tense in Latin? ² An independent subj. may take the place of the indic. in the apodosis. ³ Use *audiō*.

READING LESSON

A well deserved Rebuke

Cum Scipiō Nasica ad poētam Ennium vēnisset, eique ab ostiō quaerenti Ennium, ancilla dixisset, domi nōn esse, Nasica sensit, illam domini jussū dixisse, et illum intus esse. Paucis post diēbus, cum ad Nasicam vēnisset Ennius, et eum ā januā¹ quaereret, exclāmat Nasica, sē domi nōn esse; tum Ennius, 'Quid? ego nōn cognoscō vōcem' inquit 'tuam'? Hic Nasica: 'Homō es impudens; ego cum tē quaererem, ancillae tuae crēdidī, tē domi nōn esse: tū mihi nōn crēdis ipsi.'

Vocabulary

ostium, i	door	janua, ae	gate, door
quaerō	ask for	quid? (exclamation)	What?
ancilla, ae	maid-servant	cognoscō	recognise
jussū	by order of	hic	hereupon
intus	within, in the house	impudens, tis	shameless

¹ ostium, the inner door; janua, the outer, or porch door

LESSON XCVII

CAUSAL CLAUSES

Quod, quia, because : quōniam, since

1. **Examine :—**

- (a) **Principēs sēcum dūxit quod mōtum Galliae verēbātur.**
He took the chiefs with him because he feared a rising of Gaul.
- (b) **Sōcrates accusātus est quod corumpēret iuventūtem.**
Socrates was accused because (as his accusers said) he corrupted the young men.

2. **Rule :—**

Quod, quia, because ; quōniam, since :—

Take the Indic. when they state the reason as that of the writer or speaker ;

They take the Subj. when they state the reason as that of another.

3. **Review Lesson LXXVII, 3**

Cum causal, meaning *since*, takes the Subj.

NOTE.—**Quae cum ita sint**=since this is the case.

4. **Examine :—**

Tē laudō, quī hōc faciās. I praise you because (in that) you do this.

The Relative pronoun **quī** (called **quī Causal**) often introduces a Causal clause = *inasmuch as he, you, I, etc.*

5. **Oratio Recta and Oratio Obliqua**

Oratio Recta (Direct Narration) is the name given to the form of the sentence when the speaker's own words are quoted :—

'Veniam' inquit Cāius.

'I will come,' says Caius.

All indirect reporting, whether of speech or thought, is called *Oratio Obliqua* (Indirect Narration).

Caius dixit, or putāvit sē ventūrum esse.

Caius said, or thought that he would come.

Oratio Recta is generally introduced by *inquit*, used parenthetically, after one or more words: *Oratio Obliqua* by *dixit* or some equivalent.

6. Examine: --

Caesar questus est quod sine causā bellum intulissent.

Caesar complained that they had made war without a cause.

Observe that in this sentence as in 1, (b) the causal clause represents the thought or speech of another, though a direct introducing verb, such as 'he thought' or 'he said' is not used. Such a clause is said to be in *Virtual Oratio Obliqua*.

Thus *Virtual Oratio Obliqua* is another name for Causal Subjunctive.

Summary

quod, quia = because } Indic. or

quoniam = since } Subj. = V.O.O.

cum = because, whereas, seeing that, inasmuch as } Subj.

quī Causal, because he, inasmuch as he, etc. } Subj.

EXERCISE

A

1. Cum ipse prō sē dicere nōn posset, frāter dixit.
2. Quoniam ille ad Galliam profectus est. nōn vidēbō.
3. Quod agrōs suōs dēfendere nōn poterant, auxilium ā nōbis petiērunt.
4. Hominem ōdimus, quī patriam prōdiderit.
5. Quae cum ita sint, arma prō patriā capite.
6. Tum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset, concursāre.¹
7. At Cotta, quī cogitasset haec posse in itinere accidere, nullā in rē communi salūti dēerat.
8. Eum interficī Caesar jubet, nihil hunc, sē absente, prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglexisset.²

B

1. Then Caesar inasmuch as he had learned all these things, determined to return.
2. Dumnorix wished to remain in Gaul because being unused to sailing he was (as he said)⁴ afraid of the sea.
3. The Aedui thanked Caesar because he had freed them from danger.
4. I commended you for speaking⁵ the truth.
5. The father blamed his son for not writing oftener.

¹Historical Infinitive, i.e., an infin. used for a past tense indic. **concurso**, I, *bustle about*. ²*Inasmuch as he*. ³**neglego**, 3, **glexi**, **glectum**, *disregard*. ⁴Omit these words in Latin. ⁵=in that you spoke, Causal Rel.; or =because you spoke.

LESSON XCVIII

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

1. A Concessive Clause is one in which an admission is made to a statement in the principal clause. Such a clause is usually introduced in English by *although*, or *though*.

2. Examine:—

- | | |
|--|--|
| (a) Quamquam est fortis, nōnunquam timet. | Though he is brave, he sometimes is afraid. |
| (b) Quamvis molestus sit, est tamen benignus. | However troublesome he may be, yet he is kind. |

In (a) the concessive clause makes a statement as a fact.

In (b) the concessive clause makes a statement merely hypothetical, as a conception of the mind.

3. Rule:—

Concessive Clauses take the *Indic.* when they state a *fact*;

They take the *Subj.* when they state a mere *conception of the mind*.

4. *Etsi hiems ācris est, est jūcunda.* Though the winter is keen, it is pleasant.
Etiam si tibi dixissem, nōn mihi crēdidissēs. Even if I had told you, you would not have believed me.

The last sentence is in the nature of a conditional sentence and follows the same rule.

Summary of Rules

- (1) *quamquam, etsi* and *tametsi* *although*, introducing an admitted fact, take the Indic.
- (2) *etsi, etiam si, tametsi* = *even if*, follow the rules for Conditional clauses.
- (3) *quavis* (however you wish), *licet* (it is allowed), *ut* (granted that) = *although*, introduce merely hypothetical clauses and take the Subj.

Note :—

Cum, although, and the Relative pronoun, *quī, though he* (Concessive Relative), sometimes introduce a concessive clause and take the Subj.

Clauses of Wish or Proviso

5. Examine :—

- Oderint dum metuant.* Let them hate, provided (if only) they fear.
Manent ingenia. modo permaneat industria. Mental powers remain, if only industry remains.

Dum, modo, dummodo, provided, if only, on condition that, are used to introduce a clause of 'Wish' or 'Proviso.'

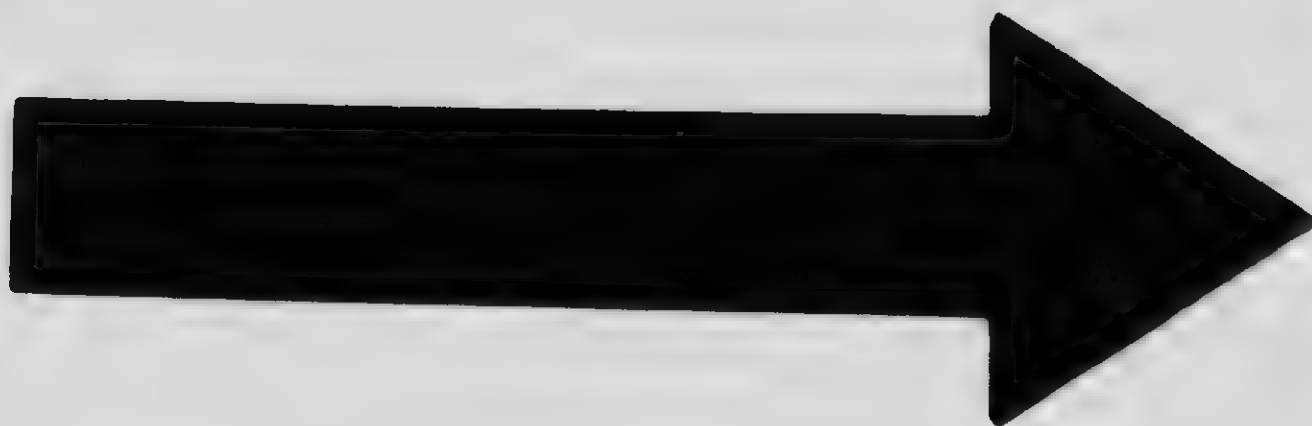
The Subjunctive is invariably used.

They are negated by the addition of *nē*.

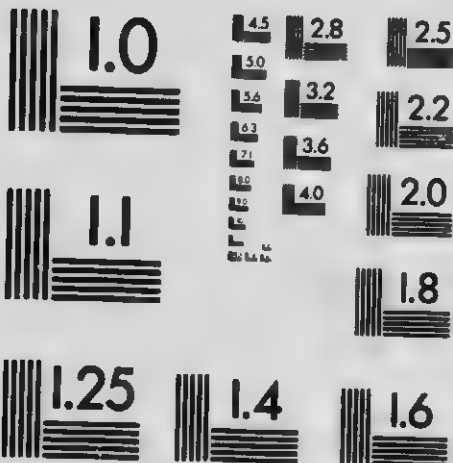
EXERCISE

A

1. *Quamquam id saepe audivi, tamen nōn crēdidi*
2. *Etiam si eās rēs audīrem, nōn crēderem.*
3. *Homō, quavis in periculō magnō sit, tamen fortissimē pugnāre dēbet.*



(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc

1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

4. Etsi mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam contendit.
5. Etsi mons iter impediēbat, Caesar tamen ad oppidum pervēnit.
6. Ego etsi abessem, tamen cum aliis mē condemnāvissēs.
7. Caesar, etsi nōndum consilium hostium cognōverat, tamen id, quod accidit, suspicābātur.

E

1. Though the general had few soldiers, yet he determined to assault the town.
2. Granting that the journey is long, we shall still be able to reach the place in a few days.
3. Though the enemy fought bravely, still the Roman soldiers defeated them.
4. However eloquent he may be, he will not persuade us.
5. Though he might have been saved, he still preferred to die in battle.
6. Though he had not yet learned their plans, he did not wish to delay lest the enemy might send for reinforcements.

C

Caesar, etsi intellegēbat, quā dē causā¹ ea² dicerentur, quaeque³ eum rēs ab institūtō⁴ consiliō dēterrēret,⁵ tamen, nē aestātem in Treveris consūmere cogerētur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rēbus comparātis, Indutiomārum ad sē cum ducentis⁶ obsidibus venire iussit.

¹ quā dē causā, *for what reason.* ² Neut. Pl. Notā. ³ and what. ⁴ institūtus, a, um, *appointed, prearranged.* ⁵ deterreō. 2, -uī, -itum, *frighten off, prevent.* ⁶ ducentī, ae, a, 200.

LESSON XCIX

CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

1. Examine :—

- | | |
|--|---|
| (a) Omnia, sicut acta sunt, memorāvit. | He has narrated everything just as it was done. |
| (b) Honōrēs petunt quasi honestē vixerint. | They seek office as if they have lived honorably. |

2. Observe :

In (a) the comparison is stated as a fact and the Indic. is used ;

In (b) the comparison is stated as a mere supposition and the Subj. is used.

3. Comparative Clauses fall into two classes:—

(a) Correlative Clauses of Comparison are introduced by **ut, sicut, quemadmodum** = *as*, and take the Indicative.

(b) Conditional Clauses of Comparison are introduced by **quasi, tanquam, tanquam si, velut, velut si, ut si** = *as if, just as if*, and take the Subjunctive.

4. Phrases

ut suprā demonstrāvimus	as we have shown above
contrā quam exspectāvi	(contrary than I expected
perinde ac mereor 2	(contrary to my expectation
	just as I deserve
poenas persolvō 3 -solvi -solutum	(I pay the penalty
pugnātum est	(I am punished
trepidātum est	the battle was fought
	a panic ensued

EXERCISE

A

1. **Contrā quam exspectāvi, Rōmam invitō Caesare rediit.**
2. **Perinde ac meritis est, poenās persolvit.**
3. **Perinde ac si meritis esset, poenās persolvit.**
4. **Trepidātum est quasi hostēs jam ad portās adessent.**
5. **His rēbus gestis, Caesar, ut quotannis facere consuērat, ab hibernis in Italiam discessit.**
6. **Senātum metus cēpit velut si ad portās hostes essent.**

B

1. A panic ensued just as if the whole army had been destroyed.
2. Regulus pushed aside¹ his friends, who were delaying his return to Carthage, just as if he were setting out to the country.
3. As he has lived, so will he die. He is being punished as he deserves.
4. From the day Hannibal was declared leader, he determined to make war on us, just as if Italy had been decreed to him (as) his province.

¹dimoveō.

READING LESSON

Cyrtilus

Athēniensēs cum Persārum impetum nullō modō possent sustinēre, statuerentque ut, urbe relictā, conjugibus et liberis Troezēne¹ dēpositis, nāvēs conscenderent,² libertatemque Graeciae classe dēfenderent, Cyrtilum quendam suādentem ut in urbe manērent Xerxemque reciperent,³ lapidibus obruērunt.⁴

¹ Local Abl., at Troezen.² nāvem conscendō, go on board ship, embark.³ receive, admit.
stone to death.⁴ obruō, 3, -rui, -rutum, overwhelm; lapidibus obruō,

LESSON C

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

I. Examine:—

- | | |
|---|--|
| (a) Dum ea geruntur, Caesar ad castra revertitur. | While those actions are going on, Caesar returns to the camp. |
| (b) Posteaquam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes terga vertērunt. | After our cavalry came in sight, the enemy fled. |
| (c) Dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, in ancoris expectavit. | He waited under anchor, until the rest of the ships could assemble. |
| (d) Priusquam se hostes ex fuga reciperent, in fines Suesionum exercitum duxit. | Before the enemy could recover from flight, he led his army into the territory of the Suesiones. |

2. Observe:—

In (a) and (b) the Temporal clauses convey the idea of *time and time only*. They deal with actual occurrences.

In (c) and (d), besides the idea of time, there is involved the idea of *purpose, aim or cause*.

3. General Rule:—

Pure Time is always expressed by the *Indic.*; Time with the additional notion of Cause, Purpose or Intention by the *Subj.*

Postquam, Ut, Ubi, Simul ac, Cum primum

4. **Postquam, posteāquam, after: ut, ubi, when; simul, simul ac (simul atque), cum primum, as soon as,** regularly refer to a single past occurrence and take the *Perfect Indicative*:

Postquam hostēs fugāvit, flūmen exercitum transdūxit.

After he routed the enemy, he led the army across the river.

NOTE.—For the Perf. the Historic Pres. is sometimes used; and the Plupf. when the time is more definitely stated as past; and the Impf. when a continued state is expressed.

NOTE.—For a repeated act in the past see (Page 263, 8).

Dum, Dōnec, and Quoad

5. **Dum** = *while*, regularly takes the *Present Indicative* (Historic Present) to denote present or past time.

dum haec geruntur = { while these things are going on
while these things were going on

6. **Dum, dōnec, quoad** = *as long as*, take the *Indicative*:
Quoad potuit fortissimē restitit. As long as he could, he resisted very bravely.

7. **Dum, dōnec, quoad** = *until*:

Take the *Indicative (Perfect)* to state a fact, to indicate pure time;

Take the *Subjunctive (Present or Imperfect)* to indicate Expectancy, Intention or Anticipation.

Dōnec rediit, silentium fuit.

There was silence till he returned.

Dum nāvēs eō convenirent. . .

Until the ships should assemble there. . .

Antequam and Priusquam

8. **Antequam (ante . . . quam), priusquam (prius . . . quam)** = *before* :—

(a) Take the *Indicative* to state a fact, to indicate mere priority of time;

(b) Take the *Subjunctive (Imperfect)* to indicate Motive, Purpose, or Anticipation. (1. (d))

(c) *Neque prius fugere dēstiterunt quam ad flūmen pervēnerunt.*
Nor did they cease to flee until they reached the river.

EXERCISE

A

1. As soon as the enemy recovered from flight, they immediately sent ambassadors to Caesar to treat for¹ peace.
2. As soon as our men got footing² on dry land,³ they made an attack on the enemy and put them to flight.
3. After our cavalry came in sight, the enemy threw away their arms,⁴ turned their backs, and a great number of them were killed.
4. They remained at Rome until the consul set out to his province.
5. While these things are transpiring, word was brought to Caesar that forces of the enemy had been seen across the river.
6. The consuls waited a few days for⁵ the allies to assemble.
7. Before the rest of the Menapii could be informed of this matter, the Germans crossed the river.

B

1. As soon as he heard this, he went away.
2. After he noticed this, he withdraws his forces to the nearest hill.
3. When they thought they were ready, they set fire to the towns.
4. While the Romans were making these preparations, the town was already being besieged.
5. I did this as long as it was allowed me.
6. He withstood the attack of the enemy, till the rest should destroy the bridge.
7. As soon as they saw our standards, they retreated into the wood.
8. The ambassador did not depart until he had seen our general.
9. Before I (shall) reply to this (man), I shall say a few things⁶ about myself.

¹ to treat for = concerning, *dē*. ² *consistō*. ³ dry land = *aridum*, *l.* ⁴ Make this clause an abl. abs. clause. ⁵ Resolve into a *dum* clause. ⁶ Omit 'things' and render by neut. pl. of *pauci*.

C

The Germans outwit the Menapii and get across the Rhine.

Germān. omnia experti,¹ cum neque vi contendere² propter inopiam nāvium neque clam transire propter custodiās Menāpiōrum possent, reverti sē in suās sedēs regiōēsque simulāverunt³ et tridui viam⁴ progressi rursus revertērunt atque omni hōc itinere unā nocte equitatū⁵ confectō, insciōs inopinantesque⁶ Menāpiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explorātōrēs certiōrēs facti, sine metū trans Rhēnum in suōs vicōs remigrāverant. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum occupātis, priusquam ea pars Menāpiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen transiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiis occupātis, reliquam partem⁷ hiemis sē eōrum copiis⁸ aluērunt.

¹ having tried all things : having tried every device. ² proceed by force : force a passage. ³ Note the idiom : simulāverunt se reverti. ⁴ Acc. of Extent of Space. ⁵ Abl. of Instrument. ⁶ Translate freely. ⁷ Acc. of Duration of Time. ⁸ supplies.

Vocabulary

experior -iri	try	triduum, i	three days
-pertus		inscius, a, um	not knowing
inopia, ae	want, lack,	inopinans, tis	not expecting
	scarcity	discessus, ūs	departure
clam	secretly	metus, ūs	fear
custōdia, ae	guard, watch	citrā (Prep. Acc.)	this side of

LESSON C!

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

CUM

I. Cum is the commonest of all conjunctions.

Temporal clauses with **cum** = *when*, follow the general rule :—

To denote pure time it may be used with the Indic. in any tense ;

Usually, however, it is used with the Impf. or Plupf. Subj. to denote the accompanying circumstances or situation. (Page 204, 3).

2. The following uses are distinguished:—

3. *Cum temporal*

Veniam cum poterō. I shall come when I can.
Cum vēneris, vidēbis. When you (shall have) come, you will see.

(b) **Cum amicus vēnit, aberam.** When my friend came, I was absent.

tum, cum ex urbe Catilinam ējiciēbam. at the time, when I was trying to drive Catiline out of the city.

(a) **Cum**, *when*, referring to present or future time regularly takes the Indic.

(b) **Cum**, *when*, with a past tense indic. denotes the date or particular time when something occurred.

4. *Cum narrative*

The most frequent use of **cum** is with the Impf. or Plupf. Subj. to denote the accompanying circumstances or situation of a past event.

Review Page 204, 3.

5. *Cum explicative*

Cum in portum dicō, in urbem dicō. When I say into the harbor, I mean into the city.

Cum tacent, clāmant. { When they are silent, they shout.
 { Their silence means exclamation.

Cum with the Indic. in any tense may be used to indicate the identity of one event with another.

6. *Cum inverse*

Nondum profectus eram, cum haec gerēbantur. I had not yet set out when these things were going on.

In this sentence the logical relations of the two clauses are inverted. The principal clause in reality defines the time of the main thought which is expressed by a temporal clause.

Cum inverse takes the Indic.

7. Cum Causal and Concessive

Cum causal *since*, takes the Subj. (Page 204, 4 ; and 252, 3).

Cum concessive *although, whereas*, takes the Subj. (Page 255, Note).

Repeated Acts

8. Compare the following :—

Quōscumque cunctantēs viderat, castigābat. He used to, or, would chastise whomsoever he saw lagging behind.

Sī quem cunctantem viderat, castigābat. If ever he saw anyone lagging behind, he would chastise him.

Cum or quoties } **suōs cunctantēs viderat, adhortābātur.**
Ut or ubi }

Whenever he saw his men lagging behind, he used to urge them on.

A Repeated Act in the Past is expressed by the Plupf. Indic. in the Subordinate Clause, and by the Impf. Indic. in the Principal Clause.

9. **Quōscumque vidit (videt) cunctantēs, castigat.** He always chastises all whom he sees lagging behind.

A Repeated Act in the Present is expressed by the Perf. or Pres. Indic. in the Subordinate Clause, and the Pres. Indic. in the Principal Clause.

EXERCISE

A. *enclitic* indicating pure time

1. I shall write you when I reach Athens.
2. When I see you, I will give you the letter.
3. When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the most powerful tribe.
4. Come to me, when you can. When the messenger arrives, you may go.
5. I said this in the senate at the time when many leading men had fled from the city for the purpose of saving themselves.

B. *cum narrative.* Review Page 201, 6, and translate in all possible ways:

1. When Caesar had conquered the Gauls, he returned to Rome.
2. When he came to the town, he demanded hostages.
3. When he had written the letter, he called the slave to him.
4. After I heard your speech, I left the forum.
5. On hearing this, he rejoiced.

C. *cum narrative*

1. When Caesar was distant from the enemy not more than twelve miles, the ambassadors return to him.
2. When the ships were approaching Britain and were seen from the camp, so great a storm suddenly arose that none of them was able to hold its course.
3. When Xerxes wished to return into Asia, I informed him by letter that the Greek had sent large forces to break down the bridge.

D. *cum inverse.* Translate also by *cum narrative* after subordinating the sentence properly.

1. And now they were not more than two days' march distant from him when they learn that two legions have arrived from Caesar.
2. These legions were making their way through the wood when suddenly the enemy with a loud shout attacked them from all sides.
3. The Remi were just preparing to leave the camp, when they learn that two legions have crossed the river.

E. *cum causal and concessive*

1. Though the Suevi had not been able to drive these out of their territory, they nevertheless made them tributary to themselves.
2. Since he saw that this could not be done, he tried to escape in the night.

F. Repeated acts in the past

1. As often as any cohort ran forward, in that quarter a large number of the enemy would fall.
2. Whenever from the shore they saw a soldier disembarking, they would all hurl their darts at him.

3. Whatever legion he saw to be hard pressed, to it he would send reinforcements.
4. The citizens used to salute him whenever he came to any town.
5. Whenever our men attacked the enemy fiercely, they used to retreat into their camp.

LESSON CII

INDIRECT NARRATION ORATIO OBLIQUA

1. Review Lesson XCVII, 5, for the definition of **Oratio Recta** and **Oratio Obliqua**.

2. Examine:—

O.R.

O.O.

(a) **Vidi eum qui discessit.**

Dixit se eum vidisse qui discessisset.

I saw the man who went away.

He said he had seen the man who went away.

(b) **Puer domum ibit, cum opus confecerit.**

Dixit puerum domum iturum (esse) cum opus confecisset.

The boy will go home when he finishes (shall have finished) the work.

He said the boy would go home when he had finished the work.

Principal Declarative Clauses go into Acc. with Infin.

Subordinate Clauses go into the Subj.

(c) **Quid tibi vis? Cur venis?**

Quid sibi vellet? Cur veniret?

What do you want? Why do you come?

What did he want? Why did he come?

Interrogative Clauses go into the Subj.

(d) **Paulisper intermittite proelium.** **Eōs certiōrēs fēcit paulisper intermitterent proelium.**

Stop the battle for a little while. He told them to stop the battle for a little while.

Nē castra mōvēris (Page 193, 2). **Nē castra movēret.**
Let him not move the camp.

Do not move the camp.

Nōlī putāre (Page 211, 4) **Nē putāret.**
Don't think. Let him not think.

Imperative forms go into the Subj.

General Rule for O.O.

In O.O. Principal Declarative Clauses are put in the Acc. with Infin. All Interrogative, Imperative and Subordinate Clauses are put in the Subj.

Tenses

Tenses of the Infin. follow the rules for the Infin. (Page 168, 3);

Tenses of the Subj. follow the rule for Sequence (Page 198, 4).

EXERCISE

Write the O.O. in O.R.

1. **Dixit sē domum itūrum esse cum epistolam scripsisset.**
2. **Nuntiāvit omnēs, quī in armis essent, esse interfectōs.**
3. **Prōmisit sē pecūniam datūrum, si habēret.**
4. **Imperātor dixit militēs quōs dūxisset esse fortēs.**
5. **Nē castra propius sē movēret, petiērunt.**
6. **Dixit sē posterō diē reditūrum esse.**
7. **Si ita fēcissent, finēs eōrum sē violātūrum negāvit.**
8. **Lēgātus Caesarī dicit nisi auxilia ad sē mittantur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.**

READING LESSON

Spartan Courtesy

Athēnis senex quidam, cum spectātum¹ lūdōs in theātrum vēnisset, eumque nēmō ē civibus sessum² recipere: ³ ad Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs forte pervēnit. Qui hominis aetāte mōti, statim sēdem eī inter ipsōs honorātissimō locō³ dedērunt. Quod ubi fieri populus aspexit, māximō plausū aliēnae urbis verēcundiam comprōbāvit. Ferunt⁴ tunc ūnum ē Lacedaemonis dixisse. "Ergō Athēniensēs, quid sit rectum, sciunt; sed id facere neglegunt."

Vocabulary

theātrum, i	thea'	tunc	then
sedeō 2 sēdi	sit, sit down	plausus, ūs	applause
sessum		aliēnus, a, um	of another, foreign
honorātus, a, um	honored, honorable	ergō	therefore
aspiciō 3 -spexi	behold	re' is, a, um	right
-spectum		n' ergō 3 -glexi	neglect,
verēcundia, ae	reverence, respect	-glectum	disregard

¹ Supine in -um.

² They say.

³ admit to a seat, offer a seat to.

⁴ p. in, omitted.

LESSON CIII

ORATIO OBLIQUA (CONTINUED)

I. Changes in Pronouns and Adverbs

O. R.

O. O.

Haec tibi heri dixi.

I told you this yesterday

Huc cras convenite

Assemble here to-morrow.

(Dixit) sē illi ea pridie dixisse

He had told him that on the previous day.

Eō posterō diē convenirent.

They were to assemble there on the following day.

Changes in Pronouns

(a) ego, nōs, become se (in the Nom. ipse, ipsi); meus, noster, become ~~meus, noster~~.

(b) tū, vōs, become ille (sometimes is); tuus, vester, become illius, illōrum; ipsius, ipsōrum.

(c) hic and iste become ille or is.

Changes in Adverbs

nunc	becomes	tum or tunc	cras	becomes	postridiē
hodiē	"	illō diē	hic	"	ibi or illic
heri	"	pridiē			

2. Rhetorical Questions

Quid est turpius quam fugere?	Quid esse turpius quam fugere?
What is more disgraceful than to flee?	What was more disgraceful than to flee?

A Rhetorical Question does not imply an answer but is simply a strong statement of fact :—*Nothing is more disgraceful than to flee.*

In O.O. therefore it is put in the Acc. and Infin.

3. The Co-ordinating Relative

Quae fore suspicātus, equitēs praemittit.	Suspecting that this would occur, he sends forward the cavalry.
--	--

When the Relative takes the place of a Demonstrative, it follows the construction of a principal clause.

4. Subjunctive Clauses

Quid faciam? (Delib. Subj.)	Quid faceret?
What am I to do?	What was he to do?
Quō eāmus?	Quō irent?
Whither are we to go?	Whither were they to go?

Clauses already in the Subj. will remain so.

5. NOTE:—Sometimes an Independent Statement made by the writer or reporter appears in Oratio Obliqua. 'Such a statement will be in the Indic.

Conditional Clauses in Oratio Obliqua

6. Review Lesson XCVI and observe from the following the form the sentences assume in Oratio Obliqua :—

	O.R.	O.O. PRIMARY SEQUENCE
7. SIMPLE {	PRES. Si habet, dat.	Dicit—sē, si habeat dare.
	PAST Si habēbat, dabat.	sē, si habēret dedisse.
	Si habuit, dedit.	sē, si habuerit dedisse.

O.O. HISTORIC SEQUENCE

Dixit—*sē, si habēret dare.*
sē, si habēret dedisse.
sē, si habuisset dedisse.

O.O. PRIMARY SEQUENCE

8. FUTURE MORE VIVID *Si habēbit, dabit. Dicit—sē, si habeat datūrum esse.*
Si vēnerit, vidēbit. sē, si vēnerit visūrum

O.O. HISTORIC SEQUENCE

Dixit—*sē, si habēret datūrum esse.*
sē, si vēnisset visūrum

Note well that in the subordinate clause the Fut. Pf. Indic. in O.R. becomes in O.O. the Pf. Subj. in Primary Sequence ; and the Plupf. Subj. in Historic Sequence.

O.O. PRIMARY SEQUENCE

9. FUTURE LESS VIVID *Si habeat, det Dicit—sē, si habeat datūrum esse.*

O.O. HISTORIC SEQUENCE

Dixit—*sē, si habēret datūrum*

O.O. EITHER SEQUENCE

10. CONTRARY TO FACT { PRES. *Si habēret, daret. Dicit* } *sē, si habēret datūrum fuisse (esse).*
 { PRES. *Si habuisset, dedisset. Dicit* } *sē, si habuisset datūrum fuisse.*

Observe the form '*datūrum fuisse.*'

EXERCISE

A

Write the following in O.O. Historical Sequence :—

1. What would Cicero say, if he were alive ?
2. If you had obeyed the general, you would to-day be free.
3. If he had asked me that, I should not have replied.
4. If they attempt to cross the river, I shall prevent them.
5. If I should be present, I would speak.
6. If you obey me, you will take the city.

B

Write the O.O. in O.R.

1. Clāmitābat liberum sē liberaeque esse civitātis.
2. Caesar dixit sē nōn longius millibus passuum quatuor prōces-sūrum eō diē; hūc posterō diē convenirent ut dē eōrum postulātis cognosceret.
3. Caesarī respondit: sē ab suis discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius civitātem in officiō contineret, ne, sē absente, plebs propter imprudentiam dēficeret; itaque civitātem esse in suā potestāte, sēsēque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, suāsque fortunās ejus fidei permissūrum.

READING LESSON

Roman Honor

Cum rēx Pyrrhus populō Rōmānō bellum intulisset, perfuga ab eō vēnit in castra Fabriciī, eiūque est pollicitus, si prae-mium sibi prōposuisset,¹ sē ut² clam vēnisset, sic² clam in Pyrrhī castra reditūrum et eum venēnō necāfūrum. Hunc Fabricius redūcendum³ cūrāvit ad Pyrrhum; idque factum ejus ā senātū laudātum est.

¹prōpōnō, offer. ²ut . . sic - 28 . . 40. ³See Page 187, 9.



AUGUSTUS

READING LESSON

Augustus

Octāviānus Jūliae, sorōris Jūlii Caesaris nepōs erat. Quattuor annōs nātus patrem amisit. Cum primum Caesarem occisum hērēdemque sē comperit, nōmen Caesaris sumpsit et comparāvit veterānōrum exercitum. Hōc exercitū Antōnium, quī Mutinam obsidēbat, superāvit. Postea autem, pāce cum Antōniō factā junctisque cum eō cōpiis, ut Caesaris necem ulciscerētur, ad urbem accessit et sibi consulātum dēpoposcit. Interea Brūtus et Cassius, cōpiis māximis coactis, ingens bellum mōvērunt.¹ Mox tamen apud Philippōs ab Octāviānō Antōniōque sunt victi atque interfecti. Paulō post Antōnius, repudiātā Octāviā sorōre Octāviānī, Cleopātram, Aegypti rēginam, uxōrem dūxit. Ob hanc rem bellō illātō, Octāviānus cum Antōniō apud Actium, quī locus est in Epīrō, nāvālī pugnā dimicāvit. Antōnius et Cleopātra sunt victi et rēbus dēspērātis cum plērique sē Octāviānō conjungerent,² sibi mortem conscivērunt.³ Tandem Octāviānus, hostibus victis, sōlus imperiō potitus, clementem sē praestitit. Ei māximī honōres ā senātū sunt dēlāti et cognōmen Augustus est datum.

Vocabulary

Jūlia, ae	Julia	repudiō I	reject
nepōs, ōtis	grandson	Octāvia, ae	Octavia
hērēs, ēdis	heir	Cleopātra	Cleopatra
comperiō 4 -peri	learn	Aegyptus, ī	Egypt
-pertum		Actium, ī	Actium
Mutina, ae	Mutina	Epīrus, ī	Epirus
obsideō 2 -sēdi	besiege	dimicō I	fight
-sessum		plērique, plēraeque	most (people)
nex, necis	death	plēraque	
ulciscor -ci ultus	avenge	consciscō 3 -scivi	inflict
dēposcō 3 -poposci	demand	-scitum	
Philippī, ōrum	Philippi		

¹ commenced. ² Note the idiom: I join him - *mē ad eum jungō*, or *mē ei adjungō* or *conjungō*. ³ inflicted death upon themselves = committed suicide = *sē interfecērunt*.

APPENDIX

TABLE OF NUMERALS

CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS

SUMMARY OF RULES FOR CASES

TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	DISTRIBUTIVES	NUMERAL ADVERBS
1	unus, a, um, <i>one</i>	primus, a, um, <i>first</i>	singuli, ae, a, <i>one by one</i>	semel, <i>once</i>
2	duo, duae, duo, <i>two</i>	secundus, a, um (or alter), <i>second</i>	bini, ae, a, <i>two by two</i>	bis, <i>twice</i>
3	três, tria, <i>three</i>	tertius, a, um, <i>third</i>	trini or terni	ter
4	quattuor	quartus	quini	quater
5	quinque	quintus	seni	quinquies
6	sex	sextus	septeni	sextiens
7	septem	septimus	octoni	septiens
8	octo	octavus	noveni	octiens
9	novem	nonus	dèni	noviens
10	decem	decimus	undèni	decies
11	undecim	undecimus	duodèni	undeciens
12	duodecim	duodecimus		duodeciens
13	tredecim	tertius decimus	terni dèni	{ terdecies or tredecies
14	quattuordecim	quartus decimus	quaterni dèni	quattuordecies
15	quindecim	quintus decimus	quini dèni	quindecies
16	sédecim	sextus decimus	seni dèni	sedecies
17	septendecim	septimus decimus	septeni dèni	septensdecies
18	duodéviginti	duodévicesimus	duodévicensi	duodéviciens
19	undéviginti	undévicesimus	undévicensi	undéviciens
20	viginti	vicesimus	vicensi	viciens
21	{ unus et viginti or viginti unus	primus et vicesimus or vicesimus primus	vicensi singuli	{ semel et viciens or viciens semel
28	duodétrigintā	duodétrigesimus	duodétricensi	duodétriciens
29	undétrigintā	undétrigesimus	undétricensi	undétriciens
30	trigintā	tricesimus	tricensi	triciens

Another form of numeral adverbs in -es is in -es: quinquès, sextès.

Conjugation of Sum

INDICATIVE	- - - -	Page 45
SUBJUNCTIVE	- - - -	Page 191
IMPERATIVE	} - - - -	Page 46
INFINITIVE		
PARTICIPLE		

Regular Verbs

PRINCIPAL PARTS	1. Conjugation :	amō	amāre	amāvī	amātum
	2. "	moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum
	3. "	regō	regere	rexī	rectum
	4. "	audiō	audire	audīvī	audītum

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

PRESENT	amō	moneō	regō	audiō
	amās	monēs	regis	audis
	amat	monet	regit	audit
	amāmus	monēmus	regimus	audīmus
	amātis	monētis	regitis	audītis
	amant	monent	regunt	audiunt
IMPERF.	amābam	monēbam	regēbam	audiēbam
	amābās	monēbās	regēbās	audiēbās
	amābat	monēbat	regēbat	audiēbat
	amābāmus	monēbāmus	regēbāmus	audiēbāmus
	amābātis	monēbātis	regēbātis	audiēbātis
	amābant	monēbant	regēbant	audiēbant
FUTURE	amābō	monēbō	regam	audiam
	amābis	monēbis	regēs	audiēs
	amābit	monēbit	reget	audiet
	amābimus	monēbimus	regēmus	audiēmus
	amābitis	monēbitis	regētis	audiētis
	amābunt	monēbunt	regent	audient

	amāvī amāvistī amāvit amāvimus amāvistis { amāvērunt { amāvēre	monuī monuisti monuit monuimus monuistis { monuērunt { monuēre	rexi rexiſti rexit reximus rexiſtis { rexērunt { rexēre	audivī audivisti audivit audivimus audivistiſ { audivērunt { audivēre
PLUPERF.	amāveram amāverās amāverat amāverāmus amāverātis amāverant	monueram monuerās monuerat monuerāmus monuerātis monuerant	rexeram rexerās rexerat rexerāmus rexerātis rexerant	audiveram audiverās audiverat audiverāmus audiverātis audiverant
FUTURE PERFECT	amāverō amāveris amāverit amāverimus amāveritis amāverint	monuerō monueris monuerit monuerimus monueritis monuerint	rexerō rexeris rexerit rexerimus rexeritis rexerint	audiverō audiveris audiverit audiverimus audiveritis audiverint

Subjunctive

PRESENT	amem amēs amet amēmus amētis ament	moneam moneās moneat moneāmus moneātis moneant	regam regās regat regāmus regātis regant	audiam audiās audiat audiāmus audiātis audiant
IMPERF.	amārem amārēs amaret amārēmus amārētis amārent	monērem monērēs moneret monērēmus monērētis monērent	regerem regerēs regeret regerēmus regerētis regerent	audirēm audirēs audiret audirēmus audirētis audirent

PERFECT	amāverim	monuerim	rexerim	audiverim
	amāveris	monueris	rexeris	audiveris
	amāverit	monuerit	rexerit	audiverit
	amāverimus	monuerimus	rexerimus	audiverimus
	amāveritis	monueritis	rexeritis	audiveritis
	amāverint	monuerint	rexerint	audiverint
PLUPERF.	amāvissem	monuisssem	rexissem	audivissem
	amāvissēs	monuissēs	rexissēs	audivissēs
	amāvisset	monuisset	rexisset	audivisset
	amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rexissēmus	audivissēmus
	amāvissētis	monuissētis	rexissētis	audivissētis
	amāvissent	monuissent	rexissent	audivissent

Imperative

PRESENT	amā	monē	rege	audi
	amāte	monēte	regite	audite
FUTURE	amātō	monētō	regitō	auditō
	amātō	monētō	regitō	auditō
	amātōte	monētōte	regitōte	auditōte
	amantō	monentō	reguntō	audiuntō

Infinitive

PRESENT	amāre	monēre	regere	audire
PERFECT	amāvisse	monuisse	rexisse	audivisse
FUTURE	amātūrus	monitūrus	rectūrus	auditūrus
	esse	esse	esse	esse

Participles

PRESENT	amans	monens	regens	audiens
FUTURE	amātūrus,	monitūrus	rectūrus,	auditūrus,
	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um	-a, -um

Supine

amātum	monitum	rectum	auditum
amatū	monitū	rectū	auditū

Gerund

GENITIVE	amandi	monendi	regendi	audiendi
DATIVE	amandō	monendō	regendō	audiendō
ACCUS.	amandum	monendum	regendum	audiendum
ABLATIVE	amandō	monendō	regendō	audiendō

PASSIVE VOICE

Indicative

PRESENT	amor	moneor	regor	audior
	{ amāris	{ monēris	{ regeris	{ audiris
	{ amāre	{ monēre	{ regere	{ audire
	amātur	monētur	regitur	auditur
	amāmur	monemur	regimur	audimur
	amāmini	monēmini	regimini	audimini
	amantur	monentur	reguntur	audiuntur
IMPERF.	amābar	monēbar	regebar	audiēbar
	{ amābāris	{ monēbāris	{ regebāris	{ audiēbāris
	{ amābāre	{ monēbāre	{ regebāre	{ audiēbāre
	amābātur	monēbātur	regebātur	audiēbātur
	amābāmur	monēbāmur	regebāmur	audiēbāmur
	amābāmini	monēbāmini	regebāmini	audiēbāmini
	amābantur	monēbantur	regebantur	audiēbantur
FUTURE	amābor	monēbor	regār	audiar
	{ amāberis	{ monēberis	{ regēris	{ audiēris
	{ amābere	{ monēbere	{ regere	{ audiēre
	amābitur	monēbitur	"	audiētur
	amābimur	monēbimur	"	audiēmur
	amābimini	monēbimini	"	audiēmini
	amābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	audiēntur

PERFECT	amatus sum	monitus sum	rectus sum	auditus sum
	amatus es	monitus es	rectus es	auditus es
	amatus est	monitus est	rectus est	auditus est
	amāti sumus	monitī sumus	rectī sumus	auditi sumus
	amāti estis	monitī estis	rectī estis	auditi estis
	amāti sunt	monitī sunt	rectī sunt	auditi sunt
PLUPERF.	amatus eram	monitus eram	rectus eram	auditus eram
	amatus erās	monitus erās	rectus erās	auditus erās
	amatus erat	monitus erat	rectus erat	auditus erat
	amāti erāmus	monitī erāmus	rectī erāmus	auditi erāmus
	amāti erātis	monitī erātis	rectī erātis	auditi erātis
	amāti erant	monitī erant	rectī erant	auditi erant
FUTURE PERFECT	amatus erō	monitus erō	rectus erō	auditus erō
	amatus eris	monitus eris	rectus eris	auditus eris
	amatus erit	monitus erit	rectus erit	auditus erit
	amāti erimus	monitī erimus	rectī erimus	auditi erimus
	amāti eritis	monitī eritis	rectī eritis	auditi eritis
	amāti erunt	monitī erunt	rectī erunt	auditi erunt

Subjunctive

PRESENT	amer	monear	regar	audiar
	{ amēris	{ moneāris	{ regāris	{ audiāris
	{ an. ēre	{ moneāre	{ regāre	{ audiāre
	amētur	moneātur	regātur	audiātur
	amēmur	moneāmur	regāmur	audiāmur
	amēmini	moneāmini	regāmini	audiāmini
IMPERF.	amentur	moneantur	regantur	audiantur
	amārer	monērer	regerer	audirer
	{ amārēris	{ monērēris	{ regērēris	{ audirēris
	{ amārēre	{ monērēre	{ regērēre	{ audirēre
	amārētur	monērētur	regerētur	audirētur
	amārēmur	monērēmur	regerēmur	audirēmur
	amārēmini	monēremini	regerēmini	audirēmini
	amārentur	monērentur	regerentur	audirentur

PERFECT	amatus sim	monitus sim	rectus sim	auditus sim
	amatus sis	monitus sis	rectus sis	auditus sis
	amatus sit	monitus sit	rectus sit	auditus sit
	amati simus	moniti simus	recti simus	auditi simus
	amati sitis	moniti sitis	recti sitis	auditi sitis
	amati sint	moniti sint	recti sint	auditi sint

PLUPERF.	amatus essem	monitus essem	rectus essem	auditus essem
	amatus essēs	monitus essēs	rectus essēs	auditus essēs
	amatus esset	monitus esset	rectus esset	auditus esset
	amati essemus	moniti essemus	recti essemus	auditi essemus
	amati essētis	moniti essētis	recti essētis	auditi essētis
	amati essent	moniti essent	recti essent	auditi essent

Imperative

PRESENT	amāre	monēre	regere	audire
	amāmini	monēmini	regimini	audimini
FUTURE	amātor	monētor	regitor	auditor
	amātor	monētor	regitor	auditor
	amantor	monentor	reguntor	audiuntor

Infinitive

PRESENT	amāri	monēri	regi	audiri
PERFECT	amatus esse	monitus esse	rectus esse	auditus esse
FUTURE	amatum iri	monitum iri	rectum iri	auditum iri

Participles

PERFECT	amatus	monitus	rectus	auditus
GERUN-DIVE	amandus	monendus	regendus	audiendus

ACCUSATIVE CASE

Summary of Rules

1. Acc. of the Direct Object

Mūrum aedificat. He builds a wall.

2. Two Accusatives, one of the Person, another of the Thing

With verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing.*

Tē sententiam rogō. I ask you your opinion.

Tē linguam Latinam doceō. I teach you the Latin language.

(a) Sententiam rogāris. You are asked your opinion.

In the Passive the Acc. of the Thing remains, the Acc. of the Person becomes the Nominative.

doceō—I inform, takes, 'de' with Abl.

petō always, precor and postulō usually, take Abl. of Person with 'ab.'

Pācem ā Caesare petit, He seeks peace from Caesar.

quaerō takes 'ab' or 'ex.'

3. Two Accusatives with Compound Verbs

With trādūcō, transportō, trājiciō.

Equitēs montem trādūxit. He led the cavalry across the mountain.

Equitēs montem trāducti sunt. The cavalry were led across the mountain.

In the Passive the object of the verb becomes the subject; the object after the preposition remains.

4. Two Accusatives—Direct Object and Predicate Accusative

With verbs of *making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing.*

Ancum rēgem creāvērunt. They elected Ancus king.

5. Cognate Accusative—an acc. related (cognātus) to the verb in meaning

Vitam vivere, to live a life. somnium somniāre, to dream a dream.
proelium pugnāre, to fight a battle.

6. Acc. of 'Motion towards' (Page 119, 5.)

Rōmam vēnit. He came to Rome.

7. Acc. of Respect

Caput doleō. I am pained as to the head—I have a headache.
 Niger oculōs. Black as to the eyes—with black eyes.
 Fractus membra. With limbs shattered.

8. Acc. with verbs, passive in form, but Middle in meaning

Galeam induitur. He puts on his helmet.

9. Adverbial Acc.

Multum valent. They are very strong.
 Nihil movēmur. We are not at all moved.
 Illud glōrior. That is my boast.
 Eadem peccat. He makes the same mistakes.
 Māximam partem lacte vivunt. They live for the most part on milk.

10. Acc. of Duration of Time and Extent of Space

Annōs decem bellum gessērunt. For ten years they waged war.
 Duo millia passuum ambulāvit. He walked two miles.

11. Acc. with Prepositions

ad	citrā	juxtā	prope
adversus	contrā	ob	propter
ante	ergā	penes	secundum
apud	extrā	per	suprā
circā	infrā	pōne	trans
circum	inter	post	ultrā
cis	intrā	praeter	versus

(a) in, sub, subter, super,

take the *Acc.* when they denote *Motion* ;

take the *Abl.* when they denote *Rest*.

in *Itāliam*, into Italy ; in *Italiā*, in Italy.

sub montem, toward the mountain ; sub monte, at the foot of the mountain.

12. Acc. in Exclamations

heu mē miserum—Ah ! me unhappy.

13. Acc. with Infinitive. (Page 167).

THE DATIVE

The Dative is in general represented by 'to' and 'for.' The chief exceptions to this are 'to,' denoting 'motion to,' as *ad urbem venire*, and 'for,' denoting 'in behalf of,' as *pro patriâ pugnâre*.

The Dative in general expresses the person or thing 'affected by' an action.

The Acc. expresses the person or thing directly or primarily acted upon.

Many verbs that govern the objective in English are represented by verbs that govern the Dative in Latin. Such verbs in Latin are Intransitive. Every really transitive verb in Latin governs the Acc.

Summary of Rules

1. Dative of Indirect Object

To denote the person to whom something is *given, said, or done* ;

(a) With transitive verbs in connection with Acc.

Librum puerō dēdi.	I gave the boy a book.
Fābulam puerō narrāvī.	I told the boy a story.
Nihil mihi respondit.	He made me no reply.

(b) With intransitive verbs. (Page 175, 4.)

2. Dative with Compounds

Many verbs compounded with the following prepositions govern the Dative.

ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter.

ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super, and sometimes **circum.**

Also the Adverbs **bene, male, satis.**

Intransitive verbs compounded with the above prepositions govern the Dative ;

Transitive verbs so compounded govern the Acc. and Dat.

Labiēnus exercitui praefuit.	Labienus commanded the army.
Caesar Labiēnum exercitui praefecit.	Caesar placed Labienus in command of the army.

3. Dative of Reference

To denote the person to whom a statement refers or is of interest. It is not used in close connection with the verb alone, but is connected rather with the whole sentence.

Caesari ad pedēs sē projēcērunt. They threw themselves at Caesar's feet.

Hoc mihi spem minuit. This lessened my hope.

(The Dative in these cases is far more expressive than a possessive pronoun would be.)

Est urbe ēgressis tumulus. As (you) go out of the city there is a mound.

Under Dative of reference are embraced :

4. (a) Ethical Dative

Quid mihi Celsus agit? What is my Celsus doing?

At tibi venit ad mē Caninius. But, mark you, Caninius comes to me.

5. (b) Dative of Separation

Compounds of *ab*, *dē*, *ex* and *ad*, meaning in general 'taking away,' take a Dative.

Hunc mihi terrōrem ēripe. Take from me this terror.

Gladium tibi abstūli. I took away the sword from you.

Omnia nobis adēmit. He robbed us of everything.

6. Dative of Possessor

Is used with '*sum.*'

Mihi est liber. I have a book.

Puerō nōmen est Cāiō } The boy's name is Caius.

Puerō nōmen est Cāius }

With '*nōmen est*' the name is usually in the dative by apposition

7. Dative of the Agent (instead of *ā* or *ab* with Abl.)

Is used with the Gerundive.

Virtūs omnibus cōlenda est. All must cultivate virtue.

Nōbis pugnandum est. We must fight.

To avoid ambiguity the Abl. with *ā* or *ab* is used.

Tibi ā mē parendum est. I must obey you.

8. Dative of Purpose (usually combined with a Dative of the person or thing affected)

Duās legiōnēs praesidiō castris He left two legions as a guard for
reliquit. the camp.

Est mihi cūrae. It is a care to me.

9. Dative with Impersonal Verbs

accidit—it happens ; **contingit**—it is one's good fortune ;

expēdit—it is expedient ; **libet**—it pleases ;

licet—it is allowable ; **placet**—it pleases.

10. Dative with Adjectives

Is closely related to its use with verbs.

The most common adjectives are denoted by

agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful.

prōpior, proximus, sometimes take the Acc.

prōpe, prōpius, proximē, adverbs, regularly take the Acc.

Other constructions occur.

(a) The Genitive, with **similis, dissimilis**, especially to express likeness in character.

Pompēii similis, like Pompey.

(b) **utilis, idōneus, aptus ad** ;

commūnis, conjunctus cum ;

benevolus ergā, or in with Acc.

11. The Dative occurs similarly with Adverbs and even Nouns.

Obtemperātiō lēgibus.

Obedience to the laws.

Congruenter nātūrae vivēre.

To live in accordance with nature.

Sibi constanter dicere.

To speak consistently with one's self.

Special Idioms

He threatened me with death.

Mortem mihi minātus est.

He levies cavalry from the states.

Equitēs civitātibus imperat.

He supplies the enemy with corn.

Frūmentum hostibus suppeditat.

He won no one's approval for his acts.

Facta sua nulli prōbāvit.

He pardoned me for these offences.

Haec peccāta mihi condōnāvit.

dōnō and **circumdō** admit of a double construction.

He surrounds the city with a wall. { **Urbem mūrō circumdat.**
 { **Mūrū urbī circumdat.**

THE GENITIVE

The Genitive is the 'defining' case, its main use being to define or qualify the meaning of the word to which it is attached.

The Genitive is used with nouns, adjectives and verbs.

Summary of Rules

THE GENITIVE WITH NOUNS

1. Possessive Genitive

liber pueri, the boy's book.

2. Subjective Genitive, denoting the Subject of the action or feeling ;

serpentis morsus, the bite of the serpent ;

timor pueri, the fear of the boy.

3. Objective Genitive, denoting the Object toward which the action or feeling is directed ;

amor glōriæ, love of glory ; *metus deōrum*, fear of the gods.

4. Genitive of the Whole (usually called Partitive Gen.), denoting the whole of which a part is taken ;

(a) With substantives : *pars exercitūs* ; *nihil temporis*, no time.

(b) With adjectives, especially in the comparative and superlative degree ; *fortissimī militum*.

(c) With numerals : *duo millia equitum* ; *primus omnium*.

(d) With pronouns and neuter adjectives used as substantives :
quis hominum ? Who of men ? *aliquid operis*, some work ;
quid consilii, what plan ; *quid rei*, what thing.

(e) With adverbs used as substantives :

sapientiæ parum, too little wisdom.

quō gentium ? to what place on earth ?

ubi terrarum ? where on earth ?

eō temeritātis, to such a pitch of rashness.

Obs. : Other constructions in place of the Gen. of the Whole are :

(a) The Abl. with *ex* or *dē*.

ūnus ē militibus : *quidam ex servis*.

This is the regular construction with *quidam* and cardinal numerals.

- (b) *nōs omnēs*, all of us; *tōta Asia*, the whole of Asia.
(equitēs) quī paucī ~~acc.~~ *erant*, few of whom were present.

If the two words are co-extensive you cannot have the Gen. the Whole.

5. Genitive of Quality (Descriptive Genitive)

vir summī ingenii, a man of the greatest ability;
puer decem annōrum, a boy of ten years.

6. Appositional Genitive

virtūs continentiae, the virtue of self-control.

This Gen. is rare in Latin as compared with English.

Obs.: Remember such types as,

urbs Rōma: pugna Cannensis; summus mons.

GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

Adjectives denoting desire, knowledge, skill, recollection participation, mastery, fulness, and their contraries.

cupidus rērum novārum; peritus belli (skilled in).
memor gloriae; amans patriae; pugnandi avidus.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS

I. The Gen. is used with

I. *misereor, miserescō*, pity, feel pity.

Obs.: *miseror*, 1: *commiseror*, 1, express pity for, bemoan the lot of, take the Acc.

II. *meminī, reminiscor, obliviscor.*

But (a) When referring to persons—

meminī = I am mindful of, I make mention of, takes Gen.

= I still remember, I recall, takes Acc.

Cicerōnem meminī.

(b) When referring to things they take the Gen. or Acc.
 But neuter pronouns and adjectives are regularly in the Acc.

haec meminī; multa reminiscor.

mihi in mentem vēnit = I remember, takes the Gen.

Venit mihi in mentem ejus diēi.

recordor, 1.—I recall, almost invariably takes the Acc.

2. The **Acc.** of the **Person** and **Gen.** of the **Thing** are used with

I. **admoneō, commoneō, commonefaciō**—remind, admonish ;

Tē amicitiae admoneō, commonefaciō. I remind you of friendship.

But they take (a) The **Acc.** of a neuter pronoun or adjective
hōc tē admoneō. I remind you of this.

(b) *dē* with the **Abl.** very frequently.

dē proeliō vōs admoneō.

II. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting :

accūsō, arguō, coarguō, reum faciō, absolvō, take the *Gen.* of the *Charge*.

prōditiōnis accūsāre, reum facere—to accuse of, to prosecute for treason.

(a) Verbs of Condemning, **damnō, l ; condemnō, l,** take

(i) *Gen.* of the *Charge* ;

capitis damnātus, condemned on a capital charge.

(ii) *Abl.* of Penalty.

capite, morte, exiliō damnātus, condemned to death, exile.

III. **miseret, poenitet, pudet, taedet, piget ;**

pity, repent, shame, weary, grieve, take

Acc. of *Person* feeling ;

Gen. of *Person* or *Thing* that causes the feeling.

Eōrum nōs miseret. We pity them.

Mē stultitiae meae pudet. I am ashamed of my folly.

Obs. **mē hōc pudet.** The neuter pronouns **hōc, illud, quod,** are used instead of the *Gen.*

Obs. **Mē poenitet vixisse, hōc fecisse, quod haec fecimus.**

3. **interest** and **refert,** it is of interest, it concerns : take the following constructions :

(a) The *Person Interested* in the *Gen.*

interest omnium ; illōrum refert.

(b) But **meā, tuā, suā, nostrā, vestrā interesse.**

With possessive pronouns the *Abl. Sing. Fem.* of the *Possessive* is used.

4. (a) **Genitive of Value** (Indefinite Value)

Expressed by **tanti, quanti, parvi, magni, plūris, minōris**
(sc. **pretii** = price).

Tanti amicitiam tuam habeō, faciō, aestimō.

So highly do I value your friendship.

(b) **Genitive of Price** (Indefinite Price)

Expressed by **tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris**, with verbs of
buying (**emō**) and selling (**vendō**).

These uses of the Gen. with verbs correspond to the Gen. of
Quality with nouns.

IDIOMS

- (a) Everything is in the hands of **Omnia sunt hostium.**
the enemy.

This house belongs to my father. **Haec domus est mei patris.**

hostium and **patris** are *Predicate Possessive Genitives*.

- (b) An extension of this principle is seen in the following common
idiom.

It is the duty of a judge to follow the truth. **Jūdicis est vērū sequi.**

This is the business of an instructor. **Hōc est praeceptōris.**

It is characteristic of a wise man. **Sapientis est.**

It is the height of madness. **Summae dēmentiae est.**

- (c) It is my duty. **Meum est.**

In the case of Personal Pronouns the *Neuter* of the *Possessive*
is used.

- (d) Any man may err. **Cūjusvis hominis est errāre.**

- (e) A man of courage. **Vir fortis.**

A man of wisdom. **Vir sapiens.**

A man of good sense. **Vir prūdens.**

You cannot use the Genitive of Quality unless a qualifying word
is attached to the noun.

THE ABLATIVE

The Ablative is essentially an Adverbial Case. The relations it expresses are adverbial in character, and are very numerous.

It combines the uses of three cases originally distinct; the Ablative Case; the Instrumental Case; and the Locative Case.

Its uses accordingly are treated under these three divisions.

Summary of Rules

A—ABLATIVE PROPER

1. Ablative of Motion away from;

Usually with a preposition '*ab*' or '*ex*,' except with

(a) Names of towns and small islands;

(b) *rūre, domō, humō*. (See 119, 4).

2. Ablative of Source or Origin

Used with *ortus, nātus* (and in poetry with others of similar meaning).

Jove nātus; nōbili genere ortus.

(a) *ex mē nātus*. Pronouns regularly take *ex*.

(b) *ortus ab, oriundus ab*, denote more remote descent.

oriundī ab Sabinis, descended from the Sabines.

(c) *ex aurō factus*, made of gold.

The Abl. of *Material* is closely related to Abl. of Source.

3. Ablative of Separation

Used with verbs and adjectives, sometimes with, sometimes without a preposition.

Culpā vacat. He is free from fault.

Mē timōre liberat. He frees me from fear.

metū vacuus. timōre liber.

(a) *liberō* usually; *solvō, egeō, cārēō, vacō*; and usually *liber, vacuus, nūdus, solūtus, inānis* and others are used without a preposition.

(b) *indigeō* regularly takes the Gen.

4. Ablative of Comparison

Is used instead of a nominative or accusative with '*quam*'

puer puellā altior est.

- (a) In other cases than nom. or acc. '*quam*' must be used.
māter puerō quam puellae cārior est.
- (b) *Spē omnium celerius vēnit.* He came sooner than anyone had expected.
plūs iustō, more than is right. (*iustō*, the neuter of the Adj. used as a substantive.)
- (c) *Non longius mille et quingentis passibus aberat.*
Ariovistus vix plūs duo millia passuum aberat.
Amplius hōris quatuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt.
- amplius, plūs, minus, longius,* may or may not affect the syntax of the accompanying words.

5. Ablative of the Agent with 'ā' or 'ab'

Is used with passive verbs to express the Person by whom something is done.

Ā Caesare interfectus est. He was killed by Caesar.

- (a) Collective nouns and abstract nouns personified, may take this construction.

ā multitudīne. ā Fortūnā.

- (b) A Secondary Agent is expressed by '*per*.'

Caesar per explorātōrēs certior factus est.

B—INSTRUMENTAL ABLATIVE

I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means, or Instrument

Cause—Laudis amōre dūcimur. We are influenced by the love of praise.

Note the phrases—

jussū meō.

By my order.

injussū, rogātū, etc., Caesaris.

Without the order, by request of Caesar.

Manner—with or without 'cum.'

Haec cum diligentiā fēcit.

Haec magnā cum diligentiā fēcit, or

Haec magnā diligentiā fēcit.

Use '*cum*' unless an emphatic adjective is added to the noun.

Means or Instrument ;

Gladiō interfectus est.

2. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance

bonis auspiciis.

Under good auspices.

Longō intervallō sequitur.

He follows at a great interval.

This Abl. is closely allied to Abl. Absolute and both are closely allied to Abl. of Accompaniment.

3. Ablative of Accompaniment is used with *cum* :

Cum Caesare vēnit. Cum tēlō vēnit.

(a) *Observe the forms mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbiscum, vōbiscum.*

(b) In military language '*cum*' may be omitted when an adjective except a numeral, is added to the noun.

omnibus cōpiis ; ingenti exercitū ; magnā manū.

cum exercitū ; cum tribus legiōnibus ; dum decimā legiōne.

4. Ablative of Price

Aurō patriam vendidit.

He sold his country for gold.

Vile est vigintī minis.

It is cheap at twenty mine.

Multō sanguine Poenis victoria stetit.

The victory cost the Carthaginians much blood.

(a) The words **magnō, plūrimō, parvō, minimō, vili, tantulō** (sc. **pretiō**), are used to denote *Indefinite Price*.

5. Ablative of Measure of Difference

Used with Comparatives and words implying comparison.

tribus pedibus āltior, three feet higher ; **ūnō diē longior,** one day longer ;

tertiā parte mājor, a third larger ; **paulō post** a little (while) after (afterwards).

6. Ablative of Quality or Description, with an Adjective.

vir summō ingeniō ; summā virtūte adolescens ;

(a) Compare (Page 288, 5)

7. Ablative of Specification or Respect

Rēx nōmine, nōn potestāte erat. He was king in name, not in power.

Alterō oculō captus, blind in one eye.

Pede claudus, lame of foot.

mōribus similēs, like in character ; **minor nātū ; nātū mājimus.**

This use is closely related to 'The Place Where.'

8. Ablative Absolute (Page 159)

C—LOCATIVE ABLATIVE

1. Abl. of the Place Where (Page 119, 5.)
2. Abl. of the Place from Which (Page 119, 5.)
3. Abl. of the Route by Which
 Duābus simul portis ēruptionem fēcit.
 He made a sally from two gates at the same time.
4. Abl. of Time When (Page 116, 1.)
5. Abl. of Time Within Which (Page 116, 3.)

SPECIAL RULES

The following Idiomatic uses of the Abl. may be explained under one or other of the preceding rules.

1. **utor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor** govern the Abl. (Page 136, 7, 8.)

2. The following **Adjectives** take the Abl.

dignus, indignus, contentus, praeditus, frētus; (and **liber**).
 (Page 94, 5.)

The Abl. is one of *Specification* or *Instrument*.

dignus morte; **suā sorte contentus**;
ingeniō magnō praeditus; **virtūte frētus**.

3. **opus est** and **ūsus est**. There is need.

Take the *Dat.* of the *Person* who needs; the *Abl.* of the *Thing* needed. The Abl. is one of *Specification* or *Instrument*.

Opus est nōbis auxiliō tuō. We need your aid.

Ablative with Prepositions

ā or ab	cum	prae
absque	dē	prō
clam	ē or ex	sine
cōram	palam	tenu

under

(Page

liber).

of the
ion or

VOCABULARY

ABBREVIATION

NOTE. —The references are to the pages and sections of this book.

abl.	ablative	neg.	negative
acc.	accusative	N.	neuter
adj.	adjective	nom.	nominative
card.	cardinal	num.	numeral
comp.	comparative	ord.	ordinal
conj.	conjunction	p. p.	perf. part. dep.
def.	defective	p. p. p.	perf. part. pass.
dep.	deponent	pres. p.	present participle
distrib.	distributive	pl.	plural
F.	feminine	prep.	preposition
gen.	genitive	pro.	pronoun
imper.	imperative	rel.	relative
impers.	impersonal	sc.	supply
indecl.	indeclinable	sing.	singular
intr.	intransitive	subj.	subjunctive
interr.	interrogative	sup.	superlative
irr.	irregular	tr.	transitive
loc.	locative	v.	verb
M.	masculine	voc.	vocative

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

NOTE.—In this Vocabulary English words derived from Latin and of the same meaning as the Latin word are put in *Italics* in square brackets; other derivative or cognate words in English are put in square brackets at the end but not in *Italics* [].

- ā**: see **ab**.
- ab** (**ā**, **abs**): prep. with abl., *by* (18, 3: 76, 5); *from* (19, 1) [akin to Eng. *Off*, *Of*].
- ab dō**, **-dere**, **-didī**, **-ditum**, v. tr., *conceal*, *hide*.
- ab eō**, **-īre**, **-īi** (**-īvī**), **-itum**, v. irr. (218, 3), *go away*, *depart*.
- abhinc**, adv., *ago* (116, 4).
- abiēs**, **etis**, F., *fir*, *spruce*.
- ab jiciō**, **-ere**, **-jēcī**, **-jectum**, v. tr., *throw away*.
- ab ripiō**, **-ere**, **-ripiū**, **-reptum**, v. tr., *snatch away*.
- absens** (gen. **absentis**), adj., *absent*.
- ab sum**, **-esse**, **-fui**, v. intr. (208, 7, 8), *be distant*, *be absent*.
- tantum abest ut** . . . **ut**, *so far from . . . that* (244, 1 (b)).
- haud multum abesse quin**, *to be within a very little of* (247, 4 (a), 6).
- āc**: see **atque**.
- accēdit**, **-ere**, **-accessit**, v. impers., *it is added* (244, 1 (b)).
- ac cēdō**, **-cēdere**, **-cessī**, **-cessum**, v. intr., *go to*, *come up*, *approach*. [**Accede**]
- accidit**, **-ere**, **-accidit**, v. impers., *it happens* (223, 3, 4). [**Accident**]
- ac cipiō**, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum**, v. tr., *receive*, *accept*.
- ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, adj. (81), *sharp*, *keen*, *aerere* (comp. **ācrior**; sup. **ācerrimus**). [**Acerid**, **Eager**]
- aciēs**, **ēi**, F., *line (of battle)*.
- ācritēr**, adv., *fiercely* (comp. **ācrius**; sup. **ācerrimē**). [**Eagerly**]
- ad**, prep. with acc. *to*, (after verbs of motion, 16 (2)); *towards*; *near*; *for* (of time prospective, 116, 6); *for the purpose of* (182, 4). [**cf. Eng. At.**]
- ad dūcō**, **-ere**, **-dūxi**, **-ductum**, v. tr., *lead to*, *influence*.
- ad eō**, **-īre**, **-īvī** (**īi**), **-itum**, v. irr. (218, 3), *go to*, *approach*.
- adeō**, adv., *so*, *to such an extent*.
- ad hortor**, **-ārī**, **-hortātus**, v. dep., *urge*, *exhort*.
- adhuc**, adv., *as yet*, *so far*.
- ad moneō**, **-ēre**, **-monuī**, **-monitum**, v. tr., *advise*, *warn*. [**Admonish**]
- adolēscēns**, **-entis**, M., *young man*.
- ad orior**, **-īrī**, **-ortus**, v. dep., *attack*, *assail*.
- ad sum**, **-esse**, **-fui**, v. intr. (with dat., 208, 8), *be present*, *be near*, *help*.
- adversus**, **a**, **um**, adj., [**adverse**]: **rēs adversae**, *adversity*, *defeat*.
- adventus**, **-ūs**, M., *approach*. [**Advent**]
- aedificium**, **-ī**, N., *building*. [**Edifice**]
- aedificō**, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, v. tr., *build*.
- aeger**, **-gra**, **-grum**, adj., *sick* (comp. **aegrīor**; sup. **aegerrimus**).
- Aegina**, **-ae**, F., *Aegina*. (*an island near Athens*).

aegrē, adv., *with difficulty, scarcely*
(comp. **aegrius**; sup. **aeger-**
rimē :

aegrē ferre, *to be annoyed at*
(214, 5).

Aenēas, -ae, M.,
Aeneas, a Trojan prince.

aequitās, -ātis, F.,
fairness, right. [Equity]

aequus, -a, -um, adj., *even, just* :
aequus animus, *resignation.*
[Equanimity]

aestās, -ātis, F., *summer.*

aestus, -ūs, M., *tide.*

aetās, -ātis, F., *age.*

af ferō, -ferre, **attulī**, **allātum**,
v. tr., *bring to.*

Āfrica, -ae, F., *Africa.*

Āfricānus, -ī, M., *Africanus.*
a second cognomen of Scipio :
(see **nomen**).

Āfricus, -a, -um, adj. of *Africa* :
(sc. **ventus**) *the south-west wind.*

ager, **agrī**, M., *field* :
pl., **agrī** *lands, territory.*
[Agrarian]

agger, -eris, M.,
mound (of a camp).

ag gredior, -gredi, -gressus,
v. dep., *attack, assail.*
[Aggressive]

agmen, -inis, N.,
army (on the march).

agō, -ere, **ēgī**, actum, v. tr.,
drive, do :

id ago ut, *I make it my aim to*
(240, 8). [Act]

agricola, -ae, M., *farmer.*

agricultūra, -ae, F., *agriculture.*

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj.,
brisk, quick, lively : (comp.
alacrior; sup. **alacerrimus**).

alacritās, -ātis, F.,
quickness, eagerness, [alacrity].

Alba Longa (gen. **Albae Longae**),
Alba Longa, a city of Latium.

Albānī, -ōrum, M.,
Albans, a people dwelling in
Latium, near Rome.

Albānus, a, -um, adj., *Alban.*

aliās, adv., *at another time.*

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj.,
of, belonging to another.
[Alien]

aliquamdiū, adv., *for some time.*

aliquantus, -a, -um, adj.,
some, considerable.

aliquis, -qua, -quid, or **quod**,
indef. pro. adj., *some one, some*
(149, 4).

alius, -a, -ud, adj. pro., *another* :
alius . . . alius, *one . . . another*
(48, 2).

alō, -ere, **alui**, **altum**, v. tr.,
nourish, rear, maintain.

Alpēs, -ium, F., pl., *the Alps.*

altē, adv., *deeply.*

alter, -era, -erum, adj. pro.,
the other : **alter . . . alter**, *the one*
. . . the other (49, 3).

altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall, deep* :
in altō, *in the deep.* [Altitude]

amans (gen. **amantis**), part. adj.,
loving (85) :

patriae amans, *patriotic*

ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr.,
walk.

amicus, -ī, M., *friend.* [Amicable]

amittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr.,
lose.

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., *love.*

amor, -ōris, M., *love.* [Amorous]

an, conj. (1) *introducing a deliber-*
ative question, but not trans-
lated (194, 5, Note) :

(2) *in a double question.*
utrum . . . an, *whether . . . or*
(44, 5).

ancilla, -ae, F., *maid-servant.*

ancora, -ae, F., *anchor.*

Ancus Martius (gen. **Ancī Martiī**).
Ancus Martius, a king of Rome.

- animadvertō, -ere, -verti, -versum,**
v. tr., *observe, notice.*
- animal, -ālis, N.,** *animal.*
- animus, -ī, M.,** *mind:*
aequus animus, *resignation.*
- annōn, conj.** (introducing the second part of a direct question), *or not* (44, 5).
- annus, -ī, M.,** *year.* [Annual]
- ante, prep.** with acc., *before* (of time and place):
ante urbem, *in front of the city;*
ante multōs annōs,
before many years (116, 5).
- ante, adv.,** *before:*
multis annis ante,
many years before (116, 5).
- antequam, conj.,** *before* (259, 8).
- antiquus, -a, -um, adj.,** *old, ancient.*
[Antiquity]
- Antōnius, -ī, M.,** *Marcus Antonius.*
- apertus, -a, -um, adj.,**
open. [Aperture]
- appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,**
call. [Appellation]
- appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** *approach.*
- apud, prep.** with acc., *at, near.*
- Apūlia, -ae, F.,**
Apulia, a district in Italy.
- aqua, -ae, F.,**
water. [Aqueous, Aquatic]
- aquila, -ae, F.,** *eagle.* [Aquiline]
- āra, -ae, F.,** *altar.*
- arbiter, -tri, M.,** *arbitrator.*
- arbitror, -ārī, -ātus, v. dep.,** *think.*
- arbor, -oris, F.,** *tree.* [Arbor]
- arcus, -ūs, M.,** *bow, arch.* [Arc]
- argentum, -ī, N.,**
silver. [Argentine]
- ariēs, -etis, M.,** *ram, battering-ram.*
- arma, -ōrum, N. pl.,** *arms* (32, 6).
- armātus, -a, -um** (p.p.p. of **armō** used as an), *adj., armed, in arms.*
- armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,**
[arm].
- arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,**
plough. [Arable]
- ars, artis, F.,** [art].
- arx, arcis, F.,** *citadel.*
- Ascanius, -ī, M.,**
Ascanius, son of Aeneas.
- Asia, ae, F.,** *Asia.*
- asper, -era, -erum, adj.,**
rough. [Asperity]
- aspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum,**
v. tr., *behold.* [Aspect]
- āter, ātra, ātrum, adj.,** *black, dark.*
- Athēnae, -ārum, F. pl.,** *Athens.*
- Athēniensēs, -ium, M. pl.,**
Athenians.
- atque, conj.,** *and* (atque is used before vowels and consonants)
ac before consonants only: the second word connected is the more important: **filius atque pater,** *the son and especially the father.*
- ātrōx** (gen. **ātrōcis**), *adj.,*
fierce, cruel. [Atrocious]
- Attica, ae, F.,**
Attica, a district of Greece.
- auctōritās, -ātis, F.,**
influence. [Authority]
- auctumnus, -ī, M.,** [autumn].
- audācia, -ae, F.,** *boldness.*
[Audacity]
- audacter, adv.,** *boldly:*
(comp. **audācius**; sup. **audācissimē**).
- audāx** (gen. **audācis**), *adj.,*
bold, daring: (comp. **audācior**; sup. **audācissimus**).
- audeō, -ēre, ausus sum,** *semi-dep.,*
dare, venture (135, 5).
- audiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, v. tr.,**
hear. [Audible]
- au ferō, -ferre, abs tulli, ab lātum,**
v. tr., *take away* (214, 3).

au fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum.
v. intr., *flee away.*

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum, v. tr.,
increase. [Augment]

aureus, -a, -um, adj., golden.

auriga, -ae, M., charioteer.

aurum, -ī, N., gold.
[Ore, Auriferous]

Auster, -tri, M., South Wind.
[Austral, Australia]

aut, conj., or: aut., aut. either...or.

autem, conj. (never first word in a
sentence), but, moreover, how-
ever.

auxilium, -ī, N., help, aid:
pl., **auxilia, [auxiliaries] (32, 5).**

avāritia, -ae, F., [avarice].

Aventinus, -ī, M.,
Aventine, a hill of Rome.

avidus, -ā, -um, adj., fond of
(with gen. 93). [Avidity]

avis, -is, F., bird. [Aviary]

avus, -i, M., grandfather.

II

barbarus, -i, M. [barbarian], savage.

beātus, -a, -um, adj., happy, blest.

Belgae, ārum, M. pl.,
Belgae, a Gallic tribe.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj.,
warlike. [Bellicose.]

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr.,
wage war.

bellum, -ī, N., war:
bellī, in war (118);
bellum gerō, wage, carry on
war. [Belligerent]

bene, adv., well (comp. melius;
sup. optimē). [Benediction,
Beneficent]

benignus, -a, -um, adj., kind.
[Benign]

bibō, -ere, bibī, v. tr., drink.
[Imbibe]

biduum, -ī, M., two days' space.

bīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num.,
two apiece.

bis, adv. num., twice.

blandior, -īrī, -itus, v. dep., flutter.
[Bland]

bonus, -a, -um, adj.,
good (comp. melior; sup.
optimus) (91, 3).

bōs, bovis, M. or F., ox, cow;
pl. **cattle (decl. 67). [Bovine,**
Bovril]

brevī, (sc. tempore), as adv.,
in a short time, shortly.

brevis, -e, adj., short, brief.
[Brevity]

Britannī, -ōrum, M., pl., Britons.

Britannia, -ae, F., Britain.

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj., British:
bellum Britannicum,
war in Britain.

Brūtus, -ī, M., Brutus.

C

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum, v. intr.,
fall. [Cadence]

caecus, -a, -um, adj., blind.

caedēs, -is, F., slaughter.

Caelius, -a, -um, adj. (mons),
Caelian (hill of Rome).

caelum, -ī, N., heaven, sky.
[Celestial]

Caesar, -aris, M., Caesar.

Cāius, -ī, M.,
Caius, a Roman praenomen
(see nōmen).

calcar, -āris, N., spur.

campester, -tris, -tre, adj., level.

campus, -ī, M., plain, field.

Campus Martius, (gen. Campī
Martii), M.,
Campus Martius, plain of
Mars.

Canada, -ae, F., Canada.

- canis, -is, M. or F., dog.** [Canine]
Cannae, -arum, F. pl., Cannae
Cannensis, -e, adj., of or belonging to Cannae: pugna Cannensis, the battle of Cannae.
cantō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., sing. [Chant, Canticles]
cantus, -ūs, M., song, singing.
capiō, -ere, -cēpi, captum v. tr., take, take captive:
consilium capiō, form a plan.
Capitolinus, -a, -um, adj. (sc. mons), the Capitoline (hill of Rome).
Capitolium, -i, N., the Capitol.
captivus, -i, M., captive.
caput, -itis, N., head, capital.
cārē. adv., dearly.
carmen, -inis, N., song, poem.
carō, carnis, F., flesh, meat.
carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptum, v. tr., pluck.
cārus, -a, -um, dear, beloved. [Charity]
Cassius, -i, M., Cassius.
castigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., chastise. [Castigate]
castra, -ōrum, N. pl., camp (32).
causa, -ae, F., reason [cause]:
quā dē causā, for what reason, why:
causā (abl. of causa, with gen.), for the sake of, for the purpose of.
cautē [cautiously].
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, v. intr., go, withdraw, yield.
celebrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., [celebrate].
celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, fleet (82, 3), (comp. celerior; sup. celerrimus).
celeritās, -ātis, F., speed, swiftness. [Celerity]
celeriter, adv., quickly: (comp. celerius; sup. celerrimē).
Celtae, -arum, M., Celtae, Celts.
cēna, -ae, F., dinner, supper.
cēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., dine.
centēsimus, -a, -um, adj., ord. num., hundredth.
centum, card. num., hundred. [Cent, Century]
centuriō, -ōnis, M. [centurion], an officer commanding a century, originally a hundred men.
Ceres, -eris, F., Ceres, goddess of crops [Cerea.]
certāmen, -inis, N., struggle.
certior factus, having been informed (172, 4).
certus, -a, -um, adj., [certain], sure.
tē certiorem faciō, I inform you (172, 4).
Cicerō, -ōnis, M., Cicero.
circiter, adv., and prep. with acc., about, round about.
circum, prep. with acc., around.
circum dō, -dare, -dedi, dātum, v. tr., surround.
circum stō, -stāre, -stetī, no sup. v. tr., surround.
circum veniō, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, v. tr., surround. [Circumvent]
circus, -i, M. [circus], race-course.
citerior, -us, comp. nearer, hither:
Gallia Citerior, Gaul on the nearer (Roman) side of the Alps as opposed to Gallia Ulterior, Further Gaul, on the other side of the Alps.
citius, adv., comp. of citō, more quickly.
citō, adv., quickly.
citrā, prep. with acc., this side of.
civilis, -e, adj., [civil].
civis, -is, M., citizen.
civitās, -ātis, F., state.
clādēs, -is, F., defeat, disaster.

- clam**, adv., *secretly*.
clāmitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
shout often.
clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
shout.
clāmor, -ōris, M., *shout*, [clamor].
clārus, -a, -um, adj.,
bright, distinguished. [Clear, Clarify]
classis, -is, F., *fleet*.
claudō, -ere, clausi, clausum,
v. tr. [*close*], *shut*.
clausus, -a, -um,
p.p.p. used as an adj., *shut*,
[*closed*].
clemens, (gen. clementis), adj.,
mild, merciful.
coepi, -isse, coeptus, v. def.,
have begun, began (219, 2).
cōgō, -ere, cōgēi, coactam, v. tr.,
drive together, collect, force.
cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v.,
reflect, think.
cōgnōmen, -inis, N., *family name*,
(see nōmen).
cōgnōscō, -ere, cōgnōvī, cōg-
nitum, v. tr., *learn, ascertain*.
[Recognize]
co hibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. tr.
check, restrain.
cohors, -hortis, F., *cohort* (the tenth
part of a legion and containing
between 500 and 600 men).
collis, -is, M., *hill*.
collocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
station, place.
colloquium, -ī, N., *conversation*.
[Colloquy]
col loquor, -ī, -locūtus, v. dep.,
converse.
colō, -ere, colui, cultum, v. tr.,
worship. [Cult]
comes, -itis, M. or F., *companion*.
commeātus, -ūs, M., *supplies*.
commūnis, -e, adj.,
common, public, general.
commūtātiō, -ōnis, F., *change*
[Commutation]
com parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
collect, procure.
comperiō, -īre, -peri, -pertum,
v. tr., *find out, ascertain*.
com pleō, -ēre, -plēvi, -plētum,
v. tr., *fill*. [Completion]
com portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
bring in, collect.
comprehendō, -ere, -dī, -sum,
v. tr., *seize*. [Comprehend]
com probō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
approve.
concilium, -ī, N., [council].
con clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
v. intr., *shout together*.
con currō, -ere, -curri, -cursum,
v. intr., *rush together, engage*.
concursum, -ūs, M., *charge, assault*.
con demnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
[condemn].
conditor, -ōris, M., *founder*.
con dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr.,
found.
con ducō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum,
v. tr., *bring together; take a*
contract (187, 9).
con ferō, -ferre, -tuli, collātum,
v. tr., *bring together*. [Con-
ference]
confestim, adv., *immediately*.
con ficiō, -ere, -feci, -fectum, v. tr.,
accomplish, finish:
bellum conficiō, *end a war*.
con fidō, -ere, -fīsus, semi-dep.,
trust (with dat. or abl. 176, 6).
[Confide]
con firmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
establish, encourage, assure
[Confirm]
con gredior, -gredi, -gressus,
v. dep., *go together, meet,*
engage. [Congress]
con jiciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum,
v. tr., *hurl*.

- con jungō, -ere, -junxi, -junctum.**
v. tr., *join together*:
mē tibi conjungō, I join you.
[Conjunction]
- conjunx, conjugis, M. or F.,**
husband or wife. [Conjugal]
- conjūrāti, -ōrum, M. pl.,**
conspirators.
- conjūrātiō, -ōnis, F.,** *conspiracy.*
- conjūrātus, -ī, M.,** *conspirator.*
- cōnor, -āri, conātus, v. dep.,**
try, attempt.
- con scendō, -ere, di, -sum, v. tr.,**
climb, climb upon:
navem conscendō,
go on board ship.
- con sidō, -ere, sēdi, -sessum,**
v. intr., *encamp.*
- con scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum,**
v. tr., *enrol.* [Conscript]
- consilium, -ī, N.,** *plan, purpose.*
consilium capiō, or ineō.
form a plan. [Counsel];
- con sistō, -ere, constiti, no sup.**
v. intr., *come to a stand, get a*
footing.
- conspectus, ūs, M.,** *sight, view.*
- conspiciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectum,**
v. tr., *observe, behold.*
[Conspicuous]
- conspicor, -āri, -ātus, v. dep.,**
observe, notice, see.
- constantia, -ae, F.,**
firmness of purpose.
[Constancy]
- Constantinus, -ī, M.,** *Constantine.*
- constat, -āre, constitit, v. impers.,**
it is admitted (223, 3, 4):
inter omnes constat,
it is admitted by all, all admit.
- con stituō, -ere, -stitui, -stitūtum,**
v. tr., *resolve, determine, build*:
nāvēs constituo, moor ships.
- consuescō, -ere, -suēvi, -suētum,**
v. intr., *become or grow accus-*
tomed:
consuēvi, I am accustomed
(220, 3).
- consul, -ulis, M.,** *consul.*
- consūmō, -ere, sumpsi, sumptum,**
v. tr., *spend.* [Consume]
- consuētūdō, -inis, F.,** *custom.*
- consulātus, -ūs, M.,** *consulship.*
- con surgō, -ere, -surrexi, -sur-**
rectum, v. intr.,
rise together, rise.
- contendō, -ere, -di, -tum, v. intr.,**
march, set out, strive.
[Contend]
- contentus, -a, -um, adj.,**
contented with (with abl, 94, 5).
- continens, -entis** (pres. p. used as
an adj. with *terra* understood,
the continuous land) [continent],
mainland.
- continenter, adv.,** [continuously].
- con tineō, -ēre, -ī, -tentum, v. tr.,**
hold together, hold.
- contrā, prep. with acc.,** *against*:
contrā quam expectāvi,
contrary to my expectation.
- con vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,**
call together, assemble.
[Convocation]
- cōpia, -ae, F.,** *plenty, fertility*:
pl. *cōpiae, forces, troops* (32, 5).
[Copious]
- Corinthus, -ī, F.,** *Corinth.*
- cornū, -ūs, N.,**
horn, wing (of an army).
- corōna, -ae, F.,** *crown.* [Coronation]
- corpus, -oris, N.,** *body.*
[Corpse, Corporal]
- cor rumpō, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum,**
v. tr., [corrupt].
- cras, adv.,** *tomorrow.*
- Crassus, -ī, M.,** *Crassus.*
- crēber, -bra, -brum, adj.,**
frequent, numerous (comp.
crēbrior: sup. *crēberrimus*).
- crēdō, -ere, -crēdidi, crēditum,**
v. intr., *believe, trust* (176, 3, 4).
- creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,**
make, elect. [Create]
- crūdēliter, adv.,** *cruelly* (comp.
crūdēlius: sup. *crūdēlissimē*).

culpa, -ae, F., *fault, guilt*.
[Culpable]

culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
blame, find fault with.

cum, prep. with abl., *with* (76, 5, 6):
written as a suffix with per-
sonal and relative pronouns
(138, 6; 145, 5).

cum, conj., *when* (261, 1); *since*,
because, inasmuch as (252, 3);
although, whereas (255, Note);
whenever (263, 8):

cum primum, *as soon as* (259, 4);

cum jam, *when now*.

cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, v. dep.,
waver, hesitate, lag.

cupidus, -a, -um, adj., *desirous of*
(with gen. 93, 4).

cūr, interr. adv., *why?*

Cūrēs, -ium, F. pl.,
Cures, a town near Rome.

cūria, -ae, F., *senate-house*.

Curiatīi, -ōrum, M. pl.,
the Curiatii.

cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
care (187, 9).

currus, -ūs, M., *chariot*.

cursus, -ūs, M., *race, racing*.
[Course]

custōdia, -ae, F., *guard, watch*.
[Custody]

custōs, -ōdis, M., *guard*.

custōdiō, -īre, -īvi, -itum, v. tr.,
guard.

D

dē, prep. with abl.,
about, concerning (52, 5);
from, down from;

dē tertiā vigiliā, *about the third*
watch, just after the third watch
was set.

dea, -ae, F. (dat. and abl., pl.
deābus, 12, 4), *goddess*.

dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v.,
owe, ought (224, 7).

dē cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum,
v. intr., *go away, depart*.

decem, adj. card. num., *ten*.
[Decimal]

dē cernō, -ere, -crēvi, -crētum,
v. tr., *resolve [decree]* (240, 7).

decimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.,
tenth.

dēdecus, -ori, N., *disgrace*.

dē dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum,
v. tr., *escort*.

dēditio, -ōnis, F., *surrender*.

dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditum, v. tr.,
give up, surrender;

mē dēdō, *I surrender*.

dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -sum, v. tr.,
[*defend*].

dē ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, v. tr.,
carry down, offer, confer.

dē ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. intr.,
fail, fall away, revolt. [Defec-
tion]

dē fungor, -fungi, -functus,
v. dep., *perform, finish* (with
abl. 136, 8).

deinde, adv., *afterwards, next*.

dē jiciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr.,
cast down, throw down. [De-
jection]

dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
delight, please.

dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvi, dēlētum, v. tr.,
destroy.

Delphī, -ōrum, M., pl., *Delphi*.

dē migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
depart, move.

dē monstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
v. tr., *show, [demonstrate]*.

densus, -a, -um, adj., *thick [dense]*.

dē pellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum,
v. tr., *drive away, ward off*.

dē pōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum,
v. tr., *lay down [deposit]*.

dē populor, -ārī, -ātus, v. dep.,
derastate. [Depopulate]

- dē poscō, -ere, -popōscī**, no sup.
v. tr., *demand*.
- dēserō, -ere, -serui, -sertum**, v. tr.
[*desert*], *leave*.
- dē scribō, -ere, -scripsi, -scriptum**,
v. tr., *map out, divide*.
- dē siliō, -īre, -silui, -sultum**, v. intr.,
leap down.
- dēsistō, -ere, dēstiti, dēstitum**,
v. intr., *cease from, cease*
[*desist*].
- dēspērātō, -ōnis**, F. [*despair*]
- dē spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** [*despair*].
- dē sum, -esse, -fui**, v. intr.,
am wanting, lack (with dat.,
208, 7, 8).
- dē terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itum**, v. tr.,
frighten from, [deter].
- deus, -i**, M., *god*. [Deist]
- dexter, -tra, -trum**, adj.,
right (as opposed to left).
[Dexterity]
- dicō, -ere, dixi, dictum**, v. tr.,
speak, tell. [Diction]
- dictātor, -ōris**, M. [*dictator*].
- diēs, diēi**, M. (or F. in sing.);
M. in pl., *day* (101).
- dif ferō, -ferre, dis. tuli, di lātum**,
v. tr., *put off*.
- difficilis, e**, adj. [*difficult*].
- difficultās, -ātis**, F. [*difficulty*].
- dif fido, -ere, -fīsus**, v. semi-dep.,
distrust (with dat. 176, 4).
[Diffident]
- dignitās, -ātis**, F., *worth, rank*,
[*dignity*].
- dignus, -a, -um**, adj., *worthy of*
(with abl. 94, 5).
- diligens** (gen. *diligentis*), adj.
[*diligent*].
- diligentia, ae**, F., *care* [*diligence*].
- dimicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, v. intr.,
fight.
- dī mittō, -ere, -misi, -misum**
send away, [dismiss].
- dī ri iō, -ere, -ripiui, -reptum**,
v. tr., *plunder*.
- dis cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum**,
v. intr., *go away, depart*.
- discessus, -ūs**, M., *departure*.
- dis pliceō, -ēre, -plicui, -plicitum**,
v. intr. [*displease*] (with dat.
176, 4).
- dissimilis, -e**, adj., *unlike* (with
dat. 93, 3). [Dissimilar]
- dis trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum**,
v. tr., *separate, divide*
[Distract]
- diū**, adv., *long (of time)*: (comp.
diūtius; sup. *diūtissimē*).
- dives** (gen. *divitis*), adj., *rich*:
(comp. *divitior*; sup. *divi-*
tissimus).
- dividō, -ere, divisi, divisum**, v. tr.,
separate, [divide].
- divisus, -a -um** (p. p. of *dividō*,
used as an), adj., [*divided*]
- divitiae, -ārum**, F. pl., *riches*
(32, 6).
- dō, dāre, dedi, datum**, v. tr., *give*:
in fugam dō, put to flight.
- doceō, -ēre, docui, doctum**, v. tr.,
teach. [Docile]
- doctus, -a, -um**, adj., *learned*.
- dolor, -ōris**, M., *grief, pain*.
[Dolorous]
- dolus, -i**, M., *craft, guile, deception*.
- domi, at home** (100, 5; 118, 3).
- dominus, -i**, M., *lord, master*.
- domō, from home** (100, 5; 119, 4).
- domōs, home, homewards** ((100, 5).
- domum, home, homewards** (100, 5;
119, 4).
- domus, -ūs**, F., *house* (100, 5).
[Domestic]
- donec**, conj., *as long as* (259, 6);
until (259, 7).
- dōnum, -i**, M., *gift*. [Donation]
- dormiō, -īre, -ivi, -itum**, v. intr.,
sleep. [Dormitory]

dubitātiō, -ōnis, F., *hesitation*.
 dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
 [doubt], *hesitate* (247, 6; 248, 7).
 dubium, I, N. [doubt].
 ducentēsīmus, -a, -um, ord. num.
 adj., *two hundredth*.
 ducentī, -ae, -a, card. num. adj.,
 200.
 dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductum, v. tr.,
lead. [Duct]
 dulcis, e, adj., *sweet*.
 dum, conj., *while* (259, 5); *until*
 (259, 7); *as long as* (259, 6);
provided, if only (255, 7).
 Dumnorix, -igis, M.,
Dumnorix, a Gallic chief.
 duo, duae, duo, card. num. adj.,
 two (106, 5). [Dual, Duet]
 duodecim, card. num. adj.,
 twelve.
 duodecimīus, -a, -um, ord. num.
 adj., *twelfth*.
 dux, duris, M., *leader, guide*.
 [Dux]

E

ē, *see ex*.
 ē dicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictum, v. tr.,
order, give instructions. [Edict]
 ē dūcō, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum, v. tr.,
lead out, lead forth.
 ef ferō, -ferre, -ex tulī, ē lātum,
 v. tr., *carry out, carry off*.
 [Elated]
 ef ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr.,
bring to pass, cause, effect
 (244, 1).
 ef fugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, v.,
escape.
 ego, I (137, 1).
 ē gredior, -gredi, -gressus,
 v. dep., *go out of, issue, leave*.
 [Egress]
 ēgregiē, adv.,
admirably, excellently.
 ēgregius, -a, -um, adj., *excellent*.
 ēgressus, ūs, M.,
landing-place, landing.
 ē jiciō, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr.,
throw out. [Eject]
 ēloquentia, ae, F., [eloquence].
 ē migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
depart from. [Emigrant]
 enim, conj., *for* (not placed first,
 but generally after the first
 emphatic word in a sentence).
 Ennius, I, M.,
Ennius, a Roman poet.
 eō, ire, ī (ivī), itum, v. intr., *go*
 (217, 1, 2).
 eō, adv., *hither*.
 epistola, -ae, F., *letter*. [Epistle]
 eques, -itis, M., *cavalry soldier*.
 equester, -tris, -tre, adj.,
of or belonging to cavalry:
 proelium equestre, *a cavalry*
battle. [Equestrian]
 equitātus, -ūs, M., *cavalry* (col-
 lective noun).
 equitēs, um, M. (pl. of eques),
cavalry.
 equus, -i, M., *horse*. [Equine]
 Eretria, -ae, F., *Eretria*.
 ergō, conj., *therefore, wherefore*.
 errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
make a mistake, [err].
 ērudiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, v. tr.,
bring up, instruct. [Erudition]
 Esquilinus, -a, -um, adj., (mons),
the Esquiline (hill of Rome).
 essēda, -ae, F., *war chariot*.
 et, conj., *and*: et...et, *both...and*.
 etiam, adv., *even*.
 etiam si, conj., *even if* (255, 5).
 etsi, conj., *although: even if* (255, 5).
 Etrūria, -ae, F.,
Etruria, a district of Italy
(now Tuscany).
 Etruscī, -ōrum, M., pl.,
the Etruscans.
 Eurōpa, -ae, F., *Europe*.

ex, prep. with abl. (19, 1),
from, out of.
ex cēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum,
v. intr., go out of, depart from,
leave.
ex clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
v. intr., shout out, [exclaim].
ex eō, -ire, -ii, (-ivi), -itum,
v. intr., go out of, leave (218, 3).
exercitus, -ūs, M., army.
exiguus, -a, -um, adj., small.
exilium, -i, N., [exile].
existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
think.
ex orior, -iri, -ortus, v. dep.,
rise, arise, begin.
ex pellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum,
v. tr., drive out, banish, [expel].
experior, -iri, -pertus, v. dep.,
try, attempt. [Experience]
explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout.
explōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.
[explore].
ex pōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum,
v. tr., set forth, explain.
[Exposition]
ex pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
take by storm.
ex trahō, -ere, -trāxi, -tractum,
v. tr., draw out. [Extract]
extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. (sup. of
exterus 92, 1), outmost, last,
[extreme].
ē vertō, -ere, -verti, -versum, v. tr.,
overthrow.

F

faber, fabri, M., workman.
[Fabric]
fābula, -ae, F., story. [Fable]
facile, adv., easily: (comp. **facilius**;
sup. **facillimē**, 97, 6).
facilis, -e, adj., easy: (comp.
facilior; sup. **facillimus**, 90, 2).
[Facility]
facinus, -oris, N., wicked deed.

faciō, -ere, feci, factum, v. tr.,
do, make.
tē certiōrem faciō, I inform you
(173, 5).
ex quō factum est,
the result of this was (244, 1, (h)).
factum, -i, N., deed. [Fact]
facultās, -ātis, F.,
opportunity, ability.
fāgus, -i, F., beech-tree.
fallō, -ere, fefelli, falsum, v. tr.,
deceive. [Fail, False]
fās, indecl. N., right (11, 4, III).
faveō, -ēre, fāvi, fautum, v. intr.,
favor (175, 2; 176, 4).
fēliciter, adv., successfully (comp.
fēlicius; sup. **fēlicissimē**).
fēlix (gen. **fēlicis**), adj., happy
(84, 1). [Felicitous]
fera, -ae, F., wild beast.
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, v. tr.
irreg. [bear], carry (213).
ferōx (gen. **ferōcis**) adj.,
spirited, warlike, fierce
[Ferocious]
ferrum, -i, N.,
iron, (iron) spear-head, sword;
ferrō et igni, with fire and sword.
[Ferrous]
fessus, -a, -um, adj., wearied.
festinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
hasten.
fidēs, -ei, F., faith, loyalty.
[Fidelity]
fidō, ere, fisis, v. semi-dep.,
trust, rely upon (135, 3), (with
dat. or abl., 176, 6).
filia, -ae, F. (dat. and abl. pl.
filiābus, 12, 4), daughter.
[Filial]
filius, -i, M., son (24, 4).
finiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr.,
[finish], end.
finis, -is, M. or F., end:
pl. M. **finēs**, -ium,
borders, territory (62).

finitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring*.

finitimus, -i, M., *neighbor*.

fiō, fieri, factus sum, v. irr.
(pass. of faciō, 213), *am made, become*.

firmus, -a, -um, *strong*, [firm]

flens (gen. flentis) (pres. p. of fleō
used as an) adj., *weeping, in tears*.

fleō, -ere, flēvi, flētum, v. intr.
weep.

flōs, flōris, M., [flower].

fluctus, -ūs, M., *wave*, [Fluctuate]

flūmen, -inis, N., *river*.

foedus, -eris, N., *treaty*.
[Federation]

fontis, M., *fountain, spring*.

fōre, short form for futurum esse,
fut. infm. of sum.

formidō, -inis, F., *fear*.
[Formidable]

forte, adv., *by chance*, [Fortuitous]

fortiter, adv., *bravely* (comp.
fortius; sup. fortissimē).

fortis, -e, adj., *brave, valiant, noble*
(82). [Fortify]

fortitudō, -inis, F., *bravery*
[fortitude].

fortūna, -ae, F., *fortune*,
(Fortūna, goddess of chance)

fortūnae, -arum, pl.,
fortunes, possessions.

forum, -i, N., *forum, market-place*.

fossa, -ae, F., *trench*;
fossā vallōque, *with trench and rampart*.

frangō, -ere, frēgi, fractum, v. tr.,
break, shatter. [Fracture]

frāter, -tris, M., *brother*.
[Fraternal]

fraus, fraudis, F., *deception* [fraud].

frētus, -a, -um, adj., *relying on*
(with abl. 94, 5).

frīgus, -oris, N., *cold, frost*.
[Frigid]

fructus, -ūs, M., [fruit] (99).

frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj.,
of or belonging to corn;

rēs frūmentāria, *corn supply*
(102, 6).

frūmentor, -ārī, frumentātus,
v. dep., *forage, get grain*.

frūmentum, -i, N., *corn, grain*;
frumenta, pl., *crops* (32).

fruor, frui fructus, v. dep.,
enjoy (with abl. 136, 8)

Fufētius, -ī, Fufētius, Alban king.

fuga, -ae, F., *flight*;
in fugam dō, *put to flight*.

fugax, (gen. fugācis) adj., *fleeing*.
fugiō, -ere, fūgi, fugitum, v. intr.,
flee. [Fugitive]

fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
put to flight.

fulgur, -uris, N., *lightning*.

funda, -ae, F., *sling*.

fundō, -ere, fūdi, fūsum, v. tr.,
pour, rout.

fungor, fungī, functus, v. dep.,
perform, discharge (with abl.,
136, 8).

fūnis, -is, M., *rope, cable*.

G

Gabii, -ōrum, M., pl.,

Gabii, a town near Rome.

Gallia, -ae, F., *Gaul, including the
lands bordered by the Po, the
Alps, the Rhine, the Ocean and
the Mediterranean*;

Gallia Citerior, *Hither Gaul*
(Northern Italy);

Gallia Ulterior, *Farther Gaul*
(France).

Gallus, -i, M., *a Gaul*.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum,
v. semi-dep., *rejoice* (135, 5).

gaudium, -i, N., *joy*.

gener, -eri, M., *son-in-law*.

- gens, gentis, F.,**
[clan], race, nation.
genus, -eris, N., *race, kindred.*
gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum, v. tr.,
carry on, wage (war), do.
Germāni, -ōrum, M. pl. [Germani].
Germānus, -a, -um, adj. [German]
gladiātor, -ōris, M. [gladiator].
gladius, -ī, M., *sword. [Glave]*
gracilis, -e, adj., *slender* : [comp.
gracilior : sup. **gracillimus).**
[Graceful]
Graeci, -ōrum, M. pl. [Greeks].
Graecia, -ae, F. [Greece]
Graecus, -a, -um, adj. [Greek].
grātulor, -āri, ātus, v. dep.,
rejoice, [congratulate].
grātus, -a, -um, adj.,
pleasing, acceptable.
gravis, -e, adj., *heavy. [Gravity]*
graviter, adj., *severely :*
graviter ferō, am annoyed at
(214, 5).
grex, gregis, M., *flock, herd.*
[Gregarious]
gubernō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,
rule [govern].
- H**
- habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. tr.,**
have, hold, regard.
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,
dwell, dwell in, [inhabit].
Hannibal, -alis, M.,
Hannibal, a famous Cartha-
ginian general.
hasta, -ae, F., *spear.*
haud, adv. (with adjs. and advs.),
not.
Hector, -oris, M.,
Hector, a famous Trojan
warrior.
Helvetii, -ōrum, M. pl.,
Helvetii, a Gallic tribe
- heri, adv.,** *yesterday.*
hibernus, -a, -um, adj., *wintery.*
hiberna, -ōrum, N. pl. (for
hiberna castra), *winter camp,*
winter quarters (32, 5, 8).
hic, adv., *here.*
hic, haec, hōc, dem. pron., *this*
(140, 2) :
hic, ille, this, that, the latter
the former (141, (c)).
hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr.,
pass the winter, winter.
hiems, hiemis, F., *winter.*
hinc, adv., *hence, from this place.*
hodiē, adv., *today.*
homō, -inis, M., *man. [Human]*
honor, -ōris, M., *[honor], officer.*
in honore habeo, hold in honor.
hōra, -ae, F., *[hour]*
Horatii, -ōrum, M., pl.,
the [Horatii].
Horātius, -ī, M.,
[Horace,] a Roman poet.
hortor, -āri, ātus, v. dep.,
[urge, encourage].
hortus, -ī, M., *garden*
hospes, -itis, M., *a*
[Hospitality]
Hostilius, -ī, M., *Hostilius.*
hostis, -is, M., *enemy. [Hostile]*
humī, locative of humus, -ī, F.
(118, 3), on the ground.
humilis, -e, adj., *low (90, 2).*
[Humility]
- I**
- ibi, adv.,** *there.*
ubi, -ibi, where, there.
icō, -ere, icī, ictum, v. tr., *strike :*
foedus icō, strike a treaty
idem, eadem, idem, dem. adj.,
pro., the same (143, 2, 5) :
idem, quī, the same, as
(146, 7. [Identity]

idōneus, **a**, **-um**, **adj.**, *suitable, fit*:
(comp. **magis idōneus**; sup. **māximē idōneus**, 91, 4; with
dat. 93, 3):

idōneus ad nāvīgandum,
suitable for sailing (183.
Ex. A).

Īdūs, **-uum**, **F. pl.**,
Idea (the 15th of March, May,
July, October: the 13th of other
months).

ignāvia, **-ae**, **F.**, *cowardice, sloth*.

ignis, **-is** (abl. **-e** or **-ī**, 62), **M.**, *fire*:
ferro et igni, *with fire and sword*.
[Ignite]

ignōscō, **-ere**, **ignōvī**, **ignōtum**,
v. intr., *pardon, forgive* (with
dat., 176, 4).

ille, **illa**, **illud**, **dem**, **pro.** (140, 3),
that:

ille...hic, *that...this, the former*
...the latter:

ille Caesar, *the well-known or*
famous Caesar.

imbellis, **-e**, **adj.**, *unwarlike*.

impar (gen. **impāris**), **adj.**,
unequal.

impedimentum, **-i**, **N.**, *hindrance*
[*impediment*]:

impedimenta, **-ōrum**, **pl.**,
baggage (32, 5).

imperātor, **-ōris**, **M.**, *general*,
[*emperor*].

imperitus, **-a**, **-um**, **adj.**,
unskilled in (with gen.).

imperium, **-ī**, **N.**, *power, command*
[*empire*].

imperō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, **v. intr.**,
command (with dat. 176,
2, 4.)

impetrō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, **v. tr.**,
obtain by request (with **ut**,
244, 1).

impetus, **-ūs**, **M.**, *attack*.
[*Impetuous*]

imprudentia, **-ae**, **F.**,
thoughtlessness. [Imprudence]

īmus, **-a**, **-um**, **adj.** (sup. of
īferus, 92, 1).

īmus mons,
the foot of the mountain.

in, **prep.** with **acc.** with verbs of
motion, *into, upon, against*;
with **abl.** with verbs of rest,
in, on, among, within.

in cendō, **-ere**, **-dī**, **-sum**, **v. tr.**,
set on fire, burn. [Incendiary]

in cipiō, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum**, **v. tr.**,
begin. [Incipient]

incitō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, **v. tr.**,
instigate, spur on, [incite].

incognitus, **-a**, **-um**, **adj.**, *unknown*.

incola, **-ae**, **M.**, *inhabitant*.

in colō, **-ere**, **-colui**, **-cultum**, **v. tr.**,
inhabit.

incolumis, **-e**, **adj.**, *safe, in safety*.

incrēdibilis, **-e**, **adj.** [incredible].

inde, **adv.**, *thence, from there*:
unde...inde, *whence...thence*
(146, 7).

in dicō, **-ere**, **-dixī**, **-dictum**, **v. tr.**,
declare:

bellum indicō with **dat.**,
declare war against (229, 4).

indignus, **-a**, **-um**,
unworthy (with **abl.** 94, 5).

indūtiae, **-ārum**, **F. pl.**, *truce*
(32, 6).

Indutiomārus, **-ī**, **M.**,
Indutiomarus, a Gallic chief.

in eō, **-īre**, **-īī** (**-īvī**), **-itum**, **v. tr.**,
go into, enter upon (218, 3):
consilium ineō, *form a plan*.

infēlix (gen. **infēlicis**), **adj.**,
unhappy, unsuccessful (comp.
infēlicior; sup. **infēlicissimus**).

in ferō, **-ferre**, **-tuli**, **illātum**, **v. tr.**
(214, 3), *bring against*:

bellum inferō with **dat.**,
make war upon (229, 4, 5).

inferior, **-ius**, **comp.** of **īferus**
(92, 1), *lower*.

īfestus, **-a**, **-um**, **adj.**, *hostile*.

- infirmus**, -a, -um, adj., *weak*. [*infirm*].
- ingenium**, -i, N., *ability, nature, disposition*. [*Ingenuity*]
- ingens**, (gen. **ingentis**), adj., *huge, immense, serious*.
- in gredior**, -gredi, -gr̄sus, v. tr., *go into, enter*. [*Ingress*]
- inimicus**, a, um, adj., *unfriendly*. [*Inimical*]
- in jiciō**, -ere, -jēcī, -jectum, v. tr., *throw into, throw upon*. [*Inject*]
- injūria**, -ae, F., *wrong*, [*injury*].
- inopia**, -ae, F., *want, lack, scarcity*.
- inquit**, v. def. intr., *says he* (placed after one or more words of a direct quotation, with subject after verb).
- insciens**, (gen. **inscientis**), adj., *not knowing, ignorant*.
- insciente Caesare**, *without the knowledge of Caesar*.
- insidiae**, -ārum, F. pl., *ambush, ambuscade* (32, 6). [*Insidious*]
- institutum**, -i, N., *habit, custom*. [*Institution*]
- instruō**, -ere, -struxī, -structum, v. tr., *draw up (of troops)*.
- insula**, -ae, F., *island*. [*Insular*]
- integer**, -gra, -grum, adj., *whole, entire, fresh*. [*Integral*]
- intellegō**, -ere, -lexī, -lēctum, v. tr., *am aware, perceive*.
- inter**, prep. with acc., *among, between; within (of time, 116, 3)*.
- interdum**, adv., *sometimes*.
- interea**, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime*.
- inter eō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, v. intr., *perish* (218, 3).
- interest, interesse, interfuit**, v. impers., *it is the interest of, it concerns*.
- interest omnium**, *it is the interest of all* (226, 4);
- meā interest**, *it is of interest to me* (226, 5).
- interficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr., *kill*.
- interim**, adv., *meanwhile*.
- interior**, -ius, adj. (comp. 93, 2), *inner*, [*interior*].
- inter mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr., *stop, cease, discontinue*. [*Intermission*]
- inter rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., *ask*, [*interrogate*].
- inter rumpō**, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, v. tr., *break down*. [*Interrupt*]
- inter sum**, -esse, -fui, v. intr. irreg., *am among, take part in*, (with dat. 208, 7, 8).
- intrā**, prep. with acc., *within (of place); (of time, 116, 3)*.
- intrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr., [*enter*].
- intus**, adv., *within, inside*.
- in veniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, v. tr., *come upon, find*. [*Invent*]
- invictus**, -a, -um, adj., *unconquered*.
- in videō**, -ēre, -vidī, -visum, v. intr. [*envy*] (with dat. 176, 4).
- invitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. [*invite*].
- invitus**, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling*:
mē invitō, *against my will*.
- ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, emph. adj. pro., *self* (143, 3; 144, 6).
- is, ea, id**, dem. adj. pro. (138), *he, she, it*.
- iste, ista, istud**, dem. adj. pro. (140, 4), *that of yours*.
- ita**, adv., *thus, so*.
- itaque**, conj., *and so, therefore*.
- Italia**, -ae, F., *Italy*.

iter, itineris, N., *journey, march.*
[Itinerary]
iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

J

jaceō, -ēre, jacui, v. intr., *lie.*
jaciō, -ere, jēci, jactum, v. tr.,
throw.
jam, adv., *now, already.*
Jāniculum, -ī, N.,
*Janiculum, a hill on the right
bank of the Tiber.*
Jānus, -ī, M., *Janus, a god of the
Romans.*
jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum, v. tr.,
*order, command (takes acc.
and infin.).*
jūcundus, -a, -um, adj., *delightful.*
jūdex, -icis, M., *judge.*
Jūlia, -ae, F., *Julia.*
Jūlius, -ī, M., *Julius.*
jūmentum, -ī, N., *beast of burden.*
jungō, -ere, junxī, junctum, v. tr.,
join. [Junction]
jūnior, -ius, adj. (comp. of juvenis)
(91, 5), *younger.*
Jūnō, -ōnis, F., *Juno.*
Jūpiter, Jovis, M., *Jupiter.*
jūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
swear (173, 3). [Jury]
jūs, jūris, N., *right, law. [Jurist]*
jussū, abl., *by order, at the bidding.*
juvenis, -is, M.,
a youth, young man.
[Juvenile]
juventa, -ae, F., *youth (the time of).*
juventūs, -ūtis, F.,
youth (collective noun).

K

Karthāgō, -inis, F., *Carthage.*
Karthāginiensis, -e, adj.,
Carthaginian.
Karthāginiensēs, -ium, M., pl.,
Carthaginians.

L

Labiēnus, -ī, M., *Labiēnus.*
labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
labor, be in trouble.
lāc, lactis, N., *milk. [Lacteal]*
Lacedaemon, -onis, F.,
Lacedaemon, Sparta.
Lacedaemoniī, -ōrum, M. pl.,
Lacedaemonians, Spartans.
laccessō, -ere, -īvi, -itum, v. tr.,
provoke, harass.
lacus, -ūs, M. [lake].
lapis, -idis, M., *stone. [Lapidary]*
lātē, adv., *widely:*
longē latēque, far and wide.
Latīnī, -ōrum, M. pl. [Latins],
*people of Latium, a district of
Italy, in which Rome was
situated.*
Latinus, -ī, M.,
[Latinus] *a king of Latium.*
lātus, -a, -um, adj., *wide, broad.*
[Latitude]
latus, -eris, N., *side, flank.*
laudābilis, -e, adj., *praiseworthy,*
[laudable].
laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
praise, [laud].
laus, laudis, F., *praise.*
Lāvinia, -ae, F.,
*Lavinia, daughter of king
Latinus.*
Lāvinium, -ī, N.,
Lavinium, a town of Latium.
lēgātus, -ī, M.,
lieutenant; ambassador,
[legate].
legiō, -ōnis, F.,
[legion], *from 500 to 600 men,
divided into ten cohorts.*
legō, -ere, lēgī, lectum, v. tr.,
choose, select; read. [Lecture]
lēnis, -e, adj., *gentle. [Lenity]*
leō, ōnis, M. [lion].
lex, lēgis, F., *law. [Legal]*

- levitās, -ātis, F.,** *lightness.*
 [Levity]
Liber, Liberi, M.,
Bacchus, god of wine.
liber, librī, M., *book.* [Library]
liber, -era, -erum, adj.,
free, free from (with abl. 94, 5).
liberē, adv., *freely (comp. liberius;*
sup. liberrimē).
liberī, -ōrum, M. pl., *children.*
liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
free, [liberate].
libertās, -ātis, F. [liberty], *freedom.*
licet, -ēre, licuit, v. impers.,
it is allowed (may, might, ex-
pressing permission, 223, 3, 4).
licet, conj., *although (255, 4 (3)).*
lignum, -ī, N., *wood.*
lingua, -ae, F., *tongue, [language].*
littera, -ae, F. *letter (of the alphabet);*
litterae, -ārum, pl,
letter (written), despatch (32, 5).
litus, -oris, N., *shore.* [Litoral]
locō, -āre, -āvi, -ārum, v. tr.,
place, station, post. [Locate]
locus, -ī, M., *place:*
N. pl. loca, -ōrum, (32, 7).
longē, adv., *far.*
longus, -a, -um, adj. [long].
 [Longitude]
loquor, loquī, locūtus, v. dep.,
speak. [Soliloquy]
lūdus, -ī, M., *sport, play, game.*
lūmen, -inis, N., *light.* [Luminous]
lūna, -ae, F., *moon.* [Lunar]
lūsus, -ūs, M., *sport, play.*
lūx, lūcis, F., *light:*
primā lūce, at daybreak.
 [Lucid]
- M**
- magis, adv.,** *more (comp. of*
magnopere, 98, 7).
magister, -trī, M., *master, teacher.*
magnitūdō, -inis, F.,
size, [magnitude].
magnopere, adv., *greatly, (comp.*
magis; sup. maximē, 98, 7).
magnus, -a, -um, adj., *large, great,*
(comp. mājor; sup. māximus,
91, 3).
Māgō, -ōnis, M.,
Mago, a Carthaginian general.
Māius, -a, -um, adj. (sc. mensis,
month), *May.*
mājor, -us, adj., *greater (comp. of*
magnus). [Majority]
male, adv., *badly, ill (comp.*
pējus; sup. pessimē, 98, 7).
mālō, mälle, mālui, v. irr.,
prefer, had rather (210, 2).
malum, -ī, N., *evil.*
malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad (comp.*
ī jor; sup. pessimus, 91, 3).
mandō, -āre, -āvi, ātum, v. intr.
(with dat.), bestow; enjoin,
commission (with ut, 240, 4).
māne, adv., *early, in the morning.*
maneō, -ēre, mansī, mansum,
v. intr., remain.
manifestus, -a, -um, adj.,
plain, [manifest].
Manlius, -ī, M., *Manlius.*
Mantinēa, -ae, F.,
Mantineia, a city of Pelopon-
nusus.
manus, -ūs, F.,
hand, band (of soldiers).
 [Manual]
Marathōn, -ōnis, M., *Marathon.*
Marathōnius, -a, um, adj.,
of Marathon.
Marcus, -ī, M., *Marcus.*
mare, maris, N., *sea (64).*
 [Mariner]
Marius, -ī, M.,
Marius, a famous Roman
general.
maritimus, -a, -um, adj.,
 [maritime].

- Mars, Martis, M.,**
Mars, god of war. [Martial]
- Martius, -a, -um, adj.,**
of or belonging to Mars:
Campus Martius, Plain of Mars.
- Martius, -a, -um, adj., of March.**
- māter, -tris, F., mother.**
 [Maternal]
- mātrimōnium, -i, N., marriage:**
in nātrimōnium dō,
give in marriage. [Matrimony]
- mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., early.**
 [Mature]
- māximē, adv., sup. of magnopere.**
- māximus, -a, -um, adj., sup. of magnus.**
- mēcum, with me** (138, 6).
- medius, -a, -um, adj., middle:**
mediā hieme,
in the middle of winter (117, 7).
- melior, -us, adj., comp. of bonus.**
- memini, meminisse, v. def.,**
remember (219, 2; 220, 5).
- Menapii, -ōrum, M., pl.,**
Menapii, a Gallic tribe.
- mens, mentis, F., mind.** [Mental]
- mensa, -ae, F., table.**
- mensis, -is, M., month.**
- mentior, -irī, mentitus, v. dep.,**
lie, speak falsely.
- mercātor, -ōris, M., merchant.**
- Mercurius, -i, M., Mercury.**
 [Mercurial]
- meridiēs, -ēi, M., midday.**
 [Meridian]
- metuō, -ere, metuī, metūtum,**
v. tr., fear.
- metus, -ūs, M., fear.**
- meus, -a, -um** (voc. sing. masc. mī), poss. adj. *my.*
- migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,**
move, [migrate].
- mīles, -itis, M., soldier.**
- militāris, -e, adj., [military].**
- militiae** (locative, 118, 3),
in the field, on service.
- mille, card. num. (indecl. in sing.;**
 pl. *millia*, 106, 6), *thousand.*
 [Mill]
- millēsimus, -a, -um, ord. num.**
adj., thousandth.
- minimē, adv. (sup. of parum,**
 98, 7), *least.*
- minimus, -a, -um, adj. (sup. of**
parvus, 91, 3), *least.*
- minister, -tri, M., servant.**
 [Minister]
- minor, -us, adj., (comp. of parvus,**
 91, 3), *less.* [Minority]
- minor -ārī, -ātus, v. dep.,**
threaten.
- minus, adv., (comp. of parum**
 98, 7), *less.*
- mirābilis, -e, adj., wonderful.**
- miror, -ārī, -ātus, v. dep., admire.**
- miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched.**
 [Miserable]
- miseror, -ērī, miseritus, v. dep.,**
pity, (with gen., 176, 7).
- miseret, -ēre, miseruit, v. impers.,**
it pities (226, 3).
- mītis, -e, adj., mild.**
- mittō, -ere, mīsi, missum, v. tr.,**
send. [Mission]
- modus, -i, M.,**
 [mode], *manner, way:*
nūllō modō, in no way.
- moenia, -ium, N. pl., walls.**
- molestē, adv., with trouble:**
molestē ferō, am annoyed at.
- moneō, -ēre, monui, monitum,**
v. tr., advise.
- mons, montis, M., mountain.**
- mora, -ae, F., delay.**
- morbus, -i, M., disease.** [Morbid]
- Morini, -ōrum, M. pl.,**
the Morini, a Gallic tribe.
- morior, mori, mortuus, v. dep., die.**
- moror, -ārī, morātus, v. dep., delay.**

mors, **mortis**, *F.*, *death*. [**Mortal**]
mortifer, **-era**, **-erum**, *adj.*, *deadly*,
fatal.
mortuī, **-ōrum** (*M. pl. p. p. of*
moriōr), *the dead*.
mōs, **mōris**, *M.*, *custom, habit*:
mōrēs, *pl.*, *customs, morals,*
character.
moveō, **-ēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, *v. tr.*,
[move].
mox, *adv.*, *soon*.
mulier, **-eris**, *F.*, *woman*.
multitūdō, **-inis**, *F.*, [*multitude*].
multum, *adv.*, *greatly, much* (*comp.*
plūs; *sup. plūrimum* and
plūrimē).
multus, **-a**, **-um**, *adj.*, *much*: *pl.*
multi, **-ae**, **-a**, *many*: (*comp.*
plūs; *sup. plūrimus*, 91, 3):
multum temporis, *much time*.
mūniō, **ire**, **-ivī**, **-itum**, *v. tr.*, *fortify*.
mūnitiō, **-ōnis**, *F.*, *fortification*.
mūnus, **-eris**, *N.*, *duty, office*.
mūrus, **-ī**, *M.*, *wall*.

N

nactus, **-a**, **-um**, *p. p. of nanciscor*,
having obtained.
nam, *conj.*, *for*.
namque, *conj.*,
for (more emphatic than **nam**).
nanciscor, **-ī**, **nactus**, *v. dep.*,
obtain.
narrō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, *v. tr.*,
tell. [**Narrate**]
nascor, **nascī**, **nātus**, *v. dep.*,
am born:
decem annōs nātus, *at the age*
of ten (136, 9).
Nasica, **-ae**, *M.*,
Nasica (see **Scipio**).
nātiō, **-ōnis**, *F.*, *tribe, [nation]*
nātū; *abl. of nātus*, *ūs*; *by birth*:
minimus nātū, *youngest*:
māximus nātū, *oldest* (91, 5).

nauta, **-ae**, *M.*, *sailor*. [**Nautical**]
nāvālis, **-e**, *adj.*, [*naval*].
nāvigō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, *v. intr.*,
sail. [**Navigate**]
nāvis, **-is**, *F.*, *ship*:
nāvis longa, *war-ship*:
nāvis onerāria, *merchantman*:
(ex) nāvī or **navibus ēgredi**,
land, disembark:
navem or **navēs conscendere**,
embark.
-nē, *interr. particle* (43, 2):
-nē . . . *an, whether* . . . 'in
double direct questio. 44,
5; in indirect questions, 200,
6; 201).
nē, *neg. imper. particle*,
not (193, 2, 3).
nē, *conj.*, *that . . . not, lest* (in final
clauses, 198, 6; 232, 1):
that . . . not (in substantive
clauses, 240, 2): *that, lest*
(with verbs of fearing, 243, 2).
nec: see **neque**.
necesse, *indecl. adj.*, *necessary*:
necesse est, *one must* (225, 9).
Necessitās, **-ātis**, *F.*, *Necessity*.
necne, *conj.*, *or not* (in indirect
double questions, 200, 6; 201).
necō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, *v. tr.*,
kill, murder.
negō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, *v. intr.*,
deny, say . . . not. [**Negative**]
neglegō, **-ērē**, **neglexī**, **neglectum**,
v. tr., *disregard, [neglect]*.
nēmō, *acc. nēminem*, *M.*, *no one*.
nepōs, **-ōtis**, *M.*, *grandson*.
Neptūnus, **-ī**, *M.*,
Neptune, god of the sea.
nequāquam, *adv.*, *by no means*.
neque, *conj.*, *nor*:
neque . . . **neque**, *neither . . . nor*.
nesciō, **-īre**, **-ivī**, **-itum**, *v. tr.*,
not know, do not know.
neu, or **nēvē**, *conj.*, *nor* (in a
second final clause, 233, 5).

neuter, -tra, -trum, adj. pro.,
neither (49, 3)

nex, necis, F., death.

nihil, indecl. N., nothing:
nihil temporis, no time.
[Nihilist]

nisi, conj., unless, except (249, 2).

nix, nivis, F., snow.

nōbiscum, with us (138, 6).

nōbilitās, -ātis, F., [nobility].

noceō, -ēre, -ui, no sup.,
injure (with dat. 175, 2; 176, 4).

noctū, adv.,
by night, in the night time.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, v. intr.,
am unwilling, will not (210, 2).

nōmen, -inis, N., name.

A Roman had regularly three names, as, Caius Julius Caesar; Caius was the **praenōmen**, marking the individual as our Christian name: Julius was the **nōmen**, marking the gens or clan: Caesar was the **cognōmen**, marking the family of the gens.

nōn, adv., not:
nōn solum . . . sed etiam,
not only . . . but also.

nōndum, adv., not yet.

nōnne, interr. particle,
expecting the answer, yes, not?
(43, 2).

nōnnunquam, adv., sometimes

nōnus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.,
ninth.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. pro.,
our.

nostri, -ōrum, M. pl.,
our soldiers, our men.

novem, indecl. card. num. adj.,
nine.

nōvī, nōvisse, v. def., know (219, 2).

novitās, -ātis, F.,
newness, strangeness.

novus, -a, -um, adj., new, strange.

nox, noctis, F., night.

nūbēs, -is, F., cloud.

nūllus, -a, -um, adj., no, none
(48, 2).

num, conj., whether, if (201).

num, interr. particle,
expecting the answer, no
(43, 2).

Numa Pompilius (gen. Numae
Pompili), Numa Pompilius,
the second king of Rome.

numerus, -ī, M., number.

Numidae, -ārum, M. pl.,
Numidians.

nunquam, adv., never.

nuntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,
tell, report, announce.

nuntiātum est, word was brought.
nuntius, -ī, M., message; messenger.

O

O, interj., O.

ob, prep. with acc., on account of.
obliscor, -ī, oblitus, v. dep.,
forget (176, 7; 220, 5).

obses, -idis, M., hostage.

obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, v. tr.,
besiege.

obsidiō, -ōnis, F., siege, blockade.

obstō, -āre, obstiti, v. intr.,
oppose (with dat. 175, 2;
176, 4; 229, 4): prevent (with
quōminus, 248, 9).

ob tinea, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,
v. tr., hold. [Obtain]

occāsiō, -ōnis, F., opportunity.
[Occasion]

occāsus, -ūs, M., setting:
sōlis occāsū, at sunset:

ad sōlis occāsū, to the west.

oc cidō, -ere, -cidī, -cisum, v. tr.,
kill, slay.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,
seize, take possession of.
[Occupy]

- Ōceanus**, -ī, M., *Ocean*.
Octāviānus, -ī, M., *Octavianus*.
octāvus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.,
eighth.
octo, indecl. card. num. adj., *eight*.
octodecim, indecl. card. num. adj.,
eighteen.
oculus, -ī, M., *eye*. [Oculist]
ōdī, **ōdisse**, v. def., *hate* (219, 2).
[Odious]
officium, -ī, N., *duty, allegiance*.
[Office]
ōmittō, -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr.,
let slip. [Omit]
omninō, adv., *wholly, entirely*;
nōn omninō, *not at all*.
omnis, -e, adj.,
all, whole. [Omnipotent]
onus, -eris, N., *load, weight*.
[Onerous]
opera, -ae, F., *work, pains*;
operam dō ut, *take pains to*
(240, 8).
oportet, -ēre, **oportuit**, v. impers.,
it behoves; *ought* (224, 7).
oppidum, -ī, N., *town*.
opportūnus, -a, -um, adj.,
favorable, fortunate.
[Opportunity]
op primō, -ere, -pressi, -pressum,
v. tr., *crush, overthrow*.
[Oppress]
op pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,
attack, assail, besiege.
optimus, -a, -um, adj., *best* (sup.
of bonus, 91, 3). [Optimist]
optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,
pray, pray for.
opus, -eris, N., *work*. [Operate]
opus, N., indecl.; **opus est**,
there is need (226, 6; 227).
(ops), **opis**, F., *aid, help*.
ōra, -ae, F., *shore, coast*.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, F., [oration], *speech*.
ōrātor, -ōris, M., [orator].
- orbis**, -is, M., *circle*;
orbis terrarum,
the world, the circle of lands
around the Mediterranean.
[Orb]
ordior, -irī, **orsus**, v. dep., *begin*.
ordō, -inis, M., [order], *line, rank*.
oriens (gen. **orientis**), (pres. p. of
orior used as an) adj., *rising*;
sōl oriens, *sunrise*. [Orient]
orior, -irī, **ortus**, v. dep.,
rise, arise.
ornō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,
adorn, decorate. [Ornate]
ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,
beg, ask, pray for.
- P**
- pābulor**, -ārī, -ātus, v. dep., *forage*.
pacātus, -a, -um, adj., *at peace*.
paene, adv., *almost*.
palūs, -ūdis, F, *swamp, marsh*.
par (gen. **paris**), adj., *equal*.
parātus, -a, -um (p.p.p. of **parō**,
prepare, used as an) adj.,
ready.
Palatinus, -a, -um, adj. (mons),
the Palatine [mount].
parcō, -ere, **pepercī**, **parcitur**,
v. intr., *spare* (with dat.,
176, 4).
parens, -tis, M. or F., [parent].
pāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. intr.,
obey (with dat., 176, 3, 4).
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,
prepare.
pars, **partis**, F., [part].
parum, adv., *little, too little* (comp.
minus; sup. **minimē**, 98, 7).
parvus, -a, -um, adj., *little, small*,
(comp. **minor**; sup. **minimus**,
91, 3).
passus, -ūs, M., *pace* (107, 10).
patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum,
v. tr., *open*.

- pater, patris, M., father.**
pator, pati, passus, v. dep.,
suffer, allow.
patria, ae, F., native land.
 [Patriot]
pauci, -ae, -a, adj. (pl.), few.
paulisper, adv., for a little.
paulō, adv., a little:
paulō post, shortly after.
paulum, adv.,
a little, a short distance.
pauper, (gen. pauperis), adj., poor.
 [Pauper]
pavor, -ōris, M., fear, panic.
pax, pācis, F., [peace]. [Pacific]
pecūnia, ae, F., money.
 [Pecuniary]
pedes, -itis, M.,
foot-soldier, infantry-man:
pl. peditēs, -um, infantry.
pedester, -tris, -tre, adj.,
of infantry:
proelium pedestre, battle on land.
peditātus, -ūs, M.,
infantry (collectively).
pēior, -us, adj. (comp. of malus,
 91, 3), *worse.*
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, v. tr.,
drive.
per, prep with acc.,
through, by means of.
per eō, -ire, -iī, -itum,
v. intr., perish (218, 3).
per ficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr.,
do, accomplish, finish.
 [Perfect]
perfuga, -ae, M., deserter.
periculōsus, -a, -um, adj.,
dangerous, [perilous].
periculum, -ī, N., danger, [peril]:
periculum est, there is a danger
 (243, 2, 4).
perinde, adv., just so:
perinde ac, just as:
perinde ac si, just as if.
- peritus, -a, -um, adj.,**
skilled, skilled in, (with gen.).
per mittō, -ere, -misi, -missum,
v. tr., entrust, allow. [Permit]
permultus, -a, -um, adj., very much:
pl., very many.
perniciēs, -ēī, F., ruin, harm.
 [Pernicious]
per sequor, -ī, -secūtus, v. dep.,
pursue. [Persecute]
Persae, -ārum, M. pl., Persians.
per spiciō, -ere, -spexi, -spectum,
v. tr., observe, perceive.
per suādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum,
v. intr., [persuade] (with dat.,
 176, 3, 4).
per terreō, -ēre, -terrui, -territum,
v. tr., frighten, alarm.
per tineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum,
v. intr., extend.
per veniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum,
v. intr. (usually with ad),
arrive at, reach.
pēs, pedis, M., foot. [Pedal]
pessimus, -a, -um, adj. (sup. of
malus, 91, 3), worst.
 [Pessimist]
petō, -ere, petivī, petitum, v. tr.,
seek, ask for, make for:
with ut, 240, 4). [Petition]
piget, -ēre, piguit, v. impers.,
it vexes (226, 1, 2, 3).
placeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. intr.,
please (with dat., 175, 2;
 176, 4).
plānitiēs, -ēī, F., plain.
plēbs, plēbis, F., the common people
(collectively), the plebs.
plēnus, -a, -um, adj., full: full of
(with gen., 93, 4).
plērique, plēraeque, plēraque,
adj. pl., most, most people.
plērumque, adv., generally.
plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., very much:
pl., very many (sup. of multus,
 91, 3).

- plūs** (85, 6), *adj.*,
more (comp. of **multus**, 91, 3).
- poena**, -ae, *F.*,
punishment, [penalty].
- poenitet**, -ēre, **poenituit**, *v. impers.*,
it repents (226, 1, 2, 3).
- poēta**, -ae, *M.* [poet].
- polliceor**, -ērī, **pollicitus**, *v. dep.*,
promise (173, 3, 5).
- Pompilius**: see **Numa**.
- pondus**, -eris, *N.*, weight.
[Ponderous]
- pōnō**, -ere, **posuī**, **positum**, *v. tr.*,
place:
castra pōnō, pitch a camp.
[Position]
- pons**, **pontis**, *M.*, bridge.
- populus**, -ī, *M.*, [people].
- porta**, -ae, *F.*, gate. [Porter]
- portō**, āre, -āvī, -ātum, *v. tr.*,
carry, bring. [Portable]
- portus**, -ūs, *M.*, harbor, [port].
- possum**, **posse**, **potuī**, *v. irreg.*,
am able, can (207; 208, 10).
- post**, *prep.* with *acc.*, after:
post multōs annōs, after many
years:
adv., **multis annis post**,
many years after (116, 5).
- postea**, *adv.*, afterwards.
- posteaquam**, *conj.*, after (259, 4).
- posterus**, -a, -um, *adj.*,
next, following, (comp. **posterior**;
sup. **postrēmus**, 92, 1).
- postquam**, *conj.*, after (259, 4).
- postrēmō**, *adv.*, lastly.
- postrēmus**, -a, -um, *adj.*,
latest, last (see **posterus**, 92, 1).
- postridiē**, *adv.*,
next day, on the following day.
- postulātum**, -ī, *N.*, demand.
- postulō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *v. tr.*,
demand: (with *ut*, 240, 2, 4).
- potens** (gen. **potentis**), *adj.*,
powerful. [Potent]
- potestās**, -ātis, *F.*, power, privilege.
- potior**, -irī, **potitus**, *v. dep.* (with
abl., 136, 8), gain possession of.
- potius**, *adv.*, rather.
- praeclārus**, -a, -um, *adj.*,
distinguished.
- praeda**, -ae, *F.*, booty.
- praeditus**, -a, -um, *adj.*,
endowed (with), (with *abl.*, 94, 5).
- praedor**, -ārī, -ātus, *v. dep.*,
plunder. [Predatory]
- prae ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,
v. tr., place in command (228,
3; 229, 4).
- praemium**, -ī, *N.*, reward.
[Premium]
- prae mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum,
v. tr., send forward.
- praesens**, (gen. **praesentis**), *adj.*,
[present]:
mē praesente, in my presence
(159, 4 (b)).
- praesidium**, -ī, *N.*, guard, garrison.
- praestō**, -āre, **praestiti**, **praestitum**,
v. tr., show, display.
- prae sum**, -esse, -fui, *v. intr.*,
am at the head of, command
(with *dat.*, 228, 3; 229, 4).
- premō**, -ēre, **pressi**, **pressum**,
v. tr., press, press hard.
- Priamus**, -ī, *M.*,
Priam, king of Troy.
- primō**, *adv.*, firstly, at first.
- primum**, *adv.*, first.
- primus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, first.
[Primary]
- princeps**, -cipis, *M.*, chief, [prince].
- prior**, -us, *adj. comp.*,
former, previous.
- Priscus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, First:
see **Tarquinius**.
- priusquam**, *conj.*, before (259, 8).
- prō**, *prep.* with *abl.*,
for, in defence of, on behalf of
(16, 2, (2)); before: in pro-
portion to (52, 5).

- prō cēdō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, v. intr., *go ahead, advance*, [*proceed*].
- procul**, adv., *far, at a distance*.
- prō dō**, -ere, -didi, -ditum, v. tr., *betray*.
- proelium**, -i, N., *battle*.
- proficiscor**, -i, **profectus**, v. dep., *set out*.
- profugus**, -i, M., *exile*.
- prō gredior**, -gredi, -gressus, v. dep., *go forward, advance*. [*Progress*]
- prohibeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. tr., *keep from, prevent from*. [*Prohibit*]
- prō mittō**, -ere, -misi, -missum, v. tr., *promise* (173, 3).
- prō moveō**, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, v. tr., *move forward*. [*Promotion*]
- prope**, adv. and prep. with acc., *near* (comp. **propius**; sup. **proximē**).
- properō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., *hasten*.
- propior**, -us, (gen. **propiōris**), adj., *nearer* (93, 2).
- prō pōnō**, -ere, -posui, -positum, v. tr., *offer*. [*Propose*]
- propter**, prep. with acc., *on account of*.
- prō sum**, **prōd esse**, **prō fui**, v. intr. (207, 6), *help, benefit, am serviceable to* (with dat., 208, 8).
- prō vehō**, -ere, -vexi, -vectum, v. tr., *carry forward*.
- prō videō**, -ēre, -vidi, -visum, v. tr., *foresee*, [*provide*].
- prōvincia**, -a, F., [*province*].
- proximus**, -a, -um, adj., *next, nearest* (93, 2); **annus proximus**, *last year*.
- prūdēns**, (gen. **prūdētis**), adj., *foreseeing* (84). [*Prudent*]
- prūdēntia**, -ae, F., *foresight*. [*Prudence*]
- puet**, -ēre, **puuit**, v. impers., *it shames* (226, 1, 2, 3).
- puella**, -ae, F., *girl*.
- puer**, **pueri**, M., *boy*. [*Puerile*]
- pugna**, -ae, F., *fight, battle*. [*Pugnacious*]
- pugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., *fight*: **pugnātum est**, *the battle was fought*.
- pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful* (comp. **pulchrior**; sup. **pulcherrimus**).
- pūniō**, -ire, -ivi, -itum, v. tr., *punish*.
- putō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr., *think*.
- Pyrrhus**, -i, M., *Pyrrhus*.

Q

- quā**, rel. adv., *by which way, where*.
- quadrāgintā**, indecl. card. num. adj., *forty*.
- quaerō**, -ere, **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, v. tr., *ask, inquire* (with **ex** or **dē**).
- quālis**, -e, inter. adj., *of what kind?*
- quālis**, -e, rel. adj., *of what kind*: correl. of **talis** (146, 7).
- quam**, inter. adv., *how?*
- quam**, rel. adv., *than*: with superlatives, **quam māximus**, *as great as possible* (88, 7).
- quamdiū**, interr. adv., *how long?*
- quamdiū**, rel. adv., *as long as*.
- quamquam**, conj., *although* (255, 5).
- quamvis**, conj., *however, though* (255, 5).
- quandō**, interr. adv., *when?*
- quantus**, -a, -um, interr. adj., *how large? how much?*
- rel. adj., *as great as*: correl. to **tantus** (146, 7).

- quāzē**, interr. adv.,
why? wherefore?
rel. adv., *why, wherefore*.
- quartus**, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.,
fourth.
- quasi**, conj., *as if* (256, 1;
257, 3, (b)).
- quattuor**, indecl. card. num., adj.,
four.
- que**, conj. (always appended to
the word or to some part of
the phrase which it connects),
and (24, footnote).
- quem** (acc. of **quis**, or **qui**),
whom? or whom (rel.).
- quemadmodum**, adv. phrase,
in what way, how.
- queror**, **queri**, **questus**, v. dep.,
complain.
- qui**, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pro.,
who, which, that (145, 1);
qui Final (232, 2);
qui Consecutive (236, 2);
in clause of characteristic (237, 1);
qui Causal (252, 4).
- qui**, **quae**, **quod**, interr. adj.,
which? what? what kind of?
(148, 2).
- quia**, conj., *because* (252, 2).
- quicumque**, **quaecumque**, **quod-**
cumque, rel. pro., *whoever,*
whatever.
- quidam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam**,
indef. pro., *a certain one*
(149, 4).
- quidem**, adv. (giving emphasis),
indeed, as you see;
ne...quidem, *not...even*.
- quiēs**, -ētis, F., *rest, [quiet]*.
- quīn**, conj., *but, that, but that*
(247, 2).
- quingūāgintā**, indecl. card. num.
adj., *fifty*.
- quinque**, indecl. card. num. adj.,
five.
- quintus**, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.,
fifth.
- Quirinālis**, -e (sc. mons),
the Quirinal (hill of Rome).
- quis**, **quae**, **quid**, interr. adj. pro.,
who? which? what? (148, 1).
- quis**, (**qua**), **quid**, indef. adj. pro.,
any one (149, 1);
nē quis, *that no one* (233, 5).
- quisquam**, no fem., **quidquam**,
indef. adj. pro., *any one*
(149, 4).
- quisque**, **quaeque**, **quidque**, or
quodque, indef. adj. pro.,
each (149, 4).
- quō**, interr. adv., *whither?*
rel. adv., *whither* (146, 7).
- quō**, conj., *in order that*, (used
when a comparative follows)
(233, 4).
- quoad**, conj., *as long as, until*
(259, 6, 7).
- quōcum**, *with whom* (145, 5).
- quod**, *because* (252, 2);
that, the fact that (244, 2).
- quōminus**, conj.,
by which the less, so that not,
from (248, 8, 9).
- quōmodō**, interr. adv.,
in what way? how?
- quoniam**, conj., *since* (252, 2).
- quot**, indecl. interr. adj., *how many?*
indecl. rel. adj., *as many as*;
correl. of **tot** (146, 7).
- quotannis**, adv., *yearly*.
- quotiēs**, interr. adv., *how often?*
conj., *as often as* (263, 8).

R

- rādix**, **rādicis**, F., *root*. [*Radicle*]
- rapidus**, -a, -um, adj.,
swift, [rapid].
- rapīō**, -ere, **rapuī**, **raptum**, v. tr.,
seize, carry off.

- rārus**, -a, -um, adj.,
thin, far apart. [Rare]
- recens** (gen. *recentis*), adj.,
fresh, late, [recent].
- re cipiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum,
v. tr., *take back*;
mē recipiō,
I betake myself, retreat, with-
draw. [Receive]
- recitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
read aloud, [recite].
- rectē**, adv., *rightly.*
- rectus**, -a, -um, adj., [right], *proper.*
- red dō**, -ere, -didi, -ditum, v. tr.,
restore, render.
- red eō**, -ire, -ii, -itum, v. intr.,
go back, return (218, 3).
- re dūcō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductum,
v. tr., *lead back.* [Reduce]
- re ferō**, -ferre, ret tuli, re lātum,
v. tr., *bring back, report.*
- re ficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, v. tr.,
repair.
- re fugiō**, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitum,
v. intr., *flee back.* [Refuge]
- rēgina**, -ae, F., *queen.*
- rēgius**, -a, -um, adj.,
of a king, royal.
- regiō**, -ōnis, F., *district, [region].*
- regnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
reign;
Romulō regnante,
in the reign of Romulus.
- regō**, -ere, rēxi, rectum, v. tr.,
rule. [Regent]
- re gredior**, -gredi, -gressus,
v. dep., *go back, retreat.*
- Regulus**, -i, M., *Regulus.*
- re linqūō**, -ere, -liqūi, -lictum, v. tr.,
leave behind, leave.
[Relinquish]
- reliquus**, -a, -um, adj., *remaining*;
navēs reliquae,
the rest of the ships.
- rēmex**, -igis, M., *rower.*
- Rēmi**, -ōrum, M. pl.,
Remi, a Gallic tribe.
- re migrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
v. intr., *go back, move back.*
- reminiscor**, -i, v. dep., *remember*
(176, 7). [Reminiscence]
- rēmus**, -i, M., *oar.*
- Rēmus**, -i, M., *Remus.*
- re novō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
renew. [Renovate]
- re nuntiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
bring back word.
- re pellō**, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, v. tr.,
drive back, [repulse].
- repente**, adv., *suddenly.*
- repentinus**, -a, -um, adj., *sudden.*
- reperiō**, -ire, repperi, repertum,
v. tr., *find, discover.*
- repudiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
divorce. [Repudiate]
- rēs rei**, F., *affair, thing* (101);
rēs frūmentāria, *corn supply*;
rēs adversae, *adversity, defeat*;
rēs secundae, *prosperity, success*;
rēs novae, *change, revolution.*
- resistō**, -ere, restiti, no sup.,
v. intr., [resist] (176, 2, 4).
- respondeō**, -ēre, -di, -sum, v. tr.,
answer, reply. [Respond]
- rēs publica**, rei publicae, F.,
(102, 5), *commonwealth, state.*
[Republic]
- re tineō**, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum,
v. tr., *hold back, hold.*
[Retain]
- re vertor**, -i, reverti, reversus,
v. semi-dep. (136, 6), *turn*
back, return.
- re vocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
call back, recall. [Revoke]
- rēx**, rēgis, M., *king.* [Regal]
- Rhēnus**, -i, M., *Rhine.*
- ripa**, -ae, F., *bank.*
- rogō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., *ask*
(with ut, 240, 4).

Rōma, -ae, F., *Rome*.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman*.

Rōmulus, -i, M., *Romulus*.

rosa, ae, F., *rose*.

rūpēs, -ia, F., *rock*.

rūre (abl. of *rūs*), *from the country* (118, 2; 119).

rūrī (locative of *rūs*), *in the country* (118, 3).

rursus, adv., *again, back again*.

rūs, *rūris*, N.,
country (as opposed to the city);
acc. *rūs*, *to the country* (118, 2;
119). [*Rural*]

S

Sabini, -ōrum, M., pl.,
Sabines, a people living near
Rome.

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., [*sacred*].

saepe, adv., *often* (comp., *saepius*;
sup., *saepissimē*).

saevus, -a, -um, adj., *savage, fierce*.

sagitta, -ae, F., *arrow*.

salūs, -ūtis, F., *safety*. [*Salutary*]

salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
[*salute*].

salvē, interj., *hail! good morning!*

salvus, -a, -um, adj., *safe*.

sānus, -ā, -um, adj., *sound*. [*Sane*]

sapienter, adv., *wisely*.

sapiens (gen. *sapientis*), adj., *wise*.
sapientēs, pl., *the wise*.

sapientia, -ae, F., *wisdom*.

satis, adv., *enough*.

Sāturnus, -ī, M., *Saturn*.

saxum, -ī, N., *rock*.

scandō, -ere, *scandī*, *scansum*,
v. tr., *climb*.

scelus, -eris, N., *wickedness, crime*.

schola, -ae, F., *school*.

sciō, *scire*, *scivī*, *scitum*, v. tr.,
know. [*Science*]

Scipiō, -ōnis, M., *Scipio*.

Scipiō Nasica, gen. *Scipiōnis*
Nasicae, M., *Scipio Nasica*.

scribo, -ere, *scripsi*, *scriptum*,
v. tr., *write*. [*Scribe*]

scriptor, -ōris, M.,
writer, historian.

secundus, -a, -um, adj.,
[*second*], *prosperous*;

rēs secundae *prosperity, success*;

ventus secundus *favorable wind*.

sed, conj., *but*.

sēdēs, *sēdis*, F., [*seat*], *home*;

sēdēs, pl., *settlement*.

semel, adv., *once*.

semper, adv., *always*.

senātor, -ōris, M. [*senator*].

senātus, -ūs, M. [*senate*].

senectūs, -ūtis, F., *old age*.

senex, *senis*, M., *old man* (67);
as adj., *old* (comp. *senior*;
sup. *nātū māximus*, 91, 5).

senior, -us, *older, elder* (see *senex*).

seniōrēs, -um, M. pl., *elders*.

sententia, -ae, F., *vote, opinion*.

sentiō, -ire, *sensi*, *sensum*, v. intr.,
feel, know, think. [*Sentiment*]

sepeliō, -ire, -ivī, *sepultum*, v. tr.,
bury. [*Sepulture*]

septem, indecl. card. num. adj.,
seven.

septimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.,
seventh.

Sēquani, -ōrum, M. pl.,
Sequani, a Gallic tribe.

sequitur, *secutum est*, v. impers.,
it follows.

sequor, *sequī*, *secūtus*, v. dep.,
follow. [*Sequence*]

sermō, -ōnis, M.,
discourse, conversation.
[*Sermon*]

sērō, adv., *late*.

serviō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, v. intr.,
[*serve*] (with dat., 176, 2, 4).

- servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,**
save, keep.
- Servius Tullius** (gen. **Servi Tullī**),
M., *Servius Tullius*.
- servus, -ī, M.,** *slave*. [Serf, Servile]
- seu...seu, disj. conj.,** *whether...or.*
- sex, indecl. card. num. adj.,** *sic.*
- sexāgintā, indecl. card. num. adj.,**
sixty.
- Sextus, -ī, M.,** *Sextus*.
- sextus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.,**
sixth.
- sī, conj.,** *if* (249, 2).
- sic, adv.,** *thus, so.*
- sicut, conj.,**
as, just as (256, 1; 257, 3).
- Sicilia, -ae, F.,** *Sicily*.
- signum, -ī, N.,** *standard*. [Sign]
- silentium, -ī, N.** [*silence*].
- silva, -ae, F.,** *wood, forest*.
[*Silvan*]
- silvester, -tris, -tre, adj.,** *woody.*
- similis, -e, adj.,** *like* (with dat.,
93, 3; comp. *similior*; sup.
simillimus).
- simul, adv.,** *at the same time.*
- simul, conj.,** *for simul ac.*
- simul ac (simul atque), conj.,**
as soon as (259, 4).
- simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,**
pretend. [Simulate]
- sine, prep. with abl.,** *without.*
- sinister, -tra, -trum, adj.,**
left (hand).
- sive...sive, disj. conj.,**
whether...or.
- socer, socerī, M.,** *father-in-law.*
- socius, -ī, M.,** *ally.*
- Sōcratēs, -is, M.,**
Socrates, a Greek Philosopher.
- sōl, sōlis, M.,** *sun*. [Solar]
- solum, adv.,** *only*;
nōn solum...sed etiam,
not only...but also.
- sōlus, -a, -um, adj.,** *alone* (48, 2).
- soror, -ōris, F.,** *sister.*
- spatium, -ī, N.,** *distance, time.*
- speciēs, -ēī, F.,** *appearance.*
- spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,**
look at, gaze at. [Spectacle]
- spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.,**
hope, hope for (173, 3, 4).
- spēs, speī, F.,** *hope.*
- statim, adv.,** *immediately.*
- statuō, -ere, statui, statūtum, v. tr.,**
decide (240, 6, 7). [Statute]
- stella, -ae, F.,** *star*. [Stellar]
- stō, stāre, steti, stātum, v. intr.,**
stand;
per tē stetit,
it was owing to you (248, 9).
- stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictum,**
v. tr., draw (sword).
- studium, -ī, N.,** *desire, zeal.*
- stultitia, -ae, F.,** *folly.*
- suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum,**
v. intr., advise, urge (with
dat., 176, 4).
- sub, prep. with acc. or abl.,** *under.*
- subitō, adv.,** *suddenly.*
- Sublicius, -a, -um, adj.,** (pons),
Sublician bridge.
- subsidium, -ī, N.,**
support, reinforcement.
- sub veniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum,**
v. intr., come to the aid of
(with dat. 229, 4).
- sui, reflex. pro.,**
of himself, herself, itself, them-
selves (138, 4).
- sui, suōrum, M. pl.,** *of suus,*
his or their men.
- sum, esse, fui, v. intr.,** *I am*
(45; 191, 2).
- summus, -a, -um, adj. (sup. of**
superus); summus mons,
top of the mountain.
- sumō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum,**
v. tr., take.

- super**, prep. with acc. or abl., *above*.
- superbē**, adv., *proudly*.
- superbus**, -a, -um, adj., *proud*.
[Superb]
- superior**, -us, adj.,
higher, (comp. of *superus*).
- superō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
overcome, conquer.
- super sum**, -esse, -fui, v. intr.,
survive (208, 7, 8).
- superus**, -a, -um, adj., *above, upper*,
(comp. *superior*; sup. *suprē-*
mus and *summus*) (92, 1).
- suprā**, adv., *above*.
- suprēmus**, -a, -um, adj., *highest*
(see *superus*).
- sus cipiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum,
v. tr., *undertake* (173, 3, 4).
- suspīcor**, -ārī, -ātus, v. dep.,
suspect.
- sus tineō**, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum,
v. tr., *bear, support, bear up*
against.
- suus**, -a, -um, reflexive poss.,
his, her, its, their;
- sui**, -ōrum, M. pl., *his or their men*.
- T**
- taedet**, -ēre, taeduit, v. impers.,
it wearies (226, 1, 2, 3).
- tālis**, -e, adj., *such*;
- tālis**... **quālis**, *of the same kind as*
(146, 6, 7).
- tam**, adv., used with adj. or adv.,
so.
- tamen**, conj.,
yet, nevertheless, however.
- tandem**, adv., *at last, at length*.
- tantus**, -a, -um, adj., *so great*;
- tantus**... **quantus**, *as large as*
(146, 7).
- tardus**, -a, -um, adj., *slow, late*.
- Tarentum**, -ī, N., *Tarentum*.
- Tarquinius**, -ī, M., *a Tarquin*;
one of the Tarquini.
- Tarquinius Priscus** (gen. *Tarquini*
Prisci), M., *Tarquin the First*,
a king of Rome.
- tectum**, -ī, N., *building, dwelling*.
- tēcum**, with you (138, 6).
- tēlum**, -ī, N., *dart*;
- multa tēla**, *a shower of darts*.
- temeritās**, -ātis, F.,
rashness, temerity.
- temperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. intr.,
control, refrain from.
[Temperate]
- tempestās**, -ātis, F.,
storm, weather.
- tempus**, -oris, N., *time*.
[Temporal]
- Tenedos**, -ī, F.,
Tenedos, an island near Troy.
- teneō**, -ēre, tenui, tentum, v. tr.,
hold. [Tenant]
- tener**, -era, -erum, adj., [*tender*].
- tergum**, -ī, N., *back*;
- terga vertere**,
to turn their backs, retreat.
- terra**, -ae, F., *earth*. [Terrestrial]
- terreō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, v. tr.,
frighten, [terrify].
- terror**, -ōris, M., *fright*. [Terror]
- tertius**, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., *third*.
- Thēbānus**, -a, -um, adj., *Theban*.
- Thēbāni**, -ōrum, M., pl. *Thebans*.
- Tiberis**, -is (acc. *Tiberim*), M.,
Tiber.
- timeō**, -ēre, -ui, no sup., v. tr.,
fear, be afraid.
- timidus**, -a, -um, adj.,
[*timid*], *cowardly*.
- timor**, -ōris, M., *fear*.
- Titūrius**, -ī, M., *Titurius*.
- tollō**, -ere, sustuli, sublātum, v. tr.,
raise, lift, take away;
- ancoris sublātis**,
weighing anchor.
- tot**, indecl. adj., *so many*;
- tot**... **quot**, *as many... as* (146, 7).

tōtus, -a, -um (gen. tōtius), adj.,
whole, all (48, 2). [Total]
 trabs, trabis, F., *beam*.
 trā ducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum,
 v. tr., *lead across*.
 trā dō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr.,
hand over, surrender.
 trahō, -ere, traxī, tractum, v. tr.,
draw. [Traction]
 trans, prep. with acc., *across*.
 trans eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, v. tr.
 (218, 3), *go across, cross,*
pass by.
 trans figō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum,
 v. tr., *pierce through*, [transfix].
 trans gredior, -gredi, -gressus,
 v. dep., *go across, cross*.
 [Transgress]
 trecentī, -ae, -a, card. num. adj.,
 [three] *hundred*.
 trēs, tria, card. num. adj.,
three (106, 5).
 Trevirī, -ōrum, M. pl.,
Treviri, a Gallic tribe.
 tricēsīmus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.,
thirtieth.
 triduum, -ī, N., *three days' space*.
 trigeminī, -ōrum, M. pl.,
three brothers born at a birth.
 trigintā, indecl. card. num. adj.,
thirty.
 tristis, -e, adj., *sad*.
 Trōja, -ae, F., *Troy*.
 Trōjānus, -a, -ūm, adj., *Trojan*.
 tu, tuī, pers. pro., *thou, you*
 (137, 1).
 tueor, tuērī, tuitus, or tūtus,
 v. dep., *protect, watch*.
 Tullius, see Servius Tullius.
 Tullus: Tullus Hostilius.
 tum, adv., *then, at that time*.
 tunc, adv., *then*.
 turpis, -e, adj., *base, disgraceful*.

turris, -is (acc. turrim; abl. turri
 or turre), F., [tower] (62).
 tuus, -a, -um, adj. pro.,
thy, your (sing.).

U

ubi, interr. adv., *where?*
 ubi, rel. adv., *where*:
 ibi . . . ubi, *there . . . where* (146, 7).
 ubi, conj., *when* (259, 4).
 ulciscor, -i, ultus, v. dep., *avenge*.
 ūllus, -a, -um, adj., (gen. ūllius),
any (48, 2; 149, 4).
 ulterior, -us, adj. comp., *farther*:
 Gallia Ulterior, *Farther Gaul*
 (see Gallia).
 ultimus, -a, -um, adj. sup., *farthest*.
 umbra, -ae, F., *shade*. [Umbrella]
 unde, interr. adv., *whence?*
 rel. adv., *whence*:
 inde . . . unde, *thence . . . whence*
 (146, 7).
 undecim, indecl. card. num. adj.,
eleven.
 undecimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.,
eleventh.
 undique, adv., *from all sides*.
 unquam, adv., *ever*.
 ūnus, -a, -um (gen. ūnius), adj.,
one, alone (48, 2). [Unit]
 ūniversī, -ae, -a, pl. adj.,
all together, in a body.
 urbs, urbis, F., *city*. [Urban]
 ūsus, -ūs, [use], *service, experience*.
 usui esse, *be of service* (228, 1, 2).
 ut, conj., *that, in order that*.
 (Final, 197, 2);
that, so that (Consecutive, 203, 1);
that (in Substantive clauses,
 (240, 2);
that not (with verbs of fearing)
 (243, 2);
when (259, 4).
 uter, utra, utrum (gen. utrius),
 interr. adj., *which* (of two)
 (48, 2).

- turri**
(2).
- uterque, utraque, utrumque** (gen. **utriusque**), *adj.*, both, each (of two), (48, 2).
- ūtilis, e, adj.**, useful (with *dat.*, 93, 3), (comp. **ūtilior**; sup. **ūtilissimus**).
- utinam**, *adv.*, would that (193, 3).
- ūtor, ūti, ūsus, v. dep.**, use (with *abl.*, 136, 8).
- utrimque**, *adv.*, on either side.
- utrum**, *disj. conj.*, whether;
utrum . . . an, whether . . . or (44, 5; 201, Obs.).
- uxor, -ōris, F.**, wife.
- V**
- valē**, *interj.*, farewell, goodbye.
- vallis, -is, F.**, valley.
- vallum, -i, N.**, rampart, wall.
- Varrō, -ōnis, M.**,
Varro, a Roman general.
- vastō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr.**,
lay waste, devastate.
- vectigal, -ālis, N.**, tax, revenue.
- vehō, -ere, vexi, vectum, v. tr.**,
carry;
vehor, pass.,
am carried, ride, sail.
- vēlōcitās, -ātis, F.**, swiftness, speed.
- vēlōx** (gen. **vēlōcis**), *adj.*,
swift, fleet.
- vēlum, -i, N.**, sail.
- velut sī, conj.**, as if, just as if (257, 3 (b)).
- venēnum, -i, N.**, poison.
- veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum, v. intr.**,
come.
- ventus, -i, M.**, wind.
- Venus, -eris, F.**,
Venus, goddess of love.
- vēr, vēris, N.**, spring. [Vernal]
- verbum, -i, N.**, word. [Verbal]
- vereor, -ēri, veritus, v. dep.**, fear. (132, 4)
- Vergilius, -i, M.**,
Virgil, a Roman poet.
- vērītās, -ātis, F.**, truth. [Verity]
- vērō, adv.**, truly, verily, indeed;
conj., but, however.
- vertō, -ere, verti, versum, v. tr.**,
turn.
- vērūs, -a, -um, adj.**, true.
- vescor, vesci, v. dep.**, feed upon (with *abl.*, 136, 8).
- vesperī**, locative of **vesper, -eris**, or **-erī**, evening, in the evening, at evening (118, 3).
- Vesta, -ae, F.**,
Vesta, goddess of the hearth.
- vester, -tra, -trum, pro. adj.**,
your.
- vestiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, v. tr.**,
clothe. [Vest]
- vestis, -is, F.**, garment.
- vetō, -āre, vetui, vetitum, v. tr.**,
forbid (240, 5).
- vetus** (gen. **veteris**), *adj.*, old (85). [Veteran]
- via, -ae, F.**, way.
- vicēsīmus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj.**,
twentieth.
- vicinus, -i, M.**, neighbor.
- vicinus, -a, -um, adj.**, neighboring. [Vicinity]
- victor, -ōris, M.**, [victor], conqueror;
adj., victorious.
- victōria, -ae, F.**, victory.
- victus, -a, -um, p. p. p. of vincō**,
conquered.
- vicus, -i, M.**, village, canton.
- videō, -ēre, vidī, visum, v. tr.**,
see. [Vision]
- videor, -ēri, visus, v. dep.**,
seem, appear.
- vigilia, -ae, F.**,
watch: the Romans divided the night into four watches.
- vigintī**, indecl. card. num. *adj.*,
twenty.
- vinciō, -ire, vinxi, vinctum, v. tr.**,
bind.

- vincō, -ere, vici, victum, v. tr.,**
conquer.
violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
injure, break. [Violate]
vir, viri, M., man. [Virile]
virgō, -inis, F., maiden, [virgin].
virtūs, -ūtis, F.,
[virtue], valor, courage.
vis, vis (rare), F., force, violence ;
Pl. virēs, -ium, M.,
bodily strength (67).
vita, -ae, F., life. [Vital]
vivō, -ere, vixi, victum, v. intr.,
live. [Vivid]
vix, adv., scarcely.
vōbiscum, with you (138, 6).
vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr., call.
[Vocation]
volō, velle, volui, v. irreg.,
am willing, will, wish
(210, 1, 2).
- voluntās, -ātis, F., good-will.**
[Voluntary]
voluptās, -ātis, F., pleasure.
[Voluptuary]
Volusēnus, -i, M.,
Caius Volusenus, a lieutenant
of Caesar.
vōx, vōcis, F., voice. [Vocal]
Vulcānus, -i, M.,
Vulcan, god of fire. [Volcano]
vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, v. tr.,
wound. [Vulnerable]
vulnus, -eris, N., wound.
- X**
- Xanthippus, -i, M., Xanthippus.**
Xerxes, -is, M., Xerxes.
- Z**
- Zāma, -ae, F., Zama.**

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

The figures 1, 2, 3, 4, after verbs indicate the conjugation, and when the principal parts are all regular the conjugation is indicated by the figure alone.

A

- abandon**, *relinquō*, 3, *reliquī*, *relictum*; *dēserō*, 3, *dēseruī*, *dēsertum*.
- ability**, *ingenium*, -ī, N.
- able (am)**, *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (207).
- about**, prep. = **concerning**, *dē* with abl.
- about**, adv. = **nearly**, *circiter* (with numerals); *ferē* (with adj. or adv.); generally placed after the word limited.
- abroad**, *militiae* (locative 118, 3).
- absent**, *absens* (gen. *absentis*);
in my absence, *mē absente* (159, 4).
- absent (am)**, *absūm*, -esse, -fuī;
from, *ā*, *ab*, with abl.
- abundance**, *cōpia*, -ae, F.
- accept**, *accipiō*, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum.
- acceptable to**, *grātus*, -a, -um.
- account of, on**, *propter* with acc.
- account, on no**: *nūllō modō*.
- accuse**, *accūsō*, 1.
- accustomed (am)**, *consuētū* (220, 3).
- across**, *trans* with acc.
- across, lead**,
trā (trans) dūcō, 3, -dūxi, -ductum.
- admire**, *admīror*, 1.
- admit, all**, *inter omnēs constat* (224, 5).
- admitted by all, it is**,
inter omnēs constat (224, 5).
- admonish**,
admoneō, 2, -monuī, -monitum.
- adorn**, *ornō*, 1; *decorō*, 1.
- advance**, *prōcēdō*, 3, -cessī, -cessum;
prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus.
- adversity**, *rēs adversae* (F. pl., 102, 6).
- advise**, *moneō*, 2; *admoneō*, 2 (240, 4).
- affair**, *rēs*, *rei*, F. (101, 2).
- afraid, am**, *vereor*, 2; *timeō*, 2, -uī, no sup.; *metuō*, 3, -uī, -itum.
I am afraid that, *vereor nē*;
I am afraid that . . not,
vereor ut (242, 1; 243, 2, 3, 4).
- after**, prep., *post* with acc.
- after ten years**, *post decem annōs*.
- after**, adv., *post*;
ten years after, *decem annīs post* (116, 5).
- after**, conj., *postquam*, *posteaquā* (259, 4); *cum* (204, 6); abl. abs. (160 (d)).
- after** (with a verbal noun, see **after conj.**
- afterwards**, *postea*.
- again**, *rursus*; *iterum*.
- against**, *contrā* with acc.
- age** (time of life), *aetās*, -ātis, F.; (old), *senectūs*, -ūtis, F.
- age of ten, at the**,
decem annōs nātus (136, 9).
- ago**, *abhinc*;
ten years ago,
abhinc decem annōs (annis) (116, 4).
- aid**, *auxilium*, -ī, N.

- aid**, *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui* (with dat., 207, 5);
come to the aid of, *subveniō, 4, -vērī, -ventum* with dat. (229, 4);
auxiliō veniō with dat. (228, 1);
be an aid to, *esse auxiliō* (228, 1).
aim, I make it my aim to,
id agō ut (240, 8).
all, *omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um*;
all in a body, *universi, -ae, -a*.
ally, *socius, -i, M.*
almost, *ferē; paene*.
alone, *sōlus, -a, -um*.
along (with), *cum* with abl.
Alps, *Alpēs, -ium, F.*
already, *jam*.
also, *etiam*;
not only . . . but also,
nōn solum . . . sed etiam.
allow, *patior, pati, passus*.
allowed, *am, mihi licet* (223, 3).
altar, *āra, -ae, F.*
although, *quamquam, etsi* with indic.; *quavis* with subj. (255, 5).
always, *semper*.
am, *sum, esse, fui* (45).
ambassador, *lēgātus, -i, M.*
ambuscade, ambush,
insidiāe, -arum, F. pl., (32, 6).
among, *inter* with acc.; *apud* with acc.; *in* with abl.
Ancus, *Ancus, i, M.*
and, *et, -que; atque (ac) = and also*.
animal, *animal, -alis, N.*
announce, *nuntiō, 1.*
another, *alius, -a, -ud* (48, 2).
annoyed at, am,
molestē, aegrē, graviter ferō (214, 5).
answer, *responsum, i, N.*;
I make no answer,
nihil respondeō.
answer, *respondeō, 2, -dī, -sum*.
any (after negative or virtual negative), *quisquam, quidquam; ullus, -a, -um* (149, 4); (after *si, nisi, nē, num*), *quis* (149, 4).
any one, lest (in final clauses),
nē quis (233, 5).
any where, *usquam*.
appear, seem, *videor, 2, vīsus*.
appearance, *speciēs, -ēi, F.*
approach, *adventus, -ūs, M.*
approach, *appropinquō, 1* (with dat. or *ad* with acc.).
armed, *armātus, -a, -um*.
armorbearer, armiger, *-erī, M.*
arms, *arma, -ōrum, N. pl. (32, 6).*
army, (in training),
exercitus, -ūs, M.;
 (on the march), *agmen, -inis, N.*
around, *circum* with acc.
arrival, *adventus, -ūs, M.*
arrive (at), *pervenio, 4, -vērī, -ventum* (*ad* with acc.).
arrow, *sagitta, -ae, F.*
art, *ars, artis, F.*
as . . . so, *ut . . . sic* or *ita*.
as if, as though, *quasi* (257, 3).
as a gift, *dōnō* (228, 1).
as long as, *dum, donec, quoad* (259, 6).
as many as, *tot . . . quot* (146).
as often as, *quotiēs, cum* (263, 8).
as soon as, *simul ac (atque); cum primum* (259, 4).
as quickly as possible,
quam celerrimē (88, 7).
as though, *quasi* (257, 3).
ascertain,
cognōscō, 3, cognōvī, cognitum.
ashamed, am, *mē pudet* (226, 1, 2).
ask (a question), *rogō, 1; interrogo; quaerō, 3, quaesivī, quaesitum*;
 with indirect question (200, 4, 5); with substantive clause (240, 4).

- ask** (request, beg), *rogō*, 1; *orō*, 1; *petō*, 3, *petīri*, *petitum*;
ask Caesar for peace, *pacem ā Caesare petō*;
 with substantive clause (240, 4).
assail, *oppugnō*, 1; *adorior*, 4, *ortus*;
aggredior, -*gredi*, -*gressus*.
assault, = **assail**.
assemble (trans. = **call together**),
convocō, 1.
 (intrans. = **come together**),
conveniō, 4, -*venī*, -*ventum*.
assist, see **aid**.
assure, *confirmō*, 1.
at (of place), *locative* (118, 3);
 = **near**, *ad* with acc.; *apud*
 with acc.:
 he came to me at Rome,
ad mē Rōmā vēnit (119, 5).
 (of time), abl. without a prep.
 (118, 1; 117, 7).
at the age of ten,
decem, annōs natus (136, 9).
at once, *statim*.
at last, *tandem*.
at least, *quidem* (after the word to
 which it is attached).
Athenians, *Athēniensēs*, -*ium*, M. pl.
Athens, *Athēnae*, -*arum*, F. pl.
attack, see **assail**.
 make an attack upon the
 enemy, *impetum in hostēs faciō*.
attempt,
conor, 1; *experior*, 4, *expertus*.
autumn, *auctumnus*, -*i*, M.
auxiliaries, *auxilia*, -*orum*, N. pl.
 (32, 5).
avarice, *avaritia*, -*ae*, F.
avoid, to (in order that...not),
nē with subj., 233, 5).
await, *expectō*, 1.
- B**
- back**, *tergum*, -*i*, N.
 turn backs in flight, *terga vertere*.
bad, *malus*, -*a*, -*um* (*pējor*, *peissimus*,
 91, 3).
badly, *male* (*pējus*, *peissimē*, 98, 7).
baggage, *impedimenta*, -*orum*,
 N. pl. (32, 5).
bank, *ripa*, -*ae*, F.
barbarian, *barbarus*, -*a*, -*um*.
barbarians, *barbari*, -*orum*, M. pl.
barbarous, *crūdēlis*, -*e*.
base, *turpis*, -*e*.
battle,
proelium, -*i*, N.; *pugna*, -*ae*, F.
battle, line of, *aciēs*, -*ēi*, F.;
 draw up the line of battle,
aciem instruō.
beam, *trabs*, *trabis*, F.
bear, *ursus*, -*i*, M.
bear, *ferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*,
 (213, 2); (**carry**) *portō*, 1.
beast, *fera*, -*ae*, F.
beast of burden, *jumentum*, -*i*, N.
beautiful, *pulcher*, -*chra*, -*chrum*;
 (*pulchrior*, *pulcherrimus*).
because, *quod*, *quia* (252, 2);
 often translated by a part.
 (154, 3), or by abl. abs.
 (160 (d)).
become, *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*
 (215, 2).
beech, *fāgus*, -*i*, F.
before, prep. *ante* with acc.,
before ten days,
ante decem diēs (116, 5);
 adv., *ante*, *anteā*,
ten days before,
decem diēbus ante (116, 5).
before, conj.,
antequam, *priusquam* (259, 8).
beg, see **ask**.
begin, *corpi*, *coepisse* (219, 2);
ordior, 4, *orsus*;
incipiō, 3, -*cēpi*, -*ceptum*;
begin a battle,
proelium committō.
beginning of, **at the**,
primus, -*a*, -*um*, adj. (117, 7).
behold, *conspiciō*, 3, -*spexi*, -*spectum*;
aspiciō; *videō*, 2, *vidi*, *visum*.

behind, *post* with acc.
 Belgae, *Belyae*, -*arum*, M. pl.
 believe, *crēdō*, 3, *crēdidī*, *crēditum*
 (with dat. 176, 4).
 beloved, *cārus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 benefit, *prōsum*, *prōlesse*, *prōfui*
 (with dat. 207, 6; 208, 8).
 beseech, *orō*, 1; with substantive
 clause (240, 4).
 besiege, *obsidēō*, 2, -*ēdi*, -*ensum*;
oppugnō, 1.
 best, *optimus*, -*a*, -*um*; see *bonus*.
 betake myself,
 mē recipiō, 3, -*cēpti*, -*ceptum*.
 betray, *prōdō*, 3, -*didī*, -*ditum*.
 better, adj., *melior*, -*us* (91, 3).
 better, adv., *melius*, comp. of *bene*
 (98, 7).
 between, *inter* with acc.
 bind, *vinciō*, 4, *vinxi*, *vinctum*.
 bird, *avis*, *avis*, M. or F.
 black, *niger*, -*gra*, -*grum*; *āter*,
 ātra, *ātrum*.
 blame, *culpa*, -*ae*, F.
 blame, *culpō*, 1.
 blind, *caecus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 boat, *nāvis*, -*is*, F.
 body, *corpus*, -*oris*, N.
 bold, *audāx* (gen. *audācia*), (84, 2).
 boldly, *audacter* (*audācius*, *audā-*
 cissimē).
 book, *liber*, *libri*, M.
 born, *am*, *nascor*, *nasci*, *nātus*.
 both, *uterque*, *utroque*, *utrumque*
 (48, 2).
 both...and, *et...et*.
 bow, *arcus*, -*ūs*, M.
 boy, *puer*, *pueri*, M.
 brave, *fortis*, -*e*.
 bravely, *fortiter*.
 bravery, *virtūs*, -*ūtis*, F.;
 fortitūdō, -*inis*, F.
 break, *frangō*, 3, *frēgi*, *fractum*.

bridge, *pons*, *pontis*, M.
 brief, *brevis*, -*e*.
 briefly, *breuiter*;
 as briefly as possible,
 quam brevissimē.
 bring, *portō*, 1;
 ferō, *ferre*, *tuli*, *lātum* (213, 2).
 bring back word, *renuntiō*, 1.
 bring together, *comportō*, 1;
 comparō, 1.
 bring up, *erudiō*, 4.
 Britain, *Britannia*, -*ae*, F.
 Briton, *Britannus*, -*i*, M.
 broad, *lātus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 brother, *frāter*, -*tris*, M.
 build, *aedificō*, 1.
 building, *aedificium*, -*i*, N.
 burn, *cremō*, 1;
 incendō, 3, -*di*, -*sum*.
 burden, *onus*, -*eris*, N.
 bury, *sepeliō*, 4, -*ivi*, *sepultum*.
 business, *rēs*, *rēi*, F.
 but, *sed*.
 there is no one but believes,
 (247, 3)
 by, expressing agent, *ā*, *ab* (18, 3,
 (2)); dat. of agent with gerun-
 dive (188, 4 (b)); expressing
 cause, means, instrument (18,
 2, (1)); secondary agent, *per*
 with acc.
 by day, *interdiū*, *diē*.
 by night, *noctū*, *nocte*.
 by means of, *per* with acc.

C

Caesar, *Caesar*, -*eris*, M.
 call, *rocō*, 1.
 call back, *revocō*, 1;
 call together, *convocō*, 1.
 camp, *castra*, -*orum*, N. pl.;
 pitch a camp, *castra pōnō*.
 can, *possum*, *posse*, *potui* (207, 3).
 Cannae, *Cannae*, -*arum*, F. pl.

- Cannae**, of, *Cannensis*, -e, (adj.) ;
in the battle of Cannae.
in pugna Cannensi.
- cannot**, non possum, posse, potui
(207).
- captive**, captivus, -i, M.,
captus, -a, -um.
- capture**, capio, 3, cēpi, captum.
- care, take**, cūrō, 1 (187, 9).
- carry**, portō, 1.
- carry on war**,
bellum gerō, 4, gessi, gestum.
- Carthage**, Karthāgō, -inis, F.
- Cassius**, Cassius, -i, M.
- cast**, conjiō, 3, -jēci, -jectum.
- cattle**, bovēs, M. or F. pl.
- cause, you were the**,
per te stetit (quōminus) (248, 9).
- cavalry**, (collectively)
equitatus, -ūs ; equitēs, -um,
M. pl.
- cavalry** (adj), equester, -tris, -tre,
cavalry battle, proelium equestre.
- celebrated**, clārus, -a, -um.
- centurion**, centuriō, -ōnis, M.
- certain = sure**, certus, a, um.
- certain (one)**, a,
quidam, quaedam quoddam or
quiddam (149, 4).
- chance**, cāsus, -ūs, M.
by chance, cāsū ; forte.
- change** (political), res novae (102, 5).
- charge the enemy**,
hostēs aggredior, -gredi, -gres-
sus ; impetum in hostēs facio.
- chariot**, currus, -ūs, M.
- chief**, princeps, -cipis, M.
- children**, liberī, -ōrum, M. pl.
- choose**, legō, 3, lēgi, lectum.
- Cicero**, Cicerō, -ōnis, M.
- citadel**, arx, arcis, F.
- citizen**, cīvis, -is, M.
- city**, urbs, urbis, F.
- clamor**, clāmor, -ōris, M.
- climb**, scandō, 3, scandi, scansum.
- close**, claudō, 3, clausi, clausum.
- clothe**, vestiō, 4.
- cloud**, nubes, -is, F.
- coast**, ora, -ae, F. ; litus, -oris, N.
- cohort**, cohors, cohortis, F.
- cold**, frīgus, -oris, N.
- cold**, frigidus, -a, -um.
- collect**, comparō, 1 ;
cōgō, 3, cōgī, coactum.
- come**, veniō, 4, vēni, ventum.
- come to the aid of**,
subveniō, 4, vēni, ventum (with
dat. 229, 4).
- command**, jubeō, 2, jussi, jussum
(with acc. and infin., 240, 5) ;
imperō, 1 (with dat. 176 ; and
at 240, 4).
- command = be in command of**,
imperō, 1 (with dat. 176) ;
praesum, -esse, -fui (with dat.
228, 3) ;
- place in command of**,
praeficiō, 3, -fēci, -fectum (with
acc. and dat. 228, 3 ; 229, 4).
- command**, imperium, -i ;
at the command of Caesar,
Caesare imperante (160, (c)).
- commander**, imperator, -ōris, M. ;
dux, ducia, M.
- commence hostilities against**,
bellum inferō, -ferre, -tulī,
illitum (with dat. 229, 5).
- common people**, plēbs, plēbis, F.
- commonwealth**,
rēspública, reipublicae.
- companion**,
socius, -i, M. ; comes, -itis, M.
- company with**, in,
cum with abl (18, 2).
- compel**, cōgō, 3, cōgī, coactum.
- complain**, queror, queri, questus.
- conceal**, abdō, 3, abdidī, abditum.
- concerning**, de with abl.
- concerns me, (all), it**,
meū, (omnium), interest (226, 4).

condemn, *condemnō*, 1.
 conquer, *vincō*, 3, *vīci*, *victum*;
superō, 1.
 conquered, *victus*, -a, -u n.
 conqueror, *victor*, -ōris, M.
 consequence of, in: see abl. abs.
 (160 (d)).
 consider, *arbitror*, 1; *existimō*, 1.
 conspiracy, *conjūratiō*, -ōnis, F.
 conspirator, *conjūratus*, -i, M.
 consul, *consul*, -ulis, M.
 consulship, in the: see abl. abs.
 (159, 4 (a)).
 contented, *contentus*, -a, -um (with
 abl. 94, 5).
 conversation, *sermō*, -ōnis, M.
 converse, *colloquor*, -i, -locutus.
 Corinth, *Corinthus*, -i, F.
 corn, *frumentum*, -i, N.
 corn supply, *rēs frumentaria*
 (102, 6).
 council, *concilium*, -i, N.
 counsel, *consilium*, -i, N.
 country = native land, *patria*, -ae,
 F.;
 = state, *rēpublica*, *reipublicae*,
 F.; *civitās*, -ātis, F.;
 = territory, *finēs*, -ium, M. pl.;
 as opposed to town, *rūs*,
rūris, N.;
 from the country, *rūre* (116, 4);
 to the country, *rūs* (acc. 116, 4);
 in the country, *rūrī* (locative,
 115, 3).
 courage, *virtūs*, -ūtis, F.;
fortitūdō, -inis, F.
 cowardice, *ignāvia*, -ae, F.
 cowardly, *ignāvus*, -a, -um;
timidus, -a, -um.
 crime, *scelus*, -eris, N.
 cross, *transgredior*, -gredi, -gressus;
transeō, -ire, -iī, -itum (217, 2;
 218, 3).
 crown, *corōna*, -ae, F.

cruel, *crūdēlis*, -e; *sacerus*, -a, -um;
atrox, (gen. *atrocis*).
 crush, *opprimō*, 3, -pressi, -pressum.
 cry, *clāmor*, -ōris, M.
 cultivate, *colō*, 3, *colui*, *cultum*.
 Cures, *Cūrēs*, -ium, F. pl.
 custom, *mōs*, *mōris*, M.;
consuetūdō, -inis, F.

D

danger, *periculum*, -i, N.
 dangerous, *periculōsus*, -a, -um.
 dare, *audeō*, 2, *ausus* (135, 5).
 dark, *āter*, *ātra*, *ātrum*.
 dart, *tēlum*, -i, N.;
 a shower of darts, *multa tēla*.
 date (adapt to indirect question
 with *quandō*, 284, 2).
 daughter, *filia*, -ae, F. (dat. and
 abl. pl. *filabus*, 12, 4).
 day, *diēs*, *diēi*, M. (or F. in sing.;
 in pl. M.).
 daybreak, *prima lūx*;
 at daybreak, *primā lūce*.
 dead, *mortuus*, -a, -um (p. p. of
morior).
 dear, *cārus*, -a, -um.
 death, *mors*, *mortis*, F.
 deceive, *dēcipiō*, 3, -cēpi, -ceptum.
 decide = resolve,
statuō, 3, *statui*, *statutum*;
constituō, 3, -stitui, -stitutum
 (240, 6, 7).
 declare war,
bellum indicō, 3, -dixi, -dictum
 (with dat. 229, 4, 5).
 deed, *factum*, -i, N.
 deep, *altus*, -a, -um.
 defeat, *superō*, 1;
vincō, 3, *vīci*, *victum*.
 decree, *dēcernō*, 3, -crēci, -crētum
 (240, 6, 7).
 defend, *dēfendō*, 3, -di, -sum.
 delay, *moror*, 1.

delight, *dēlectō*, 1.
Delphi, *Delphi*, -ōrum, M. pl.
demand, *postulō*; (with substantive clause, 240, 2, 4).
deny, *negō*, 1.
depart, *discēdō*, 3, -cessi, -cessum; *dēcēdō*; *ab eo*, -ire, -iī, -itum (218, 3).
desert, *dēsērō*, 3, -erui, -ertum.
desire, *studium*, -i, N.
desirous, *cupidus*, -a, -um (with gen.).
despatch, *litterae*, -arum, F. pl. (32, 5).
destroy, *dēlēō*, 2, *dēlēvi*, *dēlētum*.
destroyed, *dēlētus*, -a, -um.
determine, see **decide**.
devastate, *vastō*, 1; *dēpopulor*, 1.
die, *morior*, *mori*, *mortuus*.
difficult, *difficilis*, -e (90, 2).
difficulty, *difficultās*, -ātis, F.
difficulty, with, *vix*; *aegrē*.
diligence, *diligentia*, -ae, F.
diligent, *diligens* (gen. *diligentis*).
dinner, *cēna*, -ae, F.
disaster, *clādē*, -is, F.
discourse, *sermō*, -ōnia, M.
discover, see **ascertain**.
disembark (intr.),
ex nāvī (nāvibus) ēgredior,
-gredi, -gressus.
disgraceful, *turpis*, -e.
distant, *am*, *absūm*, -esse, -fui.
am distant from, *absūm ab*
 (with abl.).
distinguished, *clārus*, -a, -um.
district, *regiō*, -ōnia, F.
distrust, *diffidō*, 3, -fisi (135, 5),
 (with dat., 175, 2).
ditch, *fossa*, -ae, F.
Divico, *Divicō*, -ōnia, M.
do, *fariō*, 3, *fēcī*, *factum*; *agō*, 3,
ēgi, *actum*.

dog, *canis*, -is, M. or F.
doubt, *dubitō*, 1 (247, 4).
draw, *trahō*, 3, *trāxi*, *tractum*.
drag, see **draw**.
drive, *pellō*, 3, *pepuli*, *pulsūm*.
draw up (battle-line),
(aciem) instruō, 3, -struxi,
-structum.
duty, *officium*, -i, N.; see (224, 7).
dwelling, *tectum*, 1, N.;
ardificium, -i, N.

E

each, *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quidque*, or
quodque (149, 4).
eager for, *avidus*, -a, -um (with
 gen.).
eagle, *aquila*, -ae, F.
ease with which, the, adapt to
 indirect question with *quam*
facile, how easily (234, 2).
easy, *facilis*, -e, (*facilior*, *facillimus*).
easily, *facile*, (*facilius*, *facillimē*).
effect, *efficiō*, 3, -fēcī, -fectum
 (with substantive clause, 244,
 1).
eight, *octo*.
either...or, *aut...aut* (excluding
 the other); *vel...vel* (giving
 a choice).
elect, *creō*, 1.
elected, *am*, *fiō*, *fieri*, *factus sum*
 (215, 2).
eloquent, *ēloquentis* (gen. *ēloquentis*).
embark (intrans.), *nāvem (nāvē)*
conscendō, 3, -acendī, -acensum.
encourage, *confirmō*, 1; *adhortor*, 1.
end, *finis*, -is, M.;
at the end of, *extrinsecus*, -a, -um
 (117, 7).
end, *conficiō*, 3, -fēcī, -fectum;
finiō, 4.
endowed with, *praeditus*, -a, -um
 (94, 5).

enemy (public), *hostis*, -is, M. ;
(private), *inimicus*, -i, M.
engage, *congrédior*, -grédi, -gressus.
enough, *satis*.
enrol,
conscribō, 3, -scripsi, -scriptum.
enter, *ingredior*, -grédi, -gressus ;
incō, -ire, -iī, -itum (218, 3).
enter upon, *incō*, -ire, -iī, -itum
(218, 3).
entreat, *orō*, 1 ; *precor*, 1.
envy, *invidēō*, 2, -vidī, -vīsum
(with dat. 176).
equal, *pār* (gen. *paris*).
escape, *effugiō*, 3, -fūgi, -fugitum.
establish, *confirmō*, 1.
even, *etiam* ;
not even, *ne . . . quidem* (empha-
sized word placed between).
evening, *vesper*, -eris or -erī, M. ;
in the evening, *vesperī*.
ever, *unquam* ;
= always, *semper*.
every = all, pl. *omnēs*.
exactly, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum* (144, 6).
exhort, *hortor*, 1.
expect (= wait for), *expectō*, 1.
expel, *expellō*, 3, -puli, -pulsum.
extent, adapt to indirect question
with *quantus*, -a, -um (234, 2).
eye, *oculus*, -i, M.

F

fact, *rēs*, *rei*, F.
fact that, the, *quod* (244, 2).
faith, *fidēs*, -ei, F.
fall, *cadō*, 3, -cidi, -cīsum.
falsehood, tell, *mentior*, 4, *mentitus* ;
tell many falsehoods,
multa mentior.
far, *longē* ;
far and wide, *longē latēque* ;
far off, *procul*.
farmer, *agricola*, -ae, M.

farther, *ulterior*, -us ;
Farther Gaul, *Gallia Ulterior*.
farthest, *ultimus*, -a, -um.
father, *pater*, *patris*, M.
fault, *culpa*, -ae, F.
fear, *timor*, -ōris, M. ; *metus*, -ūs, M.
fear, see **afraid**.
feel, *sentiō*, 4, *sensi*, *sensum*.
fertility, *cōpia*, -ae, F.
few, *pauci*, -ae, -a.
field, *ager*, *agri*, M.
fierce, *acer*, *acris*, *acere* (81, 2)
ferōx (gen. *ferocius*) ;
a fierce battle was fought,
acriter pugnatum est.
fiercely, *acriter* (*acrius*, *acerrimē*) ;
ferōciter (*ferocius*, *ferocissimē*).
fight, *pugna*, -ae, F. ; *proelium*, -i, N.
fill, *compleō*, 2, -plērī, -plētum.
find, *inveniō*, 4, -vni, -ventum ;
reperiō, 4, *repperī*, *reperitum*.
finish, *conficiō*, 3, -feci, -fectum ;
finiō, 4.
fire, *ignis*, -is, M. ;
with fire and sword, *ferrō et igni* ;
set on fire, *incendō*, 3, -di, -sum.
first, *primus*, -a, -um.
first, **firstly**, *primum* ;
at first, *primō*.
five, *quinque*.
fit, *aptus*, -a, -um ; *idōneus*, -a, -um.
flee, *fugiō*, 3, -fūgi, -fugitum.
flee back, *refugiō*.
fleet, *classis*, -is, F.
flight, *fuga*, -ae, F. ;
put to flight, in *fugam dō*.
flower, *flōs*, *flōris*, M.
follow, *sequor*, 3, *secutus*.
following (adj.), *posterus*, -a, -um.
fond of, *avidus*, -a, -um (with gen.) ;
cupidus, -a, -um (with gen.).
foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, M.

foot of, *lunus*, -a, -um:
 the foot of the mountain,
mons lunus.
foot = on foot, *alij*,
pedites, -*tris*, -*tre*.
foot-soldier, *pedites*, -*itis*, M.
for, dat. of indirect object (16, 2);
 = on behalf of, in defence of,
pro with abl. (16, 2);
for three years, *trēs annos* (116, 2);
for the next day,
in posterum diem (117, 6).
forage, *frumentor*, 1, *pabu'or*, 1.
force, *vis*, F. (67).
force, *cogō*, 3, *coēgī*, *coactum*,
forced march, *iter magnum*.
forces, *cōpiae*, -*arum*, F. pl. (32, 1).
foresee, *prōvideō*, 2, -*vidi*, -*ere*,
foreseeing,
prūdens (gen. *prūdētis*) (84, 1).
forget, *obliscor*, 3, *oblitus* (with
 gen., 176, 7; 220, 5).
forgive, see pardon.
form a plan,
consilium faciō, 3, *feci*, *factum*;
consilium ineō, -*ire*, -*ii*, -*itum*.
form line of battle,
ariem instruō, 3, -*struxi*,
 -*structum*.
former, *prior*, -*us*:
 the former . . . the latter,
ille . . . hic.
fortification, *mūnitio*, -*ōnis*, F.
fortify, *mūniō*, 4.
fortified, *mūnitus*, -*a*, -*um*.
forum, *forum*, -*i*, N.
found, *condō*, 3, *condidi*, *conditum*.
fountain, *fons*, *fontis*, M.
four, *quattuor*.
fourth, *quartus*, -*a*, -*um*.
free, *liber*, -*era*, -*erum*;
 free from, *liber* with abl. (94, 5).
free, *liberō*, 1.
freely, *liberē* (*liberius*, *liberrimē*).
frequent, *creber*, -*bra*, -*brum*.

fresh, *recentis* (gen. *recentis*); *integer*,
 -*gra*, -*grum*.
friend, *amicus*, -*i*, M.
friendly, *amicus*, -*a*, -*um*.
friendship, *amicitia*, -*ae*, F.
frighten, *perterreō*, 2, -*ui*, -*itum*.
from, *ā*, *ab*; *ē*, *ex* (19, 1).
front of, in, *ante* with acc.;
pro with abl.
frost, *frigus*, -*oris*, N.
full of, *plenus*, -*a*, -*um* (with gen.
 93, 4).
further, *longius* (comp. of *longē*).

G

gain possession of,
potior, -*iri*, *potitus*.
games, *ludi*, -*orum*, M. pl.
garden, *hortus*, -*i*, M.
gate, *porta*, -*ae*, F.
gather, *convocō*, 1;
cogō, 3, *coēgī*, *coactum*.
Gaul, *Gallia*, -*ae*, F.
Gaul, a, *Gallus*, -*i*, M.
gaze at, *spectō*, 1.
general, *imperator*,
duc, *ducis*, M.
gentle, *mīlis*, -*e*.
German, *Germanus*, -*a*, -*um*.
Germans, *Germani*, -*orum*, M. pl.
get back, *recipio*, 3, -*cēpi*, -*ceptum*.
get possession of, see gain.
gift, *dōnum*, -*i*, N.
girl, *puella*, -*ae*, F.
give, *dō*, *dāre*, *dedi*, *dātum*.
give up, *dēdō*, 3, *dēdidi*, *dēditum*.
glad, *laetus*, -*a*, -*um*.
go, *eō*, *ire*, *ieī* (*ii*), *itum* (217, 2).
go across,
transgredior, -*gredi*, -*gressus*;
transēō, -*ire*, -*ii*, -*itum* (218, 3).
go back, *regredior*, -*gredi*, -*gressus*;
redeō, -*ire*, -*ii*, -*itum*.

go forward,
prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus.
 go into, *ingredior, -gredi, -gressus;*
ineō, -ire, -ii, -itum (218, 3).
 go out of, *ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus;*
exeō, -ire, -ii, -itum (218, 3).
 god, *deus, -i, M.*
 goddess, *dea, -ae, F.* (dat. and
 abl. pl. *deabus*, 12, 4).
 gold, *aurum, -i, N.*
 golden, *aureus, -a, -um.*
 good,
bonus, -a, -um (*melior, optimus*).
 grain, *frumentum, -i, N.* (32, 5).
 grain, get, *frumentor, 1.*
 great, *magnus, -a, -um* (*maior,*
māximus).
 greatly,
magnopere (*magis, māximē*).
 Greece, *Graecia, -ae, F.*
 greedy, *avidus, -a, -um.*
 Greek, *Graecus, -i, M.;*
Graecus, -a, -um.
 grief, *dolor, -ōris, M.*
 ground, *locus, -i, M.;* pl. *loci,*
-ōrum, N. (32, 7);
 from higher ground,
ē locō superiōre.
 ground = earth, *humus, -i, F.;*
 on the ground,
humī (locative, 118, 3).
 guard, *custōs, -ōdis, M.;*
praesidium, -i, N.
 guard, *custodiō, 4;*
praesidiō sum (228, 1).
 guest *hospes, -itis, M.*
 guide, *dux, ducis, M.*
 guide, *dūcō, 3, dūxi, ductum.*

H

hand, *manus, -ūs, F.*
 hand over, *trādō, 3, -didī, -ditum.*
 had rather, *mālō, malle, mālui*
 (210).

happens, it,
accidit, accidere, accidit.
 happy, *fēlix* (gen. *fēlicis*) (84, 1).
 harbor, *portus, -ūs, M.*
 hard press,
premō, 3, pressi, pressum.
 hasten, *properō, 1; festinō, 1.*
 hate, *ōdī, ōdisse* (219, 2).
 have, *habēō, 2.*
 he, she, it, is, *ea, id* (137, 3).
 head, *caput, -itis, N.*
 head of, *amat, praesum, -esse, -fui*
 (with dat., 229, 4).
 hear, *audiō, 4.*
 heart (feeling), *animus, -i, M.;*
 (organ), *cor, cordis, N.*
 heavy, *gravis, -e.*
 help, *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui*
 (with dat., 207, 6).
 her, see *his*.
 hesitate, *cunctor, 1; dubitō, 1.*
 hesitation, translate by infin.,
dubitāre (166, 5).
 high, *altus, -a, -um.*
 hill, *collis, -is, M.*
 himself, herself, itself,
ipse, ipsa, ipsum (143, 3);
sui (138, 5).
 hindrance, *impedimentum, -i, N.*
 his, her, its, *suis, -a, -um*
 (reflexive, 138, 5); *ejus* (gen.
 of *is*, 138, 3).
 hither, *citerior;*
 Hither Gaul, *Gallia Citerior.*
 hold, *teneō, 2, -uī, -tentum;*
obteneō, 2, -uī, -tentum.
 home, *domus, -ūs, F.* (100, 5);
 at home, *domī* (locative, 118, 3);
 from home, *domō* (abl., 119);
 (to) home, *domum, domūs* (119).
 honor, *honor, -ōris, M.*
 hope, *sperō, spei, F.*
 hope, *sperō, 1;* (with fut. infin.,
 173, 3).

horse, *equus*, -i, M.
 hostage, *obses*, -idis, M.
 hostile, *inimicus*, -a, -um;
 infestus, -a, -um.
 hostilities against, commence,
 bellum inferō (with dat., 229,
 4, 5).
 hour, *hōra*, -ae, F.
 house, *domus*, -ūs, F.; *tectum*, -i, N.;
 aedificium, -i, N.
 how? *quōmodō?* *quem ad modum?*
 how? (with adj. or adv.), *quam?*
 how great? *quantus*, -a, -um?
 how large? *quantus*, -a, -um?
 how many? *quot?*
 how long (of time)? *quamdiū?*
 huge, *ingens* (gen. *ingentis*).
 hurl, *conjiō*, 3, -jēci, -jectum.
 husband, *conjunx*, *conjugis*, M.

I

I, *ego* (137).
 I am, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī* (45).
 if, *si* (249, 2); if . . . not, *nisi*, *si* . . . non
 (249, 2);
 = whether, *num* (201).
 if any, *si quis* (250, Note).
 ignorant, *inociens* (gen. *inocientis*).
 illustrious, *clārus*, -a, -um.
 immediately, *statim*; *confestim*.
 immense, *ingens* (gen. *ingentis*).
 implore, *obsecrō*, 1; *implūrō*, 1;
 (with substantive clause (240,
 2, 4)).
 importance to me (to all), it is of,
 meā (omnium) *interest* (226,
 4, 5).
 in, prep., *in* with abl. (20, 2);
 in company with, *cum* with abl.
 (18 (2));
 expressing 'time at which,' *abl.*
 alone (116, 1).
 inasmuch as, *cum* (253, 6);
 Causal Rel. *quā* (252, 4).

increase (trans.),
 augrō, 2, *auxi*, *auctum*.
 incredible, *incrēdibilis*, -e.
 infantry, (collectively)
 peditātus, -us, M; *peditēs*, -um,
 M. pl.
 infantry (adj.), *pedester*, -tris, -tre.
 influence, *auctōritās*, -ūtis, F.
 inform (you) of,
 (*tū*) *certiōrem faciō dē* with
 abl. (173, 5).
 informed of these things. I am,
 dē his rēbus certior fiō
 (173, 5).
 inhabitant, *incola*, -ae, M.
 injure, *noceō*, 2 (with dat., 175, 2).
 inquire,
 quaerō, 3, *quaesirī*, *quaesitum*;
 rogō, 1.
 instruct, *erudiō*, 4.
 intend to, translate by fut. part.
 act. (152, 6).
 into, *in* with acc. (20, 2).
 interest of all, it is, *interest omnium*,
 it is my interest, *meā interest*
 (226, 4).
 interrogative particles (43, 2, 3;
 44, 4, 5).
 island, *insula*, -ae, F.
 Italy, *Italia*, -ae, F.
 its, see *his*.
 itself, *ipse*, *ipm*, *ipsum* (143, 3).

J

javelin, *telum*, -i, N.
 join, *jungo*, 3, *junct*, *junctum*.
 journey, *iter*, *itineris*, N.
 joy, *gaudium*, -i, N.
 joyous, *laetus*, -a, -um.
 judge, *jūdex*, -icis, M.
 Jupiter, *Jūpiter*, *Jovis*, M. (67).
 just, *justus*, -a, -um.
 just as if, *quasi* (257, 3).

K

keep from, *prohibeō*, 2 (with acc. and infin.).

kept (advising), translate by impf. tense.

kill, *interficiō*, 3, -*feci*, -*fectum*; *occidō*, 3, -*cidi*, -*cisum*.

kind, translate by indirect question with *quālis*, of what kind (234, 2).

king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, M.

know, *sciō*, 4, *sciri*, *scitum* (of a fact); *nōvī*, *nōvisse* (219, 2), (of a person);

= **feel**, *sentiō*, 4, *sensī*, *sensum*;

know not, do not know, *nesciō*, 4.

knowing, not, *insciens* (gen. *inscientis*).

knowledge, *scientia*, -ae;

without the knowledge of Caesar, *Caesare insciente* (159, 4).

L

labor, *labor*, -*oris*, M.

lacking, *am*, *dēsum*, -*esse*, -*ful* (208, 7, 8).

land (soil), *terra*, -*ae*, F.; *ager*, *agri*, M;

(a country), *terra*, -*ae*, F.;

native land, *patria*, -*ae*, F.;

by sea and land, *terrā marique*.

land

(trans), *in terram expōnō*, 3, -*posui*, -*positum*;

(intrans), *nāvi* (nāvibus) *ēgredior*, -*gredi*, -*gressus*.

large,

magnus, -*a*, -*um* (*māior*; *māximus*).

last, *ultimus*, -*a*, -*um*;

last night, *proximā nocte*.

last, at, tandem; *dēmum*.

law, *lex*, *lēgis*, F.; *jūs*, *jūris*, N.

lay waste, *vastō*, 1.

lead, *dūcō*, 3, *dūxi*, *ductum*;

lead back, *redūcō*;

lead across, *transdūcō*;

lead out, *ēdūcō*.

leader, *dux*, *ducis*, M.

leap down, *dēsiliō*, 4, -*silui*, -*sultum*.

learn (lesson),

discō, 3, *didici*, no sup.;

ascertain,

cognōscō, 3, *cognōvi*, *cognitum*.

least,

minimus, -*a*, -*um* (sup. of *parvus*).

leave (abandon),

relinquō, 3, *reliqui*, *relictum*;

(go out of), *excedō*, 3 -*cessi*,

-*cessum* (with abl., or *ex* and

abl.); *ēgredior*, -*gredi*, -*gressus*;

exeo, -*ire*, -*ii*, -*itum* (218, 3).

left (hand), *sinister*, -*tra*, -*trum*.

legion, *legiō*, -*ōnis*, F.

less, *minor*, -*us* (comp. of *parvus*).

lest, *nē* (232, 1).

letter (written), *litterae*, -*arum*, F. pl. (32, 5); *epistola*, -*ae*, F.

liberate, *liberō*, 1.

lie = tell a falsehood, *mentior*, 4;

= **lie down**, *jaceō*, 2, *jacui*.

lieutenant, *lēgātus*, -*i*, M.

life, *vita*, -*ae*, F.

light, *lux*, *lūcis*, F.;

lūmen, -*inis*, N.

lightning, *fulgur*, -*uris*, N.

like, *similis*, -*e* (*similior*; *simillimus*), (with dat. 93, 3).

line (of battle), *aciēs*, -*ēi*, F.

lion, *leō*, *leōnis*, M.

little,

parvus, -*a*, -*um* (*minor*; *minimus*, 91, 3).

little, a, too little (adv.), *parum* (*minus*; *minimē*, 98, 7).

live, *vivō*, 3, *vixi*, *victum*.

living, *vivus*, -*a*, -*um*.

load, *onus*, -*eris*, N.

location, translate by indirect question with *um* or *quō* in *locō* (234, 2).

long (adj. of distance),
longus, -a, -um.

long (adv. of time),
dū (*dīntius*; *dīntissime*).

long, too, *dīntius*.

look at, *spēctō*, 1.

look for, *exspectō*, 1.

lord, *dominus*, -i, M.

lose, *amittō*, 3, -misi, -missum.

loud voice, *vōx magna*.

love, *amō*, 1.

loving, *amans* (gen. *amantis*).

low, *humilis*, -e (99, 2).

loyal, *fidēlis*, -e.

loyalty, *fidēs*, -ei, F.

M

magnitude, *magnitūdō*, -inis, F.

maiden, *virgō*, -inis, F.

make, *faciō*, *feci*, *factum*;

= *elect*, *faciō*; *creō*, 1;

make war upon, *bellum inferō*
(with dat. 229, 4, 5, 6).

man, *vir*, *virī*, M.; *homō*, -inis, M.

manner, translate by indirect question with *quōmodō* or *quemadmodum*, **how** (234, 2).

manners, *mōrēs*, -um, M. pl.

manifest, *manifestus*, -a, -um

many,

multi, -ae, -a, pl. (*plus*;
plūrimus, 91, 3).

march, *iter*, *itineris*, N.

market-place, *forum*, -i, N.

marsh, *palūs*, -ūdis, F.

master, *dominus*, -i, M.

matter, *rēs*, *rei*, F.

may, translate by *licet* (224, 6)

messenger, *nuntius*, -i, M.

midday, *meridiēs*, -ei, M.

middle (of), *medius*, -a, -um (117, 7).

might, translate by *licet* (224, 6).

mild, *mitis*, -e.

mile, *mille passūs*;

two miles, *duo millia passuum*
(107, 10).

milk, *lūc*, *lactis*, N.

mind, *animus*, -i, M.;

intellect, *mens*, *mentis*, F.

mine, *meus*, -a, -um (voc. sing. M.,
mi).

month, *mensis*, -is, M.

money, *pecūnia*, -ae, F.

moon, *lūna*, -ae, F.

more (adj.), *plūs* (comp. of *multus*,
91, 3).

morning, in the, *māne*.

most (adj.),

plērique, *plēraque*, *plēraque*;
plūrimī, -ae, -a.

mother, *māter*, -tris, F.

mound, *agger*, -eris, M.

mountain, *mons*, *montis*, M.

move, *moveō*, 2, *mōvi*, *motum*.

much,

multus, -a, -um (*plūs*; *plūri-*
mus);

much time, *multum temporis*.

much

(adv.), *multum* (*plūs*, *plūrimē*
or *plurimum*).

multitude, *multitūdō*, -inis, F.

must, translate by gerundive
(225, 8).

my, *meus*, -a, -um.

myself (emphatic), *ipse*.

N

name, *nōmen*, -inis, N.

nation (tribe), *natiō*, -ōnis, F.

native land, *patria*, -ae, F.

nature, translate by indirect ques-
tion with *quālis*, **of what**
character (234, 2).

- near** (prep.), *prope*, *ad*, or *apud* with acc.
- near**, *am*, *cubum*, *-am*, *-ui* (with dat. 208, 7, 8).
- nearer**, *propior*, *-us* (with dat. or *ad* with acc.).
- nearly**, *cirriter* (with numerals); *fere*, *paene*.
- nearest**,
proximus, *-a*, *-um* (with dat. or *ad* with acc.).
- necessity**, how expressed (187, 2).
- need of**, **there is**, *opus est* (226, 6).
- neighbor**,
finitimus, *-i*, M.; *vicinus*, *-i*, M.
- neighboring**,
finitimus, *-a*, *-um*; *vicinus*, *-a*, *-um*.
- neither** (adj.), *neuter*, *-tra*, *-trum* (48, 2).
- neither . . . nor**,
neque . . . neque; *nec . . . nec*.
- never**, *numquam*.
- nevertheless**, *tamen*.
- new**, *novus*, *-a*, *-um*.
- news is brought**, *nuntiatur* (155, 5).
- next** (following), *posterus*, *-a*, *-um*; (nearest), *proximus*, *-a*, *-um*.
- night**, *nox*, *noctis*, F.
- no**, negative answer (44, 4).
- no one**, *nēmō* (acc. *nēmīnem*; abl. *nēmīne*; gen. and dat. not used); *nūllus*, *-a*, *-um* (48, 2).
- and no one**, *nec quisquam* (149, 4).
- none**, *nūllus*, *-a*, *-um* (48, 2).
- no time**, *nihil temporis* (107, 10).
- nor**, *neque*; *nec*.
- nor** (in final clauses), *nec*, *neu* (233, 5).
- nor any**, *nec quinquam* (149, 4).
- not**, *nōn*; *ne* (193, 3).
- not yet**, *nondum*.
- nothing**, *nihil*, indecl., N.
- nourish**, *alō*, 3, *alui*, *allum*.
- now**, *nunc* (at the present time); *jam* (already).
- nowhere**, *numquam*.
- number**, *numerus*, *-i*, M.; translate by indirect question with *quot*, **how many** (234, 2).
- numerous**,
crēber, *-bra*, *-brum*; *multi*, *-ae*, *-a*.
- O**
- O**, interjection, *O*; usually omitted with vocative case.
- O that**, *utinam* (193, 3).
- obey**, *pareō*, 2 (with dat. 176, 3, 4).
- obligation**, how expressed (224, 7).
- observe**,
conspiciō, 3, *-spexi*, *-spectum*; *conspicor*, 1.
- obtain**, *nanciscor*, *-ci*, *nactus*.
- obtain a request**, *impetrō*, 1; (with substantive clause, 244, 1 (a)).
- ocean**, *ōceanus*, *-i*, M.
- officer**, *lēgātus*, *-i*, M.
- often**, *saepe* (*saepius*; *saepeissimē*).
- old** (old and no longer existing), *antiquus*, *-a*, *-um*; (old and still existing), *vetus* (gen. *veteris*).
- old**, expressed by *nātus* (136, 9).
- old age**, *senectūs*, *-ūtis*, F.
- older**, *senior*, *-ōris* (91, 5).
- oldest**, *nātū maximus* (91, 5).
- old man**, *senex*, *senis*, M. (67).
- on** (of rest), *in* with abl., **he stands on the shore**, *in litore stat*; (of motion), *in* with acc., **he makes an attack on the enemy**, *impetum in hostes facit* (20, 2); (expressing 'time at which'), abl. without a prep.; **on hearing this**, *his auditis* (160 (d)).
- on account of**,
propter or *ob* with acc.

once, at, statim : *confestim*.
one, unus, -a, -um (48, 2) ;
 the one . . . the other, *alter, . . . alter* ;
 one . . . another, *alius, . . . alius*.
only, solum, -a, -um (48, 2).
only, solum (adv.) ;
 not only . . . but also,
nōn solum . . . sed etiam
open, patefaciō, 3, -feci, -factum ;
 (passive) *patefiō, -fieri, factus*.
opinion, translate by indirect
 question (= what I think,
 (234, 2)).
opportunity, occasiō, -ōnis, F. ;
facultas, -ātis, F.
oppose, obstat, 1, obstiti (with dat.
 175, 2).
or, aut ; vel ; see either.
or ; whether . . . or, see whether.
or not, annōn (44, 5) ;
necne (201, Obs.).
oration, oratiō, -ōnis, F.
orator, orator, -ōris, M.
order, jubeō, 2, jussī, jussum
 (with acc. and infin. 240, 5) ;
imperō, 1 (with dat. 176, 4 ;
 with substantive clause, 240,
 2, 4).
other ; the one . . . the other,
alter, . . . alter ;
 some . . . others, *aliū . . . aliū*.
ought, how expressed (224, 7).
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
out of, ē, ex with abl.
over = across, trans with acc. ;
 above, *super* with acc. or abl.
overcome,
superō, 1 ; vincō, 3, vici, victum.
overthrow, evertō, 3, -verti, versum.
own, ipsius (144, 6).
ox, bōs, bovis, M. (67).

P

pace, passus, -ūs, M.
pain, (grief), dolor, -ōris, M.
pains to, take, operam dō ut
 with substantive clause (240, 8).

panic, pavor, -ōris, M. ;
 a panic ensued, *trepidatum est*.
pardon, ignoscō, 3, ignōvi, ignotum
 (with dat. 176, 3, 4).
parent, parens, -tis, M. or F.
part, pars, partis, F.
pass the winter, hiemō, 1.
peace, pax, pacis, F.
people (= nation), populus, -i, M. ;
 (men), *homines, -um, M. pl.* ;
 the common people,
plēbs, plēbis, F.
perform, fungor, -i, functus
 (with abl. 136, 8).
perish, per eō, -ire, -iī, -itum
 (218, 3).
person, in, ipse (144, 6).
persuade,
persuadeō, 2, -suasī, -suasum
 (with dat. 176, 3, 4 ; with
 substantive clause 240, 2, 4)
pitch a camp,
castra ponō, 3, posuī, positum.
pity, misereor, 2 (with gen. 176, 7) ;
mī miseret (226, 1, 2, 3).
place, locō, 1 ; collocō, 1.
place, locus, -i, M. ;
 pl. *loci, -orum, N.* (32, 7).
place, in that = there, ibi ;
 to that = thither, *eō* ;
 from that = whence, *unde*.
place in command,
prae-ficiō, 3, -feci, -fectum
 (with acc. and dat. 228, 3,
 229, 4).
plain, campus, -i, M. ;
plani-ties, -ti, F.
plan, consilium, -i, N. ;
 form plan, *consilium faciō*
please, placeō, 2 (with dat. 175, 2)
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, F.
plebs, plēbs, plēbis, F.
plenty, cōpia -ae, F.
plough, arō, 1.
pluck, carpō, 3, carpsī, carptum.

plunder, *praeda*, -ae, F.
plunder, *praedor*, 1;
diripiō, 3, -*ripui*, -*reptum*.
poet, *poeta*, -ae, M.
point out, *monstrō*, 1.
poor, *pauper* (gen. *pauperis*);
the poor, *pauperes*.
position, translate by indirect
question (234, 2).
possession of, gain.
potior, 4, *politus* (with abl.
136, 8).
possible, as great as,
quam maximus (88, 7).
post, *locō*, 1; *collocō*, 1.
power, *potestas*, -*atis*, F.
powerful, *potens* (gen. *potentis*).
praise, *laus*, *laudis*, F.
praise, *laudō*, 1.
prefer,
mālō, *mālle*, *mālui* (210; 211, 3).
prepare, *parō*, 1.
present, *praesens* (gen. *praesentis*).
present, am, *ad sum*, -*esse*, -*fui*
(with dat. 203, 7, 8).
press hard,
premō, 3, *pressi*, *pressum*.
pretend, *simulō*, 1.
prevent, *prohibeō*, 2;
prevent from, *prohibeō*,
with acc. and infin.
previous, *superior*, -*us*; *prior*, -*us*.
prince, *princeps*, *principis*, M.
privilege, *potestas*, -*atis*, F.
procure, *comparō*, 1.
promise,
polliceor, 2; *prōmittō*, 3, -*misi*,
-*missum* (with fut. infin.
173, 3).
prosperity.
rēs secundae, F. pl. (102, 5).
provide, *comparō*, 1.
province, *prōvincia*, -ae, F.
punish, *pūniō*, 4.

purpose, *consilium*, -i, N.
purpose of, for the,
ut with subj. (197, 2); *ad* or
causā with gerund or gerundive
(183, Vocab.).
pursue, *sequor*, *sequi*, *secutus*.
put to death,
interficiō, 3, -*feci*, -*fectum*.
put to flight,
in fugam dō, *dāre*, *dedi*, *datum*.

Q

quarter (= part), *pars*, *partis*, F.
queen, *rēgina*, -ae, F.
question, see **ask**.
quick,
celer, *celeris*, *celere*; *alacer*,
-*cris*, -*cre*.
quickly,
celeriter (*celerius*; *celerrimē*).
as quickly as possible,
quam celerrimē.

R

raise (= lift up),
tollō, 3, *sustulī*, *sublātum*.
raise (forces), *comparō*, 1.
rampart, *vallum*, -i, N.
rather, expressed by comparative
(88, 6).
reach.
pervenio, 4, -*veni*, -*ventum* + *ad*
with acc.
ready, *parātus*, -a, -um.
rear, *alō*, 3, *alui*, *altum*.
reason, translate by indirect
question with *quārē* or *cur*,
why (234, 2).
recall, *revocō*, 1.
receive, *accipiō*, 3, -*cēpi*, -*ceptum*.
recent, *recens* (gen. *recentis*).
regard, *habeō*, 2.
reinforcements,
auxilia, -*ōrum*, N. pl.;
subsidia, -*ōrum*, N. pl.

relying on,*frētus, -a, -um* (with abl. 94, 5).**reign, regnō, 1.****remain, manēō, 2, mansi, mansum.****remember,***memini, meminisse* (219, 2; 220, 5); *reminiscor, -ci, 176, 7).***Remi, Rēmi, -ōrum, M. pl.****renew, renovō, 1.****request, obtain a, impetrō, 1.****repair, reficiō, 3, -feci, -fectum.****repent, mē poenitet, -ēre, -uit** (225, 1, 2, 3).**reply, respondeō, 2, -di -sum;****make no reply, nihil respondeō.****republic, rēpublica, reipublicae, F.** (102, 5).**resist, resistō, 3, restiti, restitum** (with dat. 176).**rest, quies, -tis, F.****result of this was, the,***ex quō factum est* (244, 1 (b)).**retreat,***mē recipiō, 3, -cepī, -ceptum;*
*regredior, -gredi, -gressus.***return,***redeō, -ire, -it, -itum;*
revertor, -i, reverti, reversum (135, 5).**revolution, rēnovae, F. pl.** (102, 5).**reward, praeium, -i, N.****Rhine, Rhēnus, -i, M.****rich,***dīces* (gen. *dicitis*), (*divitior*;
divitissimus).**riches, divitiae, -arum, F. pl.** (32, 5).**right (hand), dexter, -tra, -trum.****right, iūs, iūris, N.****rise, orior, -iri, ortus.****rising, oriens (gen. *orientis*).****river, flūmen, -inis, N.****rock, saxum, -i, N.; rūpēs, -is, F.****Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um****Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.****Romulus, Rōmulus, -i, M.****root, rūdix, -icis, F.****rose, rosa, -ae, F.****rough, asper, -era, -erum.****rout, fundō, 3, fūdī, fūsum.****route, iter, itineris, N.; via, -ae, F.****ruin, perniciēs, -ēi, F.****rule, regō, 3, rexi, rectum.****S****sacred, sacer, -era, -erum****sad, tristis, -e.****safe, incolumis, -e; tutus, -a, -um.****safety, salūs, -ūtis, F.****sail, vēlum, -i, N.****sail, nārigō, 1; nāvem (*nāres*),
*solrō, 3, solri, solūtum.*****sailor, nauta, -ae, M.****sake of, for the, causi** with gen.
(183, Vocab.).**same, idem, eadem, idem (143, 2);
the same . . . *is, idem . . . qui*
(146, 7).****say, dicō, 3, dixi, dictum; loquor,**
*-i, locutus;***says** (he), *inquit.***scarcely, vix****scarcity,***inopia, -ae, F.; paucitas, -atis,*
*F.***school, schola, -ae, F.****sea, mare, maris, N.****scout, explorator, -oris, M.****second,***secundus, -a, -um; alter, -a, -um,*
*-erum.***see, videō, 2, vidi, visum;**(get a sight of), *conspiciō, 3,*
*-specti, -spectum.***seek** (ask for),*petō, 3, petivi, petitum.***seem, videor, 2, visus****seize, occupō, 1.****self, ipse, ipsa, ipsum (143, 3).**

- senate**, *senātus*, -ūs, M.
send, *mittō*, 3, *missi*, *missum*.
send ahead, *praemittō*.
serve, *serviō*, 4 (with dat. 176).
service, *ūsus*, -ūs, M.;
 am of great service,
 magnū ūsui sum (228, 1).
service, on, *militiae* (118, 3).
serviceable, *am*,
 ūsui sum (228, 1); *prosum*,
 prōdesse, *prōfui* (with dat.
 208, 5).
set out, *proficiscor*, -ci, *profectus*.
set sail,
 navi gō, 1; *navem (navēs) solvō*,
 3, *solvī solūtum*.
seven, *septem*.
seventh, *septimus*, -a, -um.
seventy, *septuagintā*.
severe, *gravis*, -e; *acer*, *acris*, *acre*.
severely,
 graviter (*gravius*; *gravissimē*).
shadow, *umbra*, -ae, F.
shames it, *pudet*, -ēre, *puduit*
 (226, 1, 2, 3).
sharp, *acer*, *acris*, *acre* (81, 2).
shatter, *frangō*, 3, *frēgi*, *fractum*.
she, see *he*.
ship, *navis*, -is, F.;
 warship, *navis longa*;
 merchantman, *navis oneraria*.
shore, *ora*, -ae, F.; *litus*, -oris, N.
short, *brevis*, -e.
should, how translated (224, 7).
shout, *clāmōr*, -ōris, M.
shout, *clāmō*, 1.
show, *monstrō*, 1.
shower of darts, *multa tela*.
shut, *claudō*, 3, *clausi*, *clausum*.
sick, *aeger*, *aegra*, *aegrum* (36, 1).
side, *latus*, -eris, N.;
 on the right side,
 ā dextrā latere.
sight, *conspectus*, -ūs, M.;
 come in sight,
 in conspectum veniō.
signal, *signum*, -i, N.
silent, *am*, *tacēō*, 2, -ui.
silver, *argentum*, -i, N.
since, *cum* (204, 4);
 quod, *quia*, *quoniam* (252, 2).
sing, *cantō*, 1.
singing, *cantus*, -ūs, M.
sister, *soror*, -ōris, F.
situation, translate by indirect
 question with *ubi*, **where**
 (234, 2).
six, *sex*.
size, *magnitūdō*, -inis, F.; translate
 by indirect question with
 quantus, **how large** (234, 2).
skilled in, *peritus*, -a -um (with
 gen.).
sky, *caelum*, -i, N.
slaughter, *caedēs*, -is, F.
slave, *servus*, -i, M.
slay, *interficiō*, 3, *fēci*, *fectum*;
 occidō, 3, *cidi*, *-cisum*.
sleep, *dormiō*, 4.
slender,
 gracilis, -e (*gracilior*; *gracil-*
 limus).
sling, *funda*, -ae, F.
small,
 parvus, -a, -um (*minor*;
 minimus).
snatch away,
 abripīō, 3, *-ripui*, *-reptum*.
snow, *nix*, *nivis*, F.
so = thus, *ita*, *sic*;
 = to such an extent, *adeō*;
 before adj. or adv. *tam*.
so far from . . . that,
 tantum abest ut . . . ut (244, 1(b)).
soldier, *miles*, -itis, M.
some, some one,
 aliquis, -qua, -quid, or *-quod*
 (149, 4).

- some . . . others, *alii . . . alii*.
 some who, there are, *sunt qui* (237, 3).
 son, *filius*, -i (24, 4).
 son-in-law, *gener*, -eri, M.
 song, *carmen*, -inis, N.
 soon, *mox*; *breui* (sc. *tempore*).
 sorrow, *dolor*, -oris, M.
 space, *spatium*, -i, N.
 spare, *parco*, 3, *peperci*, *parcitum* (with dat. 176, 3, 4).
 sparrow, *passer*, -eris, M.
 speak, *dicō*, 3, *dicī*, *dictum*; *loquor*, -i, *locutus*.
 speak falsely, *mentior*, 4.
 spear, *hasta*, -ae, F.
 speech (conversation), *sermō*, -ōnis; (set speech), *oratiō*, -ōnis, F.
 speed, *celeritas*, -atis, F.
 spend, *consumō*, 3, -*sumpsi*, -*sumptum*.
 spirited, *ferox* (gen. *ferocis*).
 sport (game), *ludus*, -i, M.; *lusus*, -ūs, M.
 spring, *ver*, *veris*, N.
 spy, *explorator*, -oris, M.
 stand, *stō*, *stare*, *stetī*, *statum*.
 standard, *signum*, -i, N.
 star, *stella*, -ae, F.
 state, *civitas*, -atis, F.; *reipublica*, *reipublicae*, F. (10, 2, 5).
 station, *collocō*, 1.
 stay, *maneo*, 2, *mansī*, *mansum*.
 still, *adhuc*.
 stone, *lapis*, -idis, M.
 storm, *tempestas*, -atis, F.
 storm, *oppugnō*, 1;
 take by storm, *expugnō*, 1.
 story, *fābula*, -ae, F.
 strength, *vis*, F.; pl. *virēs*, -ium (67).
 struggle, *certāmen*, -inis, N.
 successfully, *fēliciter* (*fēlicius*; *fēlicissimē*).
 such, *talis*, -e.
 sudden, *subitus*, -a, -um; *repentinus*, -a, -um.
 suffer (allow), *patior*, *patī*, *passus*.
 sufficient, *sat*; sufficient time, *satis temporis*.
 suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um; *aptus*, -a, -um.
 summer, *aestas*, -atis, F.
 summon, *convocō*, 1.
 sun, *sōl*, *sōlis*, M.
 sunrise, *sōl oriens*.
 sunset, *sōlis occasus*, -ūs, M.
 superior, *am*, *superō*, 1.
 supper, *cēna*, -ae, F.
 supply of corn, *rēs frumentaria* (102, 6).
 support, *subsidiūm*, -i, N.
 suppose, *putō*, 1.
 sure, *certus*, -a, -um.
 surrender, *deditiō*, -ōnis, F.
 surrender, *mē dēdō*, 3, *dēdidī*, *deditum*.
 surround, *circumdō*, -dāre, -dēdī, -dātum; *circumvenio*, 4, -*veni*, -ventum.
 surrounded, *circumdat*, -a, -um; *circumventus*, -a, -um.
 survive, *supersum*, -esse, -fui (with dat.).
 suspect, *suspicio*, 1.
 swamp, *palus*, -udis, F.
 swear, *iūrō*, 1 (with fut. infin. (173, 3)).
 swift, *celer*, -eris, -ere; *velox* (gen. *velocis*).
 swiftness, *celeritas*, -atis, F.
 sword, *gladius*, -i, M.; with fire and sword, *ferrū et igni*.

T

- table**, *mensa*, -ae, F.
take, *capiō*, 3, *cēpi*, *captum*.
take by storm, *expugnō*, 1.
take pains to, *operam dō ut* (240, 8).
take part in, *intersum*, -enne, -fui (with dat.).
take up arms, *arma capiō*.
tall, *altus*, -a -um.
Tarentum, *Tarentum*, -i, N.
tax, *vectigal*, -ālis, N.
teach, *doceō*, 2, *docui*, *doctum*.
teaching = to teach, *docēre* (166, 5).
tell = say, *dīcō*, 3, *dixi*, *dictum*;
 = **bid**, *jubeō*, 2, *jussi*, *jussum*;
 = **narrate**, *narrō*, 1.
tell a falsehood, *mentior*, 4.
temple, *templum*, -i, N.
ten, *decem*.
tender, *tener*, -era, -erum.
terrify, *perterreō*, 2.
terrified, *perterritus*, -a, -um.
territory, *agri*, -ōrum, M. pl.;
 finēs, -ium, M. pl.
than, with comparatives, see (88, 3).
that, in final clauses, *ut* (197, 2);
 quo (233, 4);
 in consecutive clauses, *ut* (203, 1);
 with verbs of fearing, *nē* (243, 2).
that not, in final clauses, *nē* (198, 6);
 in consecutive clauses, *ut nōn*
 (203, 1).
that (pro.), *ille*, *illa*, *illud* (140, 3).
themselves (reflexive), *sē* (138, 5);
 (emphatic), *ipsi* (143, 3).
then, *tum*, *tunc*.
thence, *inde*;
 thence . . . whence, *inde . . . unde*
 (146, 7).
there, *ibi*; after verbs of motion,
 eō, *illūc*;
there . . . where, *ibi . . . ubi* (146, 7).
thick, *densus*, -a, -um.
thine, *tuus*, -a -um.
thing, *rēs*, *rei*, F.
think (suppose), *putō*, 1;
 (reflect), *existimō*, 1;
 (judge), *arbitror*, 1.
third, *tertius*, -a, -um.
thirty, *trigintā*.
this, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc* (140, 3).
thither . . . whither, *eō . . . quo*
 (146, 7).
thou, *tu*, *tui* (137).
though,
 quamquam, *etsi* with indic.;
 quamevis with subj. (255, 5);
 cum with subj. (255, Note).
thousand, *mille* (106, 6, 7).
three, *trēs*, *tria* (106, 5).
through, *per* with acc.
throughout, *per* with acc.
throw,
 iaciō, 3, *jēci*, *jactum*; *conjiaciō*,
 3, *jēci*, *jectum*;
throw away, *abjiaciō*;
throw down, *dējiaciō*.
thy, *tuus*, *tua*, *tuum*.
till, *dum*, *donec*, *quoad* (259, 7).
timber, *lignum*, -i, N.
time, *tempus*, -oris, N.
to, prep., dat. or *ad* with acc. (15, 1).
today, *hodiē*.
tomorrow, *cras*.
too = also, *etiam*, *quōque*; sign of
 comp. (88, 6).
top of the mountain, *summus mons*
 (93).
tower, *turris*, -is, F.
town, *oppidum*, -i, N.
transpiring, **these things are**,
 hae rēs geruntur.
transport, *transportō*, 1.
treachery,
 perfidia, -ae, F.; *insidiae*,
 -ārum, F. pl. (32, 6).

tree, *arbor*, -*oria*, F.
 trench, *fossa*, -*ae*, F.
 troops, *cōpiae*, -*ārum*, F. pl.
 trust, *fīdō*, 3, *fixa*; *confīdō*
 (135, 5) (with dat. 175, 2).
 truth, *vērītās*, -*ātis*, F.;
 the truth, *vēra*, -*ōrum*, N. pl.
 try, *cōnor*, 1; *experior*, 4, -*pertus*.
 turn, *vertō*, 3, *verti*, *versum*.
 turn back,
revertor, *reverti*, *reverti*, *re-*
versum (136, 6).
 twenty, *viginti*.
 two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo* (106, 5).

U

unable, *am*,
nōn possum, *posse*, *potui*.
 uncertain, *incertus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 undertake,
suscipio, 3, -*cēpi*, -*ceptum*,
 with fut. infin. (173, 3).
 undertaking, *negōtium*, -*i*, N.
 unfortunate, *infelix* (gen. *infelīcis*).
 unfortunately, *infelīciter*.
 unless, *nisi* (249, 2).
 unlike, *dissimilis*, -*e* (with dat. 90,
 2).
 until, *dum*, *donec*, *quoad* (259, 7).
 unwilling, *invitus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 unwilling, *am*, *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōlui*
 (210, 2).
 unworthy (of), *indignus*, -*a*, -*um*,
 (with abl. 94, 5).
 upon, *in* with acc. with verbs of
 motion;
in with abl. with verbs of rest
 (20, 2).
 urge, *hortor*, 1; *adhortor*, 1;
 (with substantive clause 240,
 2, 4).
 use, *utor*, *uti*, *usus* (with abl.
 136, 8).

used to, translate by imperf.
 tense.
 useful, *utilis*, -*e* (with dat.).

V

valiant, *fortis*, -*e* (82, 4).
 valley, *vallis*, -*is*, F.
 valor, *virtus*, -*utis*, F.
 very, translate by super. (88, 6);
ipse, -*a*, -*um* (144, 6).
 vexed, *am*, *mē piget* (226, 1).
 victory, *victoria*, -*ae*, F.
 view, *conspectus*, -*ūs*, M.
 view, *spectō*, 1.
 vigorously,
acriter (*acrius*; *acerrimē*).
 vile, *turpis*, -*e*.
 violence, *vis* (*vis*), F. (67).
 virtue, *virtus*, -*utis*, F.
 voice, *vox*, *vōcis*, F.

W

wage, *gerō*, 3, *gessi*, *gestum*.
 wait for, *expectō*, 1.
 walk, *ambulō*, 1.
 wall, *mūrus*, -*i*, M.
 wanting, *am*, *dēsum* -*esse* -*fu*
 (with dat. 208, 7).
 war, *bellum*, -*i*, N.;
 in war, *belli* (locative 118, 3).
 war, wage war, *am at war*,
bellō, 1.
 warlike, *bellicōsus*, -*a*, -*um*.
 warn, *moneō*, 2; *admoneō*, 2;
 (with substantive clause 240,
 2, 4).
 warship, *nāvis longa*.
 waste, lay, *vastō*, 1.
 watch (time), *vigilia*, -*ae*, F.;
prima vigilia, 6-9 p.m.;
secunda vigilia, 9-12 p.m.;
tertia vigilia, 12-3 a.m.;
quarta vigilia, 3-6 a.m.

- water**, *aqua*, -ae, F.
wave,
fluctus, -ūs, M.; *unda*, -ae, F.
waver, *cunctor*, 1.
way, *via*, -ae, F.
we, *nōs* (137).
weak, *infirmus*, -a, -um.
wearies me, it = I am wearied,
mē tædet (226, 1, 2, 3).
weary, *fessus*, -a, -um.
weather, *tempestās*, -ātis, F.
weeping, *flens* (gen. *flentis*).
weight, *pondus*, -eris, N.
well, *bene* (*melius*; *optimē*).
what, see **who** or **which**.
what kind of, *quālis*, -e.
when? (interr.), *quandō*.
when, conj., *cum* (204, 4; 261, 1; 262).
whenever, *cum*, *quoties*, *ubi*, *ut* (263, 8).
where? *ubi?*
where, *ubi*.
whether . . . or, *utrum* (or -ne) . . . an (44, 5; 201).
which? *quī, quae, quod?* (148, 2).
which, *quī, quae, quod* (145, 1).
which (of two), *uter, utra, utrum* (48, 2).
while, *dum* (259, 5).
whither? *quō?*
who? *quis, quae, quid?* (148, 1).
who, *quī, quae, quod* (145, 1).
whoever,
quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.
whole, *tōtus*, -a, -um (48, 2).
world, *orbis terrarum*.
worthy (of),
dignus, -a, -um (with abl. 94, 5).
why? *cur? quārē? quamobrem?*
wide, *lātus*, -a, -um.
wife, *uxor*, -ōris, F.
willing, *am, volō, velle, volui* (210, 2).
wind, *ventus*, -i, M.
wing (of a bird), *ala*, -ae, F.; (of an army), *cornū*, -ūs, N.
winter, *hiems, hiemis*, F.
winter, pass the winter, *hiemō*, 1.
winter quarters,
hiberna, -ōrum, N. pl.
wisdom, *sapientia*, -ae, F.
wise, *sapiens* (gen. *sapientis*).
wisely, *sapienter*.
with, translate by abl. alone or *cum* with abl. (47, 1; 18, 2).
withdraw (intr.),
cēdō, 3, *cessi, cessum*; *dēcēdō*; *mē recipiō*, 3, *cēpi, ceptum*.
within (of time), see (116, 3).
without, *sine* with abl.
woman, *mulier*, -eris, F.
wood (= forest), *silva*, -ae, F.; (= timber), *lignum*, -i, N.
woody, *silvester*, -tris, -tre.
word, *verbum*, -i, N.
word was brought, *nuntiātum est*.
word, bring back, *renuntiō*, 1.
work, *opus*, -eris, N.
workman, *faber*, -bri, M.
would that, *utinam* (193, 3).
wound, *vulnus*, -eris, N.
wound, *vulnerō*, 1.
wounded, *vulnerātus*, -a, -um.
wretched, *miser*, -era, -erum.
write, *scribō*, 3, *scripsi, scriptum*.
writing, (= to write), *scribere* (166, 5).

Y

- year**, *annua*, -i, M.
yes, how expressed (44,
yesterday, *heri*.
yet, not, *nōndum*.
yield, *cēdō*, 3, *cessi, cessum*.
you, *tu* (137).
young (man), *juvenis* (91),

Y

-i, M.

pressed (44, 4).

ri.

lum.

cessi, cessum.

juvenis (91, 5).

your (referring to one),*tuus, -a, -um;*

(referring to more than one),

*vester, -tra, -trum.***yourself** (reflexive), *tē, vōs* (138, 4):
(emphatic), *ipse*.

Z

Zama, *Zama, -ae*, F.**zeal**, *studium, -i*, N.